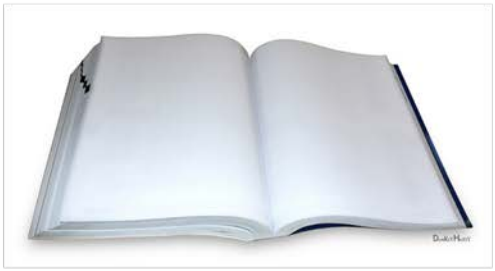
Living in the



Book of Mormon

One-hour walks, once a week through the Book of Mormon

By: Coral Rogers

Preface

Did you ever come across a book that was so exciting you just couldn't put it down? That's the Book of Mormon! It begins around 630 BC with one family's adventure after God warned them the city of Jerusalem was going to be destroyed. It follows their descendants who come across the remains of an ancient civilization. They also run into another group of people who had left later and were also from Jerusalem, but the two groups of people couldn't understand each other. (Read this book to find out why.)

Only a few of the ancient people survived. Their descendants are the Native American people spread throughout North, Central and South America today. Did you know Jesus Christ visited these people who were originally from the House of Israel? The story of Christ's ministry to the Book of Mormon people is absolutely thrilling.

I rejoice in the fact that the Book of Mormon is an additional testimony of Jesus Christ and how to have salvation through Him. I have found nothing in the Book of Mormon to go against any teaching in the Holy Bible. Instead, it tells us more of God and His plans. People who haven't read the Book of Mormon think it teaches against the Bible. The name 'Jesus' is written 184 times in the Book of Mormon (plus two more in chapter headings). 'Christ' is written 258 times, 'Savior' is written 12 times, and 'Messiah' is written 32 times. The entire book is about Jesus Christ, our Savior and Messiah and the people who did or didn't believe in Him!

The Book of Mormon people kept records on metal plates which were translated into English in 1829 by Joseph Smith, a farm boy from New York who had no formal education. The Lord directed him where to find the metal plates buried deep in the earth and gave him the ability to translate these sacred records.

While answering the questions at the end of each chapter, beware of the smiley faces. ☺ They mean the question was written tongue-in-cheek. God gave me a sense of humor and it shows wherever you see a smiley face. (See Proverbs 15:13a and Proverbs 17:22a)

Occasionally I found some additional interesting facts that I thought went well with that section and added them before the lesson questions. I set them apart from the rest of the book with "Did You Know?" I have also created some "Editor's Notes" that might be of help. These notes simply have brackets [ ] around them. Lesson questions are answered at the end of the book. English teachers beware! I don't respect satan or the devil, so I refused to capitalize the name, even when the name begins a sentence!

Each lesson begins with verses listed from the Book of Mormon. Please read those verses first, then read the hour-long lesson for my understanding of those same verses. 'Significant Quotations' are verses that really spoke to me while I was reading and studying.

Sit back and enjoy the study book with its questions and answers, but most of all, prepare to be uplifted as you begin to find yourself in *The Living Book of Mormon*.

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

I would like to take this opportunity to thank my husband, Elbert Rogers, for all his input, insight, suggestions and infinite patience. I would also like to thank my sister, Jade Anders, for being my excellent proofreader and chief inquisitor. Finally, I would like to thank my parents, Charles & Norma Farmer, for encouraging me to seek the Lord and all His ways. This book is dedicated to my grandchildren, Holden Rogers and Anderson Rogers whom I hope will read this book some day.
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 1

People in this chapter:	
Lehi1=Jewish prophet from Jerusalem	Nephi1=4th son of Lehi of Jerusalem
Sariah=wife of Lehi	Zedekiah1=king of Judah in old Israel
Laman1=oldest son of Lehi of Jerusalem	Laban=keeper of Lehi's family records
Lemuel=2nd son of Lehi of Jerusalem	Zoram1=servant of Laban
Sam=3rd son of Lehi of Jerusalem	Messiah=our Savior, Jesus Christ

~ *read: 1 Nephi 1:1 - 1:134*

The Book of Mormon begins with the story of a Jew named Lehi, his wife Sariah, and their four sons, Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and Nephi. It started in the same year that Zedekiah became king over all the land of Judah, around 630 B.C. Many of God's prophets were preaching repentance or the mighty city of Jerusalem would soon be destroyed.

One day while Lehi was praying, he saw a pillar of fire resting on top of a rock right in front of him. He didn't know what to think at first and was so scared that he started shaking all over. The Spirit of the Lord came to visit Lehi and he saw and heard many amazing things that afternoon. Finally, after a while he was able to get up and go home.

Later that evening when Lehi laid down to rest, the Spirit of the Lord came to him again and he had a vision. He saw the heavens open and saw God sitting on His throne, surrounded by thousands of angels all singing praises to the Lord. Someone appeared who was like a brilliant light, brighter than even the sun, and he began coming down from heaven. There were 12 others following behind this person and these twelve were brighter than all the stars in the sky. They all came down and stood on the earth. The first person stood in front of Lehi, gave him a book and told him to read it. The book told what was getting ready to happen to Jerusalem because of the wickedness of the people. The entire city would soon be destroyed and many of the people were going to be killed, while those who lived would be captured as slaves for the Babylonians.

Lehi began prophesying to anyone who would listen about the things he had seen and heard recently. He told them about the coming of a Messiah, a Savior who would pay the ransom and free the whole world from their sins - if they would simply accept Him.

The Jews didn't want to hear about any of that. They didn't believe their big, beautiful city of Jerusalem could ever be destroyed. They also didn't want to hear about what was going to happen to them because of the terrible things they were doing. In fact they were so mad, they began making plans to stone him to death like they had done to so many of the other prophets of God who also told them things they didn't want to hear.

That night the Lord spoke to Lehi in a dream. He warned Lehi that because of his preaching, the people were coming to kill him. Lehi must leave and take his family into the wilderness. They left behind their house, land, gold, silver, and many valuable things.

They traveled through the wilderness by the borders of the Red Sea. After 3 days, they finally pitched their tent in a valley next to a river where Lehi built an altar, gave an offering and his grateful thanks to the Lord. He named the river after his oldest son, Laman and the valley after his next to the oldest son, Lemuel. He told them he wished they were more like this river that ran into the Red Sea – he had hoped they would always go toward righteousness. He also wished they

630-592 BC

would be like the valley (firm, steadfast and unmoving) in keeping the commandments of the Lord. Laman and Lemuel refused to listen to their father. They had done nothing on this trip so far but gripe and complain. All they could think about was all their stuff they had had to leave behind in Jerusalem. And for what? To follow some crazy dream their father had? There was no way an entire city as big as Jerusalem could be destroyed. This whole thing was ridiculous. What a dreamer their father was.

Lehi was filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak to them with the power of the Lord. It surprised them so much that they couldn't even talk back to him or do anything else but stand there shaking.

Nephi was different from his older brothers. He wanted to know more about the mysteries of God and he especially wanted to know the truth, so he prayed passionately unto the Lord. God heard his prayers and came to Nephi where he softened Nephi's heart so that Nephi believed everything that his father had said and done. God told Nephi that if he kept His commandments, he would prosper and be given a land of promise that would be better than any other land. In fact, he would be a ruler and teacher over his older brothers – but if his brothers went against him, they would be cut off from the presence of the Lord. God would curse them and their descendants would be completely powerless to do anything against his (Nephi's) descendants – unless of course Nephi's descendants rebelled against God also.

He told his older brother Sam who was closest to him in age what had just happened to him. Sam believed him when his oldest brothers Laman and Lemuel would not. It tore at Nephi's heart because of their refusal to believe what the Lord had told their father and younger brother.

Nephi went to his father's tent where Lehi told his son that the Lord had commanded Lehi through a dream to send his sons back to Jerusalem to get their family records. A man named Laban kept their family books which were written on thin brass plates. Nephi and his brothers needed to go get the records and bring them back to their father Lehi who would be waiting for them in his tent where they were currently camped. Lehi had already talked to Laman and Lemuel about this and their reaction was about what Lehi had expected. They complained it was too much trouble to go through just for some old family history books. Lehi informed them that it wasn't him asking them to go – the Lord was telling them to go. Nephi told his father that he would go because the Lord had commanded it because he knew that God wouldn't tell his children to do anything unless He had already prepared the way for them. Lehi was thrilled. He knew that his youngest son Nephi had truly been blessed by God.

Nephi convinced his brothers to go with him and once again they packed up their tents as they headed back to Jerusalem. Once they got to the edge of the wilderness close to the city walls, they drew lots to see who would go talk to Laban. It seemed right that the eldest should draw the odd lot, so Laman went to Laban's house to talk to him about giving them the plates of brass that contained their family records. Laban was furious and told Laman he was a thief and to get out of his house before he killed him. Laman didn't stick around to see if Laban was serious or not – he ran outside the city to where his brothers were hiding in the wilderness. The 4 brothers were sick about going back empty handed to their father. Nephi reminded his brothers that God had commanded them to get these plates. They should go back to their old house and get their silver & gold and buy the plates from Laban. This time, they all went to Laban's house carrying their family's money & valuables. When Laban saw what they had, greed took over and he kicked them out of his house. Then he sent his servants to chase after the brothers and kill them, but the boys outran the servants. They had to drop everything at Laban's house so they could run faster, which meant now they had lost all their worldly goods and they still didn't have the records. They slowed down when

they reached the wilderness and hid in a cave to see if the servants were still chasing them. Once they were safe, Laman & Lemuel turned on Nephi & Sam, yell at them, and then they were still so angry, they picked up a couple of big sticks and started beating Nephi & Sam with them.

Suddenly, an angel of the Lord appeared and asked Laman and Lemuel why they were beating their younger brothers. He told them that the Lord had chosen Nephi to be their leader because both of them were too sinful to be in charge. They were to go back to Jerusalem and this time God would deliver Laban to them. After the angel left, Laman and Lemuel wondered how the Lord could deliver Laban into their hands. Laban was powerful, after all. Nephi reminded his brothers that God was mightier than Laban and all the armies combined. They should be strong like Moses who spoke to the waters of the Red Sea and they split apart so the Israelites could walk across on dry ground, then swallow up the mighty Egyptian army and destroy it. They already knew all of this, plus an angel of the Lord had just spoken to them – how could they doubt it? Griping all the way, Nephi's brothers followed him back to the walls of Jerusalem. It was now night. Nephi told his brothers to hide just outside the walls while he snuck inside. When he was almost to Laban's house, he saw a man stumble and fall down, but didn't try to get back up. When Nephi got closer, he saw it was Laban who was passed out. From the smell of him, he had too much wine to drink. Nephi saw Laban's sword and picked it up. The handle, or hilt, was beautifully made from the purest gold and was finely decorated. The sharp blade had been crafted from the very best steel. The Spirit of the Lord told Nephi that he must kill Laban. Nephi was shocked – he had never killed a man before. The Spirit of the Lord reminded Nephi that God had delivered Laban to him as He said he would. Earlier that evening Laban had tried to kill Nephi. Laban had refused to listen and obey the commandments of the Lord. Again the Spirit of the Lord told Nephi to kill Laban. It was better for one man to die than an entire nation to die not knowing God. Nephi remembered that the Lord had assured him a land of promise for his descendants as long as they kept His commandments. How could they keep God's commandments if they didn't have the law to study and learn? The law of Moses was engraved on those brass plates. The Lord must truly have delivered Laban into Nephi's hands so that Nephi could get his family's records. It was written that the wicked have been slain for righteous reasons. Could he, Nephi do it? Could he kill a man? What if someone saw him? He would pay the penalty with his own life. What about his brothers? Would they ever know what happened to him? What about his father and mother? How would they feel about this? There was no other way – he had to do it. Nephi grabbed Laban by the hair and cut off his head, using Laban's own sword! Thinking quickly, Nephi then traded clothes with Laban and went to Laban's storeroom (or treasury room) where the records were kept. Just as Nephi got to the storeroom, he saw Laban's servant who had the keys. Disguising his voice to sound like Laban, he instructed the servant to follow him. Since he dressed, sounded and acted like Laban, the servant didn't think anything was up and obediently followed behind "Laban". He asked his master how the evening had gone with the elders because the servant knew Laban had been visiting with the Jewish elders. Nephi told the servant that his elder brethren were at the city wall, waiting for the brass plates so he should come with him. The servant assumed "Laban" was talking about the brethren of the church, so he kept asking questions about the brethren. After a long walk, they reached the gates of the city walls. When Laman, Lemuel, & Sam saw Nephi, they got scared and started running away, thinking Laban had killed their little brother and was coming after them. Nephi yelled for them to stop and come back. Finally, they realized it was their brother, so they came back to see what was going on and why he was acting like Laban. As soon as the servant saw Nephi's brothers coming, he got scared and turned to run…,

Lesson 1 Study Questions

1. What language was 1 Nephi written in? (1 Nephi 1:1)

2. ☺ What time of the year did Lehi leave Jerusalem? (1 Nephi 1:3)

3. What did Lehi take with him when leaving Jerusalem? (1 Nephi 1:29)

4. Why does 1 Nephi 1:33 say river <u>of water</u>? What other kind of river is there?

5. How did Nephi describe himself? (1 Nephi 1:47)

6. How did Nephi hide without using a wall? (1 Nephi 1:104)

7. Why was Laman afraid of Nephi? (1 Nephi 1:131a)

8. Did Sam know Nephi was tricking his oldest brother Laman by wearing Laban's rich clothing? If so, it was a good joke on his brothers. (1 Nephi 1:131b)

9. When Zoram realized the men before him weren't the Jewish elders of the temple, did he try to run to Hill Cumorah? (1 Nephi 1:134)

Significant Quotation

"Know ye not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you, and this because of your iniquities?" ~ 1 Nephi 1:94

[COULD THIS APPLY TO OUR ELECTIONS?]

Lesson 2

People in this chapter:	
Nephi1=4th son of Lehi of Jerusalem	Laban=keeper of Lehi's family records
Zoram1=servant of Laban	Manasseh=son of Joseph with coat of many colors
Lehi1=Jewish prophet of Jerusalem	Jeremiah=prophet of old Israel
Sariah=wife of Lehi	Isaiah1=prophet of old Israel
Moses=leader of Israelites in Egypt	Ishmael=friend of Lehi from Jerusalem
Adam==1st man God created	Laman1=1st son of Lehi of Jerusalem
Eve=1st woman God created	Lemuel=2nd son of Lehi of Jerusalem
Zedekiah1=king of Judah in old Israel	Sam=3rd son of Lehi of Jerusalem
Joseph1=coat of many colors, ruler in Egypt	Messiah=our Savior-Jesus Christ

~ *read: 1 Nephi 1:135 – 1 Nephi 3:5*

"As soon as the servant saw Nephi's brothers, he got scared and turned to run…"

…but Nephi was ready for that and grabbed the servant. He told the servant that if he would listen to what they had to say they would spare his life. In fact, Nephi promised him his freedom if he would return with them to their family's tents in the wilderness camp. Zoram was the servant's name and he promised to go with him. He also promised to stay with their family from then on and become part of their family. Nephi was glad to hear this, because he didn't want any witnesses left behind in case they were followed and killed along the way.

When the brothers and their new friend arrived back at their father's tents, Lehi and Sariah were thrilled to see them all alive and well. Sariah had been complaining to her husband that he was a dreamer and had gotten her boys killed. Lehi told her that he knew he had seen visions, but they were from God and God was leading them out of Jerusalem to keep them safe. God had given him a promised land. If He were going to do that, He would surely protect and keep their sons safe. Sariah was comforted by those thoughtful words until her sons returned. When she saw her boys, she told Lehi that seeing they were all right was proof to her that the Lord did tell Lehi to leave Jerusalem and go into the wilderness. The family was happy to be together again. They offered sacrifices and burnt offerings to God as a thank you for His protection.

After giving thanks to the Lord, Lehi took the brass plates and sat down and read them very carefully. He read a copy of the five books of Moses which told many wonderful things, such as how the world was created and the story of Adam and Eve. It included a record of the Jews from the beginning of time until when Zedekiah became king of Judah. Many prophecies from God's own prophets were recorded. Lehi's family tree was also written on the plates. He read about his ancestor, Joseph and how his brothers were jealous and sold him into slavery. He also read how God helped the Israelites escape from the Egyptians. He knew Laban had come from Joseph's family and his ancestors had always kept the records updated and protected.

By tracing their genealogy back to Joseph, Lehi knew he was fulfilling prophesy from Genesis 49:22: *"Joseph is a fruitful bough, even a fruitful bough by a well; whose branches run over the wall*". By being from Joseph, that meant they were also descendants of Joseph's son, Manasseh, which made them "plants of the vine of Sibmah" (a city known for its vines). God's prophet Jeremiah prophesied about the fall of Jerusalem and the people who were to be scattered over the sea: "*O vine of Sibmah, thy plants are gone over the sea."* [Jeremiah 48:32]

600-592 BC

Isaiah also told about the fall of Jerusalem and a journey to the Promised Land: "*For the fields of Heshbon languish, and the vine of Sibmah…they are come even unto Jazer, they wandered through the wilderness…her branches are stretched out, they are gone over the sea."* [Isaiah 16:8] Later Isaiah predicted "*a remnant of Israel shall escape from Mt. Zion*." [Isaiah 37:32] Lehi read about a prophesy coming true in his own time - because of him and his family.

When Lehi had finished reading, he prophesized to his family about the plates of brass. He said these plates would survive through the ages and be read by his ancestors, even though they would be scattered among all nations and would speak many different languages. Nephi and Lehi recognized how important these records were and both were glad the Lord had commanded them to bring the records with them to the Land of Promise.

Nephi reminded his family who would add to the plates in the future by writing their stories, that because space is limited, they must only write things God would want them to. They weren't supposed to write about everyday chit chat, but things that would bring the readers closer to God.

When Lehi finished prophesying, the Lord told him to send his sons back to Jerusalem once again so they could convince Ishmael and his family to come with them on their journey. The Lord wanted Lehi's family to grow, but that would be impossible with only boys. They needed wives and it just so happened that Ishmael had many single daughters. By the time the boys got to Jerusalem, the Lord had softened the hearts of Ishmael and his family. They said "yes" to the journey almost before the boys could ask.

While they were all traveling through the wilderness back to Lehi's camp, the 2 older boys Laman and Lemuel started stirring up trouble again. They got 2 of Ishmael's daughters and 2 of his sons to join them and rebel against Nephi, Sam, Ishmael, his wife, and 3 other daughters. It seems the rebels all wanted to go back to Jerusalem.

This upset Nephi. He was overcome with sadness and grief for them. He asked his brothers how they could be so hardened and blinded? Why did he, their younger brother, have to set the example for them? Hadn't they seen and heard an angel of the Lord? Did they forget all the things the Lord had already done for them? If they would just be faithful, they would receive the Land of Promise and they would receive word from God when Jerusalem was destroyed. There were already signs that the end was coming soon for Jerusalem. Look at the facts: The Spirit of the Lord was no longer in the city working with the people because they rejected God's prophets. The people of Jerusalem imprisoned, killed and threatened to kill the rest of the prophets - including Laman and Lemuel's own father! If Laman, Lemuel and the others were to go back to Jerusalem, they would die along with everyone else there. He was sorry he had to be so harsh with them, but the Spirit of the Lord urged him to talk them out of going back.

Nephi's older brothers didn't want to hear any of that. They were angry at him and tied him up and left him in the wilderness where the wild beasts could eat him. Nephi prayed to God for the strength to break the ropes that he was tied up with. As soon as he prayed, the bands became loose and fell off. He stood there in front of his brothers and began warning them again. They got angry again and went after him. One of the daughters of Ishmael and her mother begged Nephi's brothers to spare his life. The angry boys couldn't resist the sweet pleadings of the innocent women and they gave in. They were sorry because of what they had done and bowed down before Nephi, begging him to forgive them. Nephi quickly forgave all that they had done to him and suggested that they pray to God for forgiveness, which they both did.

As soon as they were finished praying, the whole group continued on to find Lehi in the wilderness. Finally they came to his camp, where they all offered burnt offerings and sacrifices to God. Soon they started gathering seeds of every kind they could find, preparing for the next part of

their long journey. One day, Lehi told the group that he had had a vision about the future and it involved all of them. Lehi told them he was glad to know that Nephi and Sam and their families would be ok; but he was afraid for Laman and Lemuel and their families. In his dream, Lehi saw a dark & dreary wilderness. Suddenly, a man dressed in a white robe appeared in front of Lehi and he told Lehi to follow him. As he followed, Lehi realized he was in a dark and depressing wasteland. After walking around for many hours in darkness, Lehi prayed to the Lord to please have mercy on him.

All of a sudden, Lehi saw a large open field. In this field was a tree that had the whitest, sweetest, most delicious fruit he had ever tasted before. This fruit was so special, that it could make a person happy just to look at it and to taste it; in fact, Lehi's very soul was filled with a wonderful joy and happiness while he was eating this delightful fruit. Naturally, he wanted his family to enjoy the fruit. While Lehi was looking around for his family in this dream, he saw a river nearby. Up ahead, he saw a fountain of water where the river began. He also saw his wife Sariah, and his sons Sam and Nephi. Lehi called for them and motioned with his hands to come to the tree where he was and eat this amazing fruit, which they all did. While they were eating, Lehi began looking around to try and find his sons Laman and Lemuel so they could also eat this wonderful fruit. He finally spotted them and motioned for them to come join the family, but Laman and Lemuel refused.

Lehi also saw a rod made out of iron that was along the river. It seemed to lead right to the tree where Lehi and his family were. He also saw a straight and narrow path beside the iron rod. There was a huge crowd of people, and some were trying to get to the straight and narrow path so they could come to the tree. Suddenly, a dark mist came up and many who were on the path got lost. However, some were able to grab hold of the iron rod and find their way out of the dark mist until they came to the tree by Lehi and were able to eat the fruit. Lehi looked around some more in his dream and saw a large building on the other side of the river. It appeared to be just hanging in the air, high above the earth. It was full of all kinds of people – old and young, male & female. All of them were dressed in rich clothing and were pointing their fingers and making fun of the people who had eaten the fruit. Some who had eaten were ashamed because of the people laughing at them and lost their way off the path. Lehi saw others who walked forward along the straight and narrow path and they also grabbed hold of the iron rod. They kept walking until they too ate the delicious fruit. There were other groups, however, who were walking toward the large building instead. Some were drowned in the fountain at the beginning of the river. Many lost their way completely and were never seen again as they wandered down strange roads. A big crowd went into the big building. Once they were inside, they began pointing fingers at everyone who was eating the delightful fruit, but most who were eating, ignored the people in the large building. The ones who did listen wandered away. After telling about Lehi's dream and his dealing with his sons, Nephi made some editor's notes letting us know about the plates he is writing on. There are 2 separate plates. One talks about the ministry and religious parts of Lehi's families' lives. Later on, we will find out that the other plate is about their kings and wars and fighting. Both sets of plates are called the Plates of Nephi because they deal with Nephi's people.

After Lehi shared his dream with the men in the group, he told them what will happen to the Jews left behind in Jerusalem. The city would be captured by Babylonians and be destroyed. Eventually, many Jews will return and rebuild the city. Six hundred years after they left Jerusalem God will raise up among the Jews a Messiah, or in other words, a Savior of the world. There will be many prophecies about this Messiah.

Lesson 2 Study Questions

True or False?

1. Although he was strong in the Lord, Nephi was actually quite small in size. (1 Nephi 1:135)

2. Nephi promised under oath to treat his slave Zoram very well. (1 Nephi 1:137)

3. It became necessary for Nephi to threaten to kill Zoram with Laban's sword because he fought so hard to escape. (1 Nephi 1:140-141)

4. Zoram was so angry at being captured, that he vowed to run away at every opportunity. (1 Nephi 1:142)

5. Nephi needed Zoram to stay with him to help translate the plates of brass for him. (1 Nephi 1:143)

6. This fruit was capable of making one see the future. (1 Nephi 2:49,52)

7. The fruit on the tree in Lehi's dream was an apple. (1 Nephi 2:51; 1 Nephi 3:46)

8. Once Lehi ate the fruit from the tree, he felt healed. (1 Nephi 2:53)

9. ☺ Nephi found a head floating in the river as stated in 1 Nephi 2:55. (1 Nephi 2:54)

DID YOU KNOW? How did Lehi and his people know what a Messiah was? (1 Nephi 3:4) As Christians we often call Jesus "the Christ". *Christus* is the Greek translation of a Hebrew word meaning "the anointed one". The Hebrew word is *Meshiach*, or *Messiah* as we would pronounce it. Lehi and his group would have known and understood this Hebrew word.

Significant Quotations

"For the fullness of mine intent is that I may persuade men to come unto the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and be saved." ~1 Nephi 2:4

"Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things for the children of men, if it so be that they exercise faith in him." ~1 Nephi 2:18

But the Lord knoweth all things from the beginning. ~1 Nephi 2:100

Wherefore He [God] prepareth a way to accomplish all his works among the children of men. ~1 Nephi 2:101

Lesson 3

People in this chapter:	
Messiah=Redeemer & Savior Jesus Christ	Nephi1=4th son of Lehi of Jerusalem
Lehi1=Jewish prophet from Jerusalem	Laman1=1st son of Lehi of Jerusalem
John=1 of 12 apostles of Jesus; writer	

~ *read: 1 Nephi 3:6 – 1 Nephi 5:6*

"There will be many prophecies about this Messiah"

There will be one who comes before the Messiah to prepare the way. He will baptize many with water – even the Messiah himself, but most of the Jews will not believe. They will kill the Messiah, but He will rise from the dead, and make Himself known to even the Gentiles. Then Lehi went on to say that the house of Israel is like an olive tree, whose branches will be broken off, and scattered over all the earth. This group here will be led to the Land of Promise and be scattered upon the face of the earth. And after the house of Israel is scattered, they will be gathered together again. After the Gentiles receive the fullness of the gospel, the natural branches of the olive tree (the remnant of the house of Israel) will be grafted in (come to the knowledge of the true Messiah).

Nephi thought a lot about what his father had said. While he was still thinking, the Spirit of the Lord took him up to a high mountain which Nephi had never seen before and asked him a very important question. The Holy Spirit asked Nephi, "What do you want at this time?" Without hesitating, Nephi answered telling him that he wanted his own vision which would confirm what his father had seen.

Suddenly Nephi saw the same beautiful tree with fruit that was white as snow. He asked the Holy Spirit what this meant. The Holy Spirit took the form of an angel and spoke to Nephi and showed him many cities, including Jerusalem and Nazareth. In Nazareth, Nephi saw a virgin who was very fair skinned. He was told she was the mother of the Son of God. When he looked again, he saw the virgin was holding a child. The angel told Nephi the child was the Lamb of God, or in other words, the Son of the Eternal Father. Now Nephi knew what the tree in his vision meant. The tree stood for God's love which was the most desirable thing in the world to share. His love fills the soul with complete joy. When he looked again, Nephi saw the Son of God walking among men on earth. He saw many of the people bow down and worship Him. When Nephi saw the rod of iron, he knew it was God's holy word (or scriptures) which leads to the fountain of living waters and tree of life, both representing God's love.

When the angel told Nephi to look, he saw the Redeemer of the world (the Son of God). He also saw the prophet who would prepare the way for Him. After the Lamb of God was baptized by this prophet, heaven opened up and the Holy Spirit came down in the form of a dove and rested on him. He called 12 men to follow Him. The Son of God began ministering to the people in power and great glory. The people gathered to hear Him and He healed them. Then Nephi looked once more and saw that the Redeemer was judged by the world and lifted up on the cross, and was killed for the sins of the world. Nephi saw many people who fought against the 12 men, who were called apostles of the Lamb, by the angel. And the people of the earth were gathered together and they were in a large and spacious building, like the building his father had seen. The angel told Nephi the building represented the pride of the world. The building fell, of course. He said it will be like the

600-592 BC

destruction of all people who fight against the 12 disciples of the Lamb. Then Nephi saw his descendants and the descendants of his brothers in the Land of Promise. There were as many people as grains of sand and so many cities he couldn't count them all. He saw them fighting each other, killing one another with swords. There was a dark mist over the land. Then he saw lightning, and heard thunder and earthquakes, and all kinds of terrible noises. The earth and rocks split; the mountains fell to pieces. The flat lands became torn up. Many cities sank or burned up or just crumbled. As soon as the dark mist went away, Nephi saw the Lamb of God come down from heaven and show Himself to the people. 12 disciples were chosen from this group and were ordained by the Holy Spirit.

Nephi saw 3 generations of his descendants who remained righteous. Then he saw the 4th generation. The angel told Nephi the fountain of filthy water (or river) are the depths of hell. The dark mist is the temptations of the devil which can blind men's eyes, harden their hearts and lead them away so they are lost.

A huge gulf divided the people - this was the justice of God. And while the angel was speaking, Nephi saw his descendants fighting Laman's descendants. Because of the pride of Nephi's descendants and the temptations of the devil, his brother's descendants overpowered Nephi's people. Then they stopped believing in God. His brothers' descendants became a dark, filthy, lazy, offensive group of people. When the angel told Nephi to look again, he saw many nations and kingdoms of Gentiles and the foundation of a huge church. The angel said this church is more repulsive than any other church because it captures, tortures and kills the saints of God. Nephi saw that the devil was the foundation of this church. He saw many harlots wearing gold, silver, silk, and finely woven linen. These represented the desires of this evil church of the devil. They destroy the saints of God simply for the world's praise.

When Nephi looked again, he saw a great body of water that divided the Gentiles from Laman's descendants; the angel said God's anger was now on Laman's family. There was one man among the Gentiles who was separated from Laman's descendants by the great waters. Soon that man crossed over the water. [Could this be Columbus or one of the many other explorers like Cortez?]

Later, there were many other Gentiles in captivity who also crossed the water to this land. God's anger came upon Laman's descendants [Native Americans] and they became scattered, then were killed by the Gentiles. The Spirit of the Lord was with the Gentiles and they prospered and gained the land for their inheritance. They were white, and very fair and beautiful like Nephi's family had been. They were humble before the Lord and the power of the Lord was with them. God even protected them against all other nations and they continued to prosper. Nephi saw a book. When the angel asked him if he knew what the book meant, Nephi said he didn't. He was told it came from a Jew and was a record of the Jewish people. It had the promises which God made to the Israelites as well as many prophecies, but the most important part was that it contained the plainness of the Gospel. The 12 disciples told of the truth of the Lamb of God. This record which came in its purity from the Jews to the Gentiles was engraved on metal plates. The abominable church, though, took away many plain and precious parts of the Gospel as well as many covenants of the Lord. It was done to turn the people away from God. Even part of the book fell into the devil's hands, so some of the plain and precious things were taken away from the book. Next the book went to the Gentiles. Because of some of the things which were taken out of the book, many people stumbled, allowing satan to have great power over them. Those Gentiles who came from captivity to the Promised Land were lifted up by the power of God above all other nations. This Promised Land is the same that God promised to Nephi's father. Nephi was assured that the Lord would not allow his brothers' descendants to be completely destroyed. The Lord

would visit Nephi's descendants after he visited the other Jewish people. Then the records would be hidden away. Those who seek to bring forth Zion would be blessed because they will have the gift and power of the Holy Ghost. If they remained faithful, they would be saved in the kingdom of God. That book and others will convince the Jews, my brothers'descendants, and the Gentiles of the truth of the Lamb of God that all men must come unto Him or they cannot be saved. For there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth and He will show Himself unto all nations, both the Jews, and also the Gentiles. If the Gentiles listen to the Lamb of God, He will take away their stumbling-blocks, and harden not their hearts and they will be numbered among the house of Israel. They will never be captured again. There are only 2 churches - one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil. If you don't belong to the church of the Lamb of God, you automatically belong to the other. Then Nephi saw a man dressed in a white robe. The angel said he was one of the 12 apostles of the Lamb. He will see and write many things about the end of the world. [Book of Revelation in the Bible written by John.] Nephi also saw the end of the world, but he was forbidden to write it down. Others were also shown things and they wrote them down. Those records are sealed up and will come later whenever the Lord says it is time. Nephi verified that everything he had written was true.

After Nephi's vision and experience with the Holy Spirit, he went to his father's tent, only to find his brothers arguing about what their father had told them. Nephi was so disappointed because he now knew what he had just seen and heard would actually happen because of the wickedness of men. He was also upset because Nephi had seen every last one of his descendants killed. After he had calmed down, Nephi asked his brothers what was wrong. They complained that it was too hard to understand what their father was talking about – and it was, if you didn't ask the Lord for guidance. Since they had hardened their hearts, they hadn't even thought to go to the Lord for help. They didn't understand a thing their father said about the natural branches of the olive tree and what it had to do with the Gentiles. Nephi reminded them the Lord had said to ask in faith and they would receive understanding. He then told them the house of Israel was compared to an olive tree. Weren't Lehi and Ishmael's family a branch of the house of Israel that had been broken off? The grafting comes in the latter days when our descendants no longer believe in the true Messiah. They will be scattered by the Gentiles. Later, the Gentiles will receive the complete gospel and will share it with our descendants. The Gentiles too will receive strength from the vine; they will be grafted into the olive tree, or house of Israel. The Jews will be restored and will no longer be confused, nor scattered. When his brothers heard these words, they humbled themselves before the Lord. They began asking questions about Lehi's vision of the tree of life. Nephi explained that it represented the love of God. The rod of iron was the word of God and whoever listens to God's word and follows it will not die a spiritual death. They can't be blinded or led away. He shared with them about the river of water, that it was filthy and caused a terrible gap, which separated the wicked people from the tree of life. It also symbolized hell because it kept the people from God. God's justice was like a bright flame and had no end. They would be judged by what they had done physically on this earth and by the condition of their spirit. If they are filthy, they cannot be with God, so they would have to go to hell. The wicked cannot receive the fruit from the tree of life, even though it is the most desirable fruit and the greatest of all gifts of God. Nephi knew he had spoken hard things for his brothers to deal with. Nephi told his brothers that if they were closer to God and became a better person, they wouldn't have to be spoken to so harshly. He went on to remind them to keep all of God's laws all of the time, not just when they felt like it. Laman and Lemuel felt ashamed and asked God to forgive them.

Lesson 3 Study Questions

1. Who was Nephi's guide in his vision? (1 Nephi 3:38)

2. What did he look like? (1 Nephi 3:50)

3. In what ways does this vision confirm the Christmas stories in the Bible? (1 Nephi 3:53, 58, 61, 62)

4. Where do modern-day people who believe in the Book of Mormon fit into the vision of the olive tree? (1 Nephi 4:16-17)

5. What do you learn about the tree of life from other scriptures? (2 Nephi 1:97-98) (Revelation 22:1-6,14) (Revelation 2:7) (Alma 3:58)

6. Did Lehi fail his children? (Deuteronomy 6: 5-7)

Significant Quotations

For He is the same yesterday, today, and forever. ~ 1 Nephi 3:27

And I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles… ~1 Nephi 3:151

And I said unto them, Have ye inquired of the Lord? ~ 1 Nephi 4:9

Lesson 4

People in this chapter:	
Nephi1=4th son of Lehi of Jerusalem	Moses=leader of Israelites and God's law giver
Lehi1=Jewish prophet of Jerusalem	Abraham=father of many nations in Israel
Zoram1=servant of Laban	Isaac=son of Abraham in Israel
Ishmael=friend of Lehi of Jerusalem	Jacob1=son of Isaac in Israel
Laman1=1st son of Lehi of Jerusalem	Jacob2=5th son of Lehi of Jerusalem
Lemuel=2nd son of Lehi of Jerusalem	Joseph2=6th son of Lehi of Jerusalem

~ *read: 1 Nephi 5:7 – 1 Nephi 5:200*

"…Laman and Lemuel felt ashamed and asked God to forgive them.

Soon after that, there were many weddings to prepare for. Lehi's sons, including Zoram who had recently been accepted into their family, all married daughters of Ishmael. Lehi realized he had finally done all that the Lord had commanded him to do. The marriages assured him that his family would continue and not die out here in the Valley of Lemuel.

That very night the Lord spoke to Lehi and told him that he should leave this place and continue his journey tomorrow to the Promised Land. When Lehi woke up and went outside his tent the next morning, he found a strange ball lying on the ground. It was made of brass and had 2 pointers in it. One of the pointers showed the direction they should travel, so they gathered up their stuff and crossed the river Laman. They traveled on foot for 4 days, then pitched their tents in a place Lehi named Shazer*. They stayed long enough to go bow hunting and provide food for their families, then they packed up and moved on again. They walked through the jungle-like area, along the coast of the Red Sea, always following the direction given by the pointer on the strange brass ball.

After many days of traveling, they finally decided to pitch their tents and rest awhile. Nephi and his brothers went into the wilderness to find food. Unfortunately, the brothers' bows lost the ability to stretch, so none of their bows would work. Everyone was now looking at Nephi to provide for the whole tribe, since his bow was made of fine steel and was the only one that would work, until it broke too. Nephi could hardly believe it. His two oldest brothers were furious with him. They had to go back to camp without any food for their families. They were exhausted and getting weak from hunger. Laman, Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael all began complaining because of everything they were going through. Even Nephi's father began to complain because of their suffering. They were all miserable and hungry after traveling all this way. God surely didn't want them to starve in the wilderness.

Nephi talked to his brothers again because they had hardened their hearts against the Lord. Then he went out and made a bow and arrow from wood. He also took his sling and gathered up several rocks nearby. Nephi asked his father where he should go to find food. Lehi had overheard Nephi earlier scolding his brothers and humbled himself before God. He now went to the Lord and asked Him where Nephi should go to find food for their families. The Lord spoke out loud to Lehi and told him to look at the ball. Nephi went to the top of the mountain indicated by the ball. There he killed several wild animals so his family would finally have something to eat. When he arrived back in camp, everyone was thrilled at the sight of food and gave thanks to God.

Once everyone was full, they packed up and continued on. They traveled for a long time, then

pitched their tents again in a place they called Nahom**. Shortly after arriving, Ishmael died and was buried there. His daughters mourned long and loudly for their father. Some of them also complained long and loudly because of all their suffering. They complained to their husbands. Laman, Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael decided to kill Lehi and their younger brother Nephi who was always preaching to them. They decided Nephi was setting himself up to be king over them. Then the Lord spoke out loud to the group of angry people and scolded them. After hearing God's voice, the group repented immediately. They began traveling again and the Lord blessed them greatly because of their obedience. The men, women, and children all became strong as they kept the commandments of God. The tribe continued traveling through the wilderness for eight years until they came to a land they called Bountiful because it was filled with fruit and wild honey. At Bountiful, they came to a sea, which they called Irreantum, meaning 'many waters'. They decided to pitch their tents for a much needed rest. After a while, the Lord spoke to Nephi and told him to go up to the mountain. There Nephi prayed to the Lord who told Nephi to build a ship. He told Nephi where to find the metal he would need to make the tools. He told him how to make bellows using animal skins so the fire would be hot enough to melt the metal. How did he start a fire? The Lord told him which kinds of rocks to look for so he could hit them together and cause sparks to catch the grass and wood on fire. All these years they had done without fire to cook with. The Lord sweetened the food for them so they didn't need to cook; He became their light in the darkness as long as they kept His commandments.

When Nephi's brothers realized he was making a boat, they refused to believe in him. Once again their hearts were hardened, they complained and called him a fool. No way would they help Nephi – why, he didn't even know how to build a boat! They weren't carpenters and they hadn't lived near the water growing up.

When they saw that Nephi was sad because of their attitude, they laughed at him. They called him a dreamer like their father and the only thing they regretted was that they and their wives had had to suffer all these years in the wilderness. If they had all stayed in Jerusalem, they would have been a lot better off with all they had there. The people left behind in Jerusalem were good law-abiding citizens. Lehi had judged them as evil and led his whole family away and Nephi was just as bad as their father.

Nephi reminded his brothers that the Israelites had been led out of Egypt only because they and their leader, Moses, listened to the words of God. They had been enslaved and had gone through a lot of suffering, but by the power of God, Moses held the waters of the Red Sea back and they escaped on dry land. They were fed manna in the wilderness. When there was no water to drink, Moses hit a rock and water bubbled out. When they finally crossed the Jordan River and drove out the people living in the Land of Promise who didn't believe in God, how do you suppose that happened? Because The Canaanites had rejected the one true God, He turned against them and allowed the Israelites to gain control and live in Canaan. He had made a covenant with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob and He remembered those promises made. The Israelites continually seemed to harden their hearts against their God. When they left Egypt and escaped into the wilderness and turned against Him, the Lord sent fiery snakes who bit the people. But God still loved His children and because they repented, he prepared a way for them to be healed. Some said it was too easy, so they didn't try and those who didn't died because they refused to listen to the Lord. Now the people of Jerusalem have hardened their hearts against Him again and have become full of sin once more. The time is now that Jerusalem will be destroyed and only a few people will survive. Those who do survive will be taken away as slaves. The Lord commanded Lehi to leave and go into the wilderness, both to escape the destruction and because some of the other Jews were looking to kill

him – just like Laman and Lemuel were talking about killing their father Lehi now. This made Nephi's brothers murderers in their hearts. They were quick enough to do the wrong thing, but slow to remember God. They had even seen an angel of the Lord and the angel had spoken to them, but they were beyond feeling anything – even the words of the Lord. The words were so strong, they shook the earth like thunder. Why then, did they turn away and harden their hearts against God time after time? Nephi told them he was so filled with the Spirit of the Lord that he couldn't even move. That made Laman and Lemuel even angrier and they grabbed him to throw him into the sea. As soon as their hands reached out, however, Nephi told them: "In the name of the Almighty God, I command you not to touch me for I am filled with the power of God. Even my skin has absorbed it. Whoever lays a finger on me will be struck down by God and instantly turn to dust." No one should ever talk against their father again. God had commanded Nephi to build a ship and every single one of them should help in the construction of that ship. If the Lord had performed so many miracles for their people, why couldn't he tell Nephi how to build a boat?

Nephi's brothers were stunned. They didn't have a single thing to say to him and for many days afterwards, they wouldn't so much as touch him – that's how powerful the Holy Spirit was with Nephi and they recognized it. A few days later, the Lord told Nephi to put his hand out and He would not cause Nephi's brothers to turn to dust, but would send a shock through them, so they would know that the Lord was with Nephi. Nephi stretched his hand out and Laman and Lemuel were shaken by God. They both said that they now knew that the Lord was with Nephi because the power of God shook them. They fell down in front of Nephi and started to worship him, but Nephi wouldn't let them. Instead, they were to worship God and honor their mother & father and if they did, they would live a long time in the land promised to them by God. They did worship the Lord. The Lord trained Nephi how to build the ship that would be needed to carry them all across the waters to the Promised Land. His brothers were surprised at his sudden skills. Even they recognized the Lord must have been with Nephi in order to build such a big boat without any help so once again the brothers humbled themselves before God and joined Nephi in building the boat. The Lord told Lehi it was time to get on board the ship. They loaded the boat with all the fruits, meat, honey and seeds they had been able to gather during their journey in the wilderness. By now there were two more members of their tribe. Lehi and Sariah had 2 more sons named Jacob and Joseph who had been born during their travels in the wilderness. As soon as everyone was settled on board, the winds picked up and carried them out to sea.

Quite a few days later, Laman, Lemuel, the sons of Ishmael, and their wives began to party. They sang, danced, and acted very vulgar and crude. Nephi was afraid the Lord would be angry with all of them and wipe them out by sinking the boat. Nephi tried talking to the group, but they just got mad at him. How dare the younger brother tell them what to do and not to do? Who did he think he was anyway? Their king? Laman and Lemuel grabbed him roughly and tied him up so tightly, he couldn't move. Suddenly, they realized the compass had quit working. They didn't know which way to steer the ship without the compass to guide them. Then, to make matters worse, a terrible storm came up and tossed them around for 3 days, even driving them back the way they had come. The party goers knew they were going to drown, but they never thought to untie their brother - who would never stand a chance if the waves washed over the deck. By the 4th day, the storm got worse. Nephi's older brothers and Ishmael's sons realized God was angry with them and they were all going to die. By this time, Nephi's wrists and ankles were horribly swollen and raw. His brothers loosened the ropes a little so at least his hands and feet would get circulation back in them. Instead of lashing out at his brothers, though, Nephi praised the Lord for sparing him. Lehi chewed out his disobedient sons and sons-in-law. Did the men listen?

Lesson 4 Study Questions

1. Where did Lehi find the brass ball? (1 Nephi 5:11)
2. What was unusual about the brass ball? (1 Nephi 5:11,12,32)
3. What direction did the brass ball point to start their journey? (1 Nephi 5:16a) After a while, which way did it lead them? (1 Nephi 5:55)
4. What other weapons did they have besides their bows and arrows? (1 Nephi 5:19; 1 Nephi 1:124)
5. ☺ What kind of machinery piece did Laman and Lemuel lose? (1 Nephi 5:26)
6. What did Lehi's group use for light while they were in the wilderness? (1 Nephi 5:77)
7. ☺ What very shocking thing did the Lord tell Nephi? (1 Nephi 5:163)
8. How did Nephi know how to build a boat? (1 Nephi 5:172)
9. Why did the compass quit working? (it got wet? Only worked in sunlight? (1 Nephi 5:190)
10. How long did the terrible storm on the sea last? (1 Nephi 5:197)
11. What did Nephi do while he was tied up? (1 Nephi 5:199)

Bonus Questions:

1. What are 3 other names given to the brass ball? (1 Nephi 5:190; Mosiah 1:24; Alma 17:71)
2. Why did they have to travel in the wilderness for so long [8 years]? (1 Nephi 5:54, 57)

***DID YOU KNOW:** Shazer is a form of the Hebrew word chaser (or chazier) meaning "grass". If it were an oasis, it would be a good place to find food.

****DID YOU KNOW**: The Arabic root word NHM means "to sigh or moan with another". It was at Nahom that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceedingly. Among desert Arab tribes, mourning rituals are done only by the women.

DID YOU KNOW: The word "Liahona" is actually a Hebrew word with an Egyptian ending. "L" is a Hebrew preposition which means "to". "iah" is a Hebrew shortened form of 'Jehovah'. "On" is the Hebrew name for the Egyptian "City of the Sun". Literally, L-iah-on means "To God is Light" or "of God is Light". We might say "God gives light". The final "a" reminds us that the Egyptian form of the Hebrew name "On" is "Annu". Lehi gave the metal ball a special name to show this was one of the greatest experiences of his life. He also gave it a name that no one but a dedicated Hebrew who had been influenced by Egyptian culture would have understood.

Significant Quotations

"…I did say many things unto them in the energy of my soul." ~ 1 Nephi 5:30b

"And thus we see, that by small means, the Lord can bring about great things."
~ 1 Nephi 5:36

Lesson 5

People in this chapter:	
Lehi1=Jewish prophet of Jerusalem	Isaiah=Jewish prophet from Jerusalem
Nephi1=4th son of Lehi of Jerusalem	Moses=leader of Israelites and God's law giver
Sariah=wife of Lehi of Jerusalem	Zoram==servant of Laban
Jacob2=5th son of Lehi of Jerusalem	Laman==1st son of Lehi from Jerusalem
Joseph2=6th son of Lehi of Jerusalem	Lemuel=2nd son of Lehi from Jerusalem
The One=Jesus Christ our Messiah	Sam=3rd son of Lehi from Jerusalem
Laban=keeper of Lehi's family records	Ishmael=friend of Lehi from Jerusalem

~ read: 1 Nephi 5:200 – 2 Nephi 2:4 *(EXERPTS FROM ISAIAH IN BACK OF THIS BOOK)*

"…Lehi scolded his older sons and sons-in-law. Did the men listen?

No, they threatened anyone who tried to defend Nephi. All this fighting, sinning, and threats sickened Lehi and Sariah so they about died - literally. They grieved for the souls of their older children. Lehi and Sariah grew weaker and weaker until they couldn't even get out of bed. The younger boys Jacob and Joseph were also suffering because they needed food and their mother was too weak to feed them. Even Nephi's wife and childrens' prayers and crying did nothing to soften the hearts of the older men. By now, nothing could soften their hearts enough to untie Nephi. Nothing that is, except the power of God who was threatening them with drowning. When they realized the boat wouldn't stay afloat much longer, they repented and untied Nephi. As quickly as he was untied, Nephi picked up the compass and it began working again. He prayed unto the Lord and suddenly the storm died down and the sea was calm. Nephi was able to guide the ship again toward the Promised Land. They traveled on and on and on, for many more days.

Then one day, land was spotted –at long last they had arrived! They pitched their tents and began to plant their seeds that they had brought with them. Their gardens grew and they were blessed with many different kinds of food from the old country. How wonderful to have freshly picked fruit and vegetables again. The men went out into the wilderness and found all kinds of wild animals, including cows, oxen, donkeys, horses and goats. They discovered all kinds of metals in the ground – gold, silver and copper – just waiting to be dug up and melted into tools and other useful items, such as metal plates to write on so Nephi could keep a record of the people. He kept two different journals on metal plates. One recorded the wars and eventually the destruction of the people here. The other told about the religious ministry and prophecies concerning the people, including the prophecy of the One who would come 600 years after Lehi and his family left Jerusalem. The world will judge Him as unworthy and he will be tortured with whips and beatings until he is finally crucified on a cross. He will be buried in a tomb for three days. Everyone will know of his death because there will be three days and three nights of total darkness. There will be terrible thunderings, lightnings and earthquakes. Those in the city of Jerusalem who allow the God of Israel to be crucified**,** turn their backs on signs and wonders, power and glory. They will become hated among all nations. In His time, the Lord will gather in the house of Israel once more.

Nephi read many things to his family from the plates of brass that they had gotten from Laban. He did this to convince them to deep down believe in God. He often read to them from the book of

588-570 BC

Isaiah, such as chapters 48 and 49, when God was talking directly to the Israelites through his servant Isaiah. [SEE END OF THIS BOOK (LESSONS 51 & 52) FOR MISSING VERSES FROM ISAIAH.]

When Nephi had finished reading from the plates of brass, his brothers asked him if these things would really happen or were they just symbols. The brothers seemed interested, so Nephi explained that they were both. All prophesy comes from the Spirit of God to His prophets. The prophets tell about things that will happen in the future.

One day the Israelites will be scattered all over the earth to live among many different groups of people. In fact, some of the scattering has already happened. Some are living on islands far away. Some had their language changed and were led away from the Holy Land. Some will harden their hearts against Christ and be scattered everywhere and will be hated by all men. God will raise up a strong nation of Gentiles here in this land who will scatter our descendants even more. After our future families have been scattered, the Lord will cause the Gentiles to lead them back to Him. Once more God will bring the Israelites out from slavery so they can gather back together to the land of their inheritance. They will know God has rescued them. The heathens will fight among themselves and then turn against the Israelites. They will fall into traps they themselves had set for the Israelites. They will eventually be destroyed by fire. God Himself will step in because he won't let the wicked people destroy the good people who follow Him. He will prepare a way for His people just like Moses prophesied when he told about a special prophet who judges the righteous – they will not have to worry. Those who should worry are the ones who attend churches for the power and riches and popularity it can give them by being seen in these churches. Once those people are destroyed, God's followers will be gathered together from all over the world and satan will have no power to tempt them for many years.

Everything Nephi had been discussing with his brothers had been written on those brass plates. He reminded them that he and his father weren't making up their visions and prophesies – many others before them had seen and told similar things about God, Christ, and what would happen in the future and why. Nephi wanted his brothers to turn back to God and obey His laws and commandments. If they did, they would be spared from what was to come. Lehi spoke up and reminded his rebellious sons of all the miraculous things that had happened to them since they left Jerusalem – and it was all because of the Lord's blessings. He talked about when they tied up Nephi while they were in the boat and how God spared all their lives when they repented. He spoke to them about how merciful God had been by allowing them the chance to leave Jerusalem before it was destroyed and had given them a Land of Promise to go to. Lehi told them he had seen a vision recently, showing Jerusalem being destroyed. He knew that if they had stayed much longer, all of them would have died there. Lehi was so grateful for this new land which the Lord had promised him. He knew that other people would also be led by God to this land. If they continued to obey God, it would always be a land of liberty. Lehi told of God's promise to him: if those from Jerusalem will keep God's commandments, they will do well here in this land and will not be ruled by any other nation -it will belong only to those who live here. They will be safe from others. BUT – after all they had been told and given, if they rejected the Messiah, God would give power to other nations to take the land away from those who lived here. They would be beaten down and scattered. "Pay attention, sons, before it's too late!" Lehi wouldn't be with them much longer – he had only days to live. He begged them to listen and remember his words. The Lord redeemed Lehi from Hell; but he was concerned about his older sons and sons-in-law. He was heart sick with worry about them most of the time. Lehi was afraid they would harden their hearts against God and He would either destroy them or curse them for many generations to come. Their families would suffer hunger, murder, and hatred from others. Lehi wished these things didn't have to happen,

but he knew God's will must be done because God's way was the right way. He pleaded with them to unite their hearts to the Lord. He begged them not to fight anymore with their brothers who had kept the commandments of God. Nephi had been an instrument in the hands of God in bringing them all to this Land of Promise. Without Nephi, they would have died many times. Nephi's brothers had accused him of only wanting power over them, but Lehi told them that Nephi only wanted what was best for them and to give God the glory. They had complained because Nephi had talked strongly to them, but Lehi let his boys know that the strong, harsh words came because of the power of God that was in Nephi as he spoke. What they had called anger was really just the truth being spoken. By commanding them to obey, Nephi was commanding them to obey God and not just obey their younger brother. The Spirit of the Lord was saying all those things to the brothers through Nephi – they were not Nephi's words. Lehi told his sons Laman, Lemuel, Sam and the sons of Ishmael that if they would just listen to Nephi, they would not be destroyed. As long as they were righteous, Lehi would leave them with a favorable blessing. Lehi then gave a blessing to Zoram. Even though he had been a servant to Laban, Zoram had been led out of Jerusalem by God. He had also proven himself to be a true friend to Nephi. Because he had been faithful to God, Zoram's descendants would be blessed right along with Nephi's families and they would prosper here in this land. No one would ever harm them unless they turned away from God. Lehi gave Jacob his blessing next because Jacob was the older son born to Lehi and Sariah while on their trip through the wilderness. Lehi knew that Jacob had suffered a lot because of his mean older brothers. Even at his young age, Jacob had recognized how great God is. Lehi promised Jacob that the Lord would turn his suffering into good things. Because Jacob's soul had been blessed by God, he would live safely with Nephi and would always live in service to God. Lehi recognized that in his young heart Jacob believed in The Redeemer. Even though man has sinned, salvation is free to all who ask for it. Lehi went on to speak more to them. "Mankind knows good from evil and God's laws have been given to men very plainly and so that they can understand those laws. Because of sin, man was cut off from God. Man can only come back to God through the sacrifice willingly made by the Messiah. Those who believe in the Messiah, will be saved. There are opposites to everything in life so that all can know the goodness of God. Without punishment, people would not know happiness. The devil is real and he is here to tempt mankind – after all, satan is miserable and misery loves company. While on this earth, all must repent, but at the same time, all are free to choose. Keep your eyes on the Messiah and follow His commandments. Be faithful to the Redeemer and choose eternal life with God. Don't choose eternal death where the devil rules over you in hell. I say these things to you only because I care about your souls. I want what is best for you always."

Last but not least, was the blessing of Lehi's youngest son, Joseph. Like his older brother Jacob, Joseph was born during tough times while they were in the wilderness. Lehi prayed that the Lord would also bless this land for Joseph.

Lesson 5 Study Questions

1. What did Lehi and Sariah do when Laman refused to untie Nephi? (1 Nephi 5:201-204)

2. What made the storm quit? (1 Nephi 5:210)

3. ☺ How much will it cost the world to gather the people in? (1 Nephi 5:255)

4. How will satan's church be destroyed? (1 Nephi 7:26-27)

5. What will happen to the proud and wicked people when satan loses his powers? (1 Nephi 7:33,36)

6. What will cause satan to lose his power? (1 Nephi 7:60)

7. How can you tell if a person is a righteous follower of God? (1 Nephi 7:64)

8. Why does God want our hearts broken? What is a contrite spirit? (2 Nephi 1:72)

Bonus Question: What does it mean in 1 Nephi 7:22 that the Lord will "bare His arm"? (This phrase comes from Isaiah 52:10) How will he do this? (2 are worldly ways and 2 are spiritual ways) (1 Nephi 7:22-25)

Significant Quotations

"And all that fight against Zion, shall be destroyed." ~ 1 Nephi 7:30

"And they that believe in Him, shall be saved." ~ 2 Nephi 1:77

"For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things." ~ 2 Nephi 1:81

"And they would have had no children; wherefore, they would have remained in a state of innocence, having no joy, for they knew no misery; doing no good, for they knew no sin." ~ 2 Nephi 1:113

Lesson 6

People in this chapter:	
Lehi1=Jewish prophet off Jerusalem	Laman1=1st son of Lehi of Jerusalem
Joseph2*=6th son of Lehi of Jerusalem	Lemuel=2nd son of Lehi of Jerusalem
Joseph1**=coat of many colors, ruler of Egypt	Ishmael=friend of Lehi of Jerusalem
Messiah=Jesus Christ our Savior	Sam=3rd son of Lehi of Jerusalem
Joseph3***=translator of Book of Mormon	Jacob2=5th son of Lehi of Jerusalem
Moses=leader of Israelites & God's law giver	Zoram1=servant of Laban
Judah= 1st son of Israel; king	Solomon=king of Israel and son of David
Israel=son of Isaac of old Israel; born Jacob	Isaiah=prophet of old Israel
Nephi1=4th son of Lehi of Jerusalem	

~ *read: 2 Nephi 2:5 – 2 Nephi 11:116* *(Exerpts from Isaiah in back of this book)*

"…Lehi blessed his son Joseph last…"*

Lehi told his son that he was a direct descendant of Joseph** with the coat of many colors who had been taken captive to Egypt. Joseph of old had been close to the Lord and in turn, God promised many things to him even while he was in captivity. One promise was that from his descendants, God would raise up a righteous group of people [Lehi and his family]. This group of Joseph's** descendants would split off and move far away, but would still remember the Lord their God. The Messiah would come to them later on and bring them out of darkness into the light. Joseph from Egypt had testified that God would send yet another future prophet to his descendants thousands of years after leaving Egypt. This new prophet, also named Joseph*** would bring them a great work which would tell them about the promises of God. God raised Moses to lead His people out of Egypt. The Words of the Lord written by Joseph** of Egypt's descendants [the words later would be called the Book of Mormon] and the Words of the Lord written by Judah's descendants [later known as the Holy Bible] will support each other and join together to bring peace to the house of Israel. It will also bring them knowledge of their ancestors and knowledge of the Lord's promises. Through the power of God, this future prophet will bring the message of salvation to the people***. This prophet would not be a mighty speaker, but will write down the words that are given to him. God would bring to him someone else who will speak the words and carry the message that the prophet writes down. Because of the covenant God made with Joseph** of Egypt, Lehi's son Joseph* would be blessed because his descendants would not be destroyed; instead, they will listen and follow the words of the book written by the future prophet. One of young Joseph's* descendants will become a mighty instrument for God because of his incredible faith. He will work to restore the house of Israel. Because he was still young, Joseph* was reminded to follow the teachings of his older brother Nephi.

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

*This Joseph is Lehi's son and therefore the brother of Laman, Lemuel, Sam, Nephi, and Jacob.
**This Joseph had a coat of many colors given to him by his father, Jacob, also known as Israel. This Joseph had 11 brothers. Together they are known as the 12 tribes (families) of Israel.
***This Joseph was born in America in 1805 and translated ancient metal plates into English. This translation is now called the Book of Mormon.

570-559 BC
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

After giving each of his sons a blessing, Lehiprophesied about their future generations. Knowing that his time on earth was short, Lehi called Laman's children to gather around him. He prophesied to them that if they would keep God's commandments, they would be blessed and do very well here in the promised land; but if they didn't obey God in all things, they would be cut off from God and be cursed. He knew they would grow up doing exactly how they had been taught at home – and that worried him. He left them with a blessing that if they were cursed in the future, Lehi asked that the cursing be transferred from them to their parents who had not taught them God's ways. Because of their grandfather's blessing on them, God would not destroy them, but their families to come would continue on forever. After his unusual blessing to Laman's children, he called Lemuel's children to sit by him and gave them the same blessing as the other children. Basically, they and their descendants would not be completely wiped out, but in the end, they would become a blessed people. Lehi asked the families of Ishmael's children to come to him and spoke to them also. Finally he called in his 3rd oldest son, Sam. He told his son that he and his future family would be blessed and would inherit land, like his brother Nephi. He told Sam that Nephi and Sam's families would join together and become a single family. Shortly after Lehi spoke to everyone in his household, he died. Several days after his burial, Laman, Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael became angry with Nephi because of what he said to them. He was simply repeating the warnings that the Lord had laid upon his heart. He wrote down on the other plates of brass many of the things he said to them. On these plates, however, he wrote the feelings of his heart. [2 Nephi 3:29-66 is known as the Psalm of Nephi.] After his wonderful feeling from thespiritual song to the Lord, Nephi had to deal with the harsh reality of his brothers' hatred of him. Nephi prayed to God continually over the terrible situation, but the anger increased to the point that one day the brothers decided to kill him and be done with it. The Lord warned Nephi to gather everyone who would go with him and permanently split off from his older brothers, the sons of Ishmael, and their families. It was a hard decision to make, but it had to be done in order to save Nephi's life. Nephi, his brothers Sam, Jacob, and Joseph, their sisters, Zoram and all their families took their tents and whatever they could with them into the wilderness. Once again they were on the move, but this time it was different. This time they were all believers in God. They also believed that He had led them to this promised land through Lehi and now through Nephi. They traveled for many days before finally pitching their tents. They decided to call the place Nephi where they had stopped, in honor of their new leader. In fact, they took it a step further and decided to call themselves the people of Nephi. Because they were of one heart and one mind, they kept all the commandments of God, using the Law of Moses as their rule book. The people of Nephi worked very hard. As a result, their crops did great and their flocks and herds grew large. The Lord had truly blessed them. Nephi had also packed things which were more precious to him than food and clothing. He also brought with him the sacred records on the plates of brass and the compass which the Lord had prepared especially for Lehi. Another important item he had packed was the sword of Laban. Using the sword as a pattern, they made many other swords just in case the people left behind, now called the Lamanites, came after them. Nephi knew that if the Lamanites ever found them, they would kill all the Nephites, down to the last child – the hatred of the Lamanites was that strong. Nephi taught his people to build buildings and how to work with wood and metal. They even built a temple to the Lord like King Solomon had in the old country. The Nephite temple wasn't as fancy with all the inlaid jewels and gold and silver everywhere. Regardless, it was a beautifully made temple for worship. One day, the people got together and decided that Nephi should be their king. Nephi had been a very hard working leader and would gladly continue leading them, but felt having a king was a bad idea. He knew what power could do to a person. He had read the sacred writings and knew

that one person having absolute power usually didn't work out very well for the people. Nephi remembered the words of the Lord before the big split, when the 2 tribes had been together. God had said that those who would not listen to Nephi's words would be cut off from the Lord's presence. Sure enough, the Lamanites were now without God's Spirit. They had hardened their hearts against Nephi so much, they had forced Nephi and the others to run for their lives. By doing this, the Lamanites had become cursed. Once they had been white skinned and were beautiful to look at. Instead, God turned their skin black. They would stay this way, unless they repented of their sins. Anyone who married into their group would be cursed just like they were. The Lamanites quickly became a lazy, wicked group of people. Meanwhile, Nephi consecrated Jacob and Joseph to be priests and teachers over the people. All the people of Nephi were happy. In addition to being their leader, Nephi also was the record keeper of his people. One day the Lord told Nephi to start keeping two different sets of plates. One would be for the history of the people and the other would be religious. Nephi had requested that his brother, Jacob, read to the people from the writings of Isaiah. Since Isaiah's words were written to the Israelites and the Nephites were Israelites, the message pertained to them also. Jacob stopped for a minute and told the people about a vision he had had. He saw the fall of Jerusalem that took place shortly after his family left. He saw The Messiah come to earth and witnessed how they whipped Him and finally crucified Him. The Israelites had hardened their hearts against God. Many suffered because of it, but the Lord allowed their race to survive. In time, the Lord brought all the Gentiles who would believe into the fold.

(Jacob continued his speaking on various topics)

Salvation ..... 2 Nephi 6:10-16
If there was no Resurrection ..... 2 Nephi 6:20
What will happen in the last days?..... 2 Nephi 6:31-40
Repentance ..... 2 Nephi 6:48
Mercy & Justice..... 2 Nephi 6:49-61
Prepare (woes)..... 2 Nephi 6:62-76
Listen..... 2 Nephi 6:77
Invitation to come..... 2 Nephi 6:79-82
Come in humility..... 2 Nephi 6:83-90
Prepare ..... 2 Nephi 6:91-92
All are guilty ..... 2 Nephi 6:93-98
Feast..... 2 Nephi 6:99-106
Promises to the Righteous..... 2 Nephi 7:1-4
Jesus' name revealed..... 2 Nephi 7:5
Crucify our own God ..... 2 Nephi 7:6-9
Gentiles will also be blessed..... 2 Nephi 7:12-32
Reconcile..... 2 Nephi 7:33-43

Even after Jacob finished speaking to the people, Nephi continued writing passages from the book of Isaiah because Nephi knew that he himself, his brother Jacob, and the prophet Isaiah had all seen Jesus in visions. Nephi was aware what God had said about verifying truth and establishing His Word from just three witnesses. Nephi also prophesied about:

- Coming of Christ
- Jews scattered
- A marvelous work and a wonder

Nephi continued to prophesy…

DID YOU KNOW?

Ancient Dress: It was the custom of conquerors of those times to strip their captives naked and make them travel in that condition, exposed to the weather, especially the burning sun. This was the height of cruelty and indignity particularly for the women who never exposed their faces to any man except their husband. It was also humbling for those who were used to wearing all the ornamental clothing mentioned.

Clothing & accessories: caul=head cap; tire=head dress; chain=necklace; muffler=2 piece veil; bonnet=head dress; ornament of the leg=embroidered cloth; tablet=perfume; ring=used on both hands & toes; nose rings=only the left nostril was pierced; mantle=top coat used for warmth; wimple=shawl; crisping pin=hair ornament to make hair curly; glasses=mirrors; veil=transparent silken dress

DID YOU KNOW? 2 Nephi 8:96 The word "hiss" comes from bee keepers who draw the bees out of their hives into the fields and lead them back again by a hiss or a whistle.

DID YOU KNOW? "im" is a Hebrew plural, just like "s" is an English plural. **Cherub=single; Cherubim= more than 1 cherub. Seraph=single; Seraphim=more than 1 Seraph**
By covering their faces and feet with their wings, the posture of seraphim was one of worship and reverence before God.

DID YOU KNOW? Shiloah (also spelled Siloam) was a pool within the city walls of Jerusalem. King Hezekiah had the pool made and the conduit (water pipe) and brought water throughout the city. (2 Kings 20:20)

DID YOU KNOW? *2 Nephi 4:39 "And because of their cursing which was upon them, they did become an idle people, full of mischief and subtlety, and did seek in the wilderness for beasts of prey."*
Mischief can mean any incident with evil or injury present.
Subtlety can mean hard to understand

Lesson 6 Study Questions

1. What did Nephi call his brothers? (2 Nephi 3:37) Why?
2. Name something that gave Nephi the strength to continue on. (2 Nephi 3:39)
3. What does "redeem" mean in 2 Nephi 3:51?
4. ☺ Why didn't Nephi want to have fun on a road that wasn't fancy? (2 Nephi 3:55)
5. How does 2 Nephi 3:64 compare to James 1:5?
6. If Nephi tried to build a temple like Solomon's, why couldn't he build it? (2 Nephi 4:22-25)
7. Does Jesus have wings? (2 Nephi 11:22)
8. What will happen to the people who do away with the prophets and saints? (2 Nephi 11:62-69)
9. How did the Gentiles cut down the Nephites and Lamanites? (2 Nephi 11:81-82)
10. What is a familiar spirit? (2 Nephi 11:84) Some biblical scholars believe that it refers to witchcraft. Does the Book of Mormon shed more light on this phrase?
11. What is the sealed book mentioned in the Book of Mormon as well as the Bible? (2 Nephi 11:86, 126-144; 2 Nephi 12:80; Ether 1:86-90; Isaiah 29: 12-16, 20-21) [SEE 'SEALED BOOK' BEFORE LESSON 52]
12. What are secret combinations as mentioned in 2 Nephi 11:93? (See also Inspired Version of the Bible Genesis 5:14-15) How does this compare to John 3:20 in the Bible?
13. What is priestcraft? (2 Nephi 11:106)

Significant Quotations

"For my soul delighteth in the scriptures…" ~ 2 Nephi 3:29

"And the Lord spoke it and it was done." ~ 2 Nephi 4:38

"…Let your soul delight in fatness." ~ 2 Nephi 6:102

"All those who shall believe on his name, shall be saved in the kingdom of God." ~2 Nephi 11:22

Lesson 7

People in this chapter:	
Nephi1=4th son of Lehi of Jerusalem	Zenos=prophet of old Israel
Nephi#=Nephite king title-not related to Nephi	Laban=keepler of Lehi's family records
Jacob2=5th son of Lehi of Jerusalem	Sherem=a Nephite antichrist
Messiah=Jesus Christ our Savior	

~ read: 2 Nephi 12:1 – Jacob 5:27 *(EXERPTS FROM ISAIAH IN BACK OF THIS BOOK)*

"…Nephi continued to prophesy…"

One of the things Nephi prophesized was that what little they knew about God was taught to them by other men – they did not seek Him out themselves. Then, God would cause something absolutely wonderful to happen – He would bring the people a sealed book. It would be up to each one to accept it or reject it. He would also restore the church on earth that Christ began and that was talked about in the New Testament. Once more He would set up the prophets and priesthood to lead the people. And finally, He would re-establish Zion in all its glory.

Some churches would claim to be God's church. Others would say they were God's church. Soon the churches will fight over which is the true church. It will be a very confusing time to the people. Which church should they follow? Which preacher should they believe? Each one will begin teaching their own beliefs. Eventually they will say, "There isn't a real God over us anymore. Christ did God's work when He redeemed us and then gave His power to men. It's ok if you sin from time to time. After all, no one is perfect. God will understand. Oh, He might give you a little 'slap on the wrist', but rest assured, He is a God of Love, so you'll get to heaven, regardless of what you do or don't do. Don't worry about it. Just live for today and feel good about yourself."

Nephi warns: Don't believe these churches! The pride of the people have caused these churches to lose sight of our Lord and they have become corrupted. These churches don't even believe in a hell anymore. You'd better believe there is a hell…and it is as real as heaven.

The devil is working any which way he can on people. He will go straight to their hearts and get them all stirred up against anything good. He will pacify and gently lull them. He will flatter them and whisper in their ears. He will tell the people, "There's really no such thing as a hell, and the devil certainly isn't real. They were just made up to scare you into behaving." Sometimes he is very obvious and sometimes he is very sneaky. But he is always busy and keeps after someone until they join his side.

There will be a day of reckoning. A day when every single person will stand before God. There will be many who say, "We have received the word of God and we don't need any more words of God because we have enough! A Bible! A Bible! We have a Bible and we don't need another Bible." God says, "To those who listen and obey, I will give more wisdom and understanding. Those who don't seek Me out, won't receive anything more – it's just that simple."

****

Nephi called the people together. He knew that his time on earth was short, so he chose a king for the people. Nephi was so loved by the people that they decided to name all of their kings after him. The first king he appointed was called Second Nephi, the next was Third Nephi, and so on. He

559-544 BC

left his brothers Jacob and Joseph to be the spiritual leaders of their people. Finally, Nephi passed from this life to be with God. Jacob worried about the spiritual condition of his people and cautioned them from time to time. He warned them not to become like their ancestors (the Jews in the old country) who actually preferred difficult rules and detailed ceremonies over the plain ways God had tried to direct them. The Jews "looked beyond the mark" – searching for frills instead of the fabric of their religion and their God. They chose complicated ways because there could always be an escape or excuse if they didn't comply or if they failed. They could always say they just didn't understand – it was too difficult for them. This incredible blindness caused them to reject the truths spoken by the prophets, and to eventually reject the Messiah himself. Jacob warned the group it was very easy to get caught up in rules and regulations, but God preferred plain and simple ways.

Later that month, after the people had had time to think about what Jacob said, he called for the people to gather together again for another time of sharing. Jacob talked to them about the prophet Zenos. Even though he lived in the old country, the Nephites were familiar with the writings and prophecies of Zenos because his words had been engraved on the brass plates which Nephi had gotten from Laban.

The story Jacob shared this time with the people was the parable of the olive vineyard. They knew that a parable was a symbol story which had a spiritual meaning. It was worded this way so that only the spiritually minded people would be able to understand the full meaning after study and prayer. Those who had no desire to study after God's ways would simply hear a story about some olive trees. Each piece of the story really meant something about the Jewish people.

Jacob explained some of the symbols from Zenos' parable:

Symbols used in the Parable of the Olive Vineyard

The vineyard	The world
Master of the vineyard	Jesus Christ
The servant	The Lord's prophets
Tame olive tree	The house of Israel, the Lord's covenant people
Wild olive tree	Gentiles, or non-Israel (later in the parable, wild branches are Israelites who have fallen away)
Branches	Groups of people
Roots of the tame olive tree	The gospel covenant and promises made by God that constantly give life & nutrition to the tree
Fruit of the tree	The lives and works of mankind
Digging, pruning, fertilizing	The Lord's work with His children, trying to persuade them to be obedient & produce good fruit
Transplanting the branches	Scattering of groups throughout the world or restoring them to their original positions
Grafting	The process of spiritual rebirth where one is joined to the covenant
Decaying branches	Wickedness and moving away from God
Casting branches into the fire	The judgment of God

1st Visit (time before Christ's ministry on earth)

Seeing that the old tame olive tree (Israel) was dying, the master pruned and fertilized it. Dead branches were burned and wild branches (Gentiles) were grafted into the old root tree. Tame branches were transplanted to the "nethermost parts of the vineyard" into good ground, poor ground, and the poorest ground.

2nd Visit (time of Christ on earth)

The master inspects the old root tree and finds the wild branches bearing good fruit. The old root tree is saved. He visits the tame branches planted in the "nethermost parts" and finds those planted in the good ground bearing part good and part wild fruit (Nephites and Lamanites). Those branches planted in the poorest ground were also bearing good fruit.

3rd Visit (apostasy)

The master again visits the old root tree. He finds it heavy with a lot of fruit. He then visits the tame branches in the "nethermost parts". These have become corrupt. In the "good" spot, the wild branches have overtaken the tame (Lamanites overtook the Nephites).

4th Visit (wicked are destroyed as righteous increase, Israel gathered, millennium)

The master calls servants to help. He brings branches from the "nethermost" trees to the old root tree (gathering of Israel). The branches of all the trees are gradually cut back until the growth is balanced. The bad branches are burned. All the trees bring forth natural (good) fruit.

The story of the olive vineyard means that branches of the olive tree (Israelites) ended up all over the earth (the Lord's vineyard) and were grafted into the wild olive trees (the Gentile nations). By doing this, they are fulfilling the promise that God made to Abraham.

A few years later, Jacob's belief in Christ Jesus was tested – not by a Lamanite, but by one of his own people, another Nephite named Sherem.

Sherem started preaching to the Nephites. The problem was, he declared there was no such being as Jesus Christ. Sherem had such a deep voice and a way with words that the people were drawn to him. He honestly believed what he said and worked hard to draw the people away from their belief in Christ. It seemed to be working because many of the people believed him. One day, he went to Jacob because he was the spiritual leader of the Nephites. Sherem hoped to shake Jacob's faith, but Jacob had seen angels and heard the Lord speak out loud to him, so his belief in God and Jesus Christ was unshakable. Still, Sherem put him to the test. It came time for the final showdown. Sherem told Jacob that he had committed blasphemy because Jacob had led the people away from God by talking about Jesus who would come in the future. Sherem said no one could possibly know about the future. Jacob point blank asked him if he were denying Christ who was to come. Sherem insisted if there ever were a Christ, he wouldn't deny him, but there isn't any being like that, nor will there ever be. Jacob then asked him if he believed in the scriptures and Sherem said that yes, of course he believed in them. Jacob shook his head and informed Sherem that he couldn't truly understand the scriptures because they were filled with writings and prophesies about the Messiah and that he knew it for a fact because the Holy Spirit had told Jacob it was true, then showed him. Sherem denied any such thing as being possible and challenged Jacob to prove it by having the Holy Spirit show Sherem a sign about Jesus. Jacob said he wouldn't believe it even if he did see a sign because he was on the devil's side; but he said that if it was God's will, God would show Sherem a sign by knocking him down. As soon as Jacob said this, Sherem fell down and couldn't get back up.

Lesson 7 Study Questions

1. Is it ok to be happy? (2 Nephi 12:9-12)

2. Nephi mentions "wo" 7 times in 2 Nephi 12:31-41. What does "wo" mean?

3. What is a whoredom, religiously speaking? (2 Nephi 12:18)

4. What does the Book of Mormon say baptism is? (2 Nephi 13:24-25)

5. Why did Nephi's eyes water? (2 Nephi 15:4)

6. What is an anti-Christ? (Jacob 5:2-4)

7. If it is wrong to seek for a sign, is it wrong to seek the gifts of the Spirit? (Jacob 5:22-23)

Significant Quotations

"And therefore, wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion." ~ 2 Nephi 12:30

"Feast upon the words of Christ; for behold the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do. ~ 2 Nephi 14:4

"Oh be wise: what can I say more?" ~ Jacob 4:17

Lesson 8

People in this chapter:	
Nephi1=4th son of Lehi from Jersalem	Omni=son of Jarom
Sherem=a Nephite antichrist	Amaron=son of Omni
Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior	Chemish=brother of Amaron
Jacob2=5th son of Lehi from Jerusalem	Abinadom=son of Chemish
Enos=son of Jacob from Lehi	Amaleki=son of Abinadom
Lehi1=Jewish prophet of Jerusalem	Mosiah1=Nephite king of Zarahemla
Jarom=son of Enos	Zedekiah1=king of Judah from old Israel
Moses=leader of Israelites & God's law giver	Zarahemla=leader of the Mulekites

~ read: Jacob 5:28 – Omni 1:34 *(EXERPTS FROM ISAIAH IN BACK OF THIS BOOK)*

"…As soon as Jacob said this, Sherem fell down and couldn't get back up…"

After several days, Sherem requested the people to gather round him. Once they had gathered, Sherem told the crowd that he now denied all the things he had been teaching them and he confessed about Christ and the power of the Holy Spirit and the ministering of angels. He went on to warn the people that he had been lied to and tricked by the devil. Sherem told them about hell and eternity and eternal punishment. Finally, Sherem was too weak to talk anymore and he died. When the people saw what had happened, the power of God knocked them down too. When they recovered, the peace and love of God were restored among the Nephites. They felt so strongly that they tried to send the message of God and Jesus Christ and the comforting Holy Spirit to the Lamanites, but the Lamanites hated the Nephites so much they refused to listen to anything the Nephites had to say. Instead, the Lamanites preferred declaring war on their sworn enemies who were once their blood brothers. The constant attacks continued even when Jacob died and the Nephites lost another great spiritual leader. Shortly before he died, Jacob gave the sacred plates and other religious treasures to his son Enos and told him all the things Nephi had told Jacob when he gave those items to Jacob.

Enos was a man of the world, and he was also a hunter. Enos' father was Jacob, who was the greatest minister of his day. Because he was a descendant of the family of Lehi, and was Jacob's son, he inherited the care of and writing on the brass plates. Along with the keeping of the plates, came responsibility for the religious leadership of the Nephites. This was a great problem for Enos. He had listened to his father's preaching and had lived as best he could, but he could not truly say that he *knew* that God heard prayer, or that He could forgive sins, or that He cared at all for the Nephites. Enos felt that he wasn't even a very good man. How could he pray, and preach, and advise others how to live? Would God ever speak to him? How could he, Enos, a hunter, ever presume to deliver a prophecy? In his home back in the city, were the brass plates. After his father's death, he had unwrapped them and read what had been written there by Nephi whom he could only dimly remember, and by his father Jacob. How was it possible that he, Enos, would ever have anything to add to the brass plates? The words of Jacob, his father, went through his mind as he wandered alone in the woods. He could have no peace, he realized, until he had tested himself and the Lord. Enos knelt alone in the forest and began to pray. He had never really seriously prayed for much before. Enos cried unto God in mighty prayer for his very own soul. All day he

prayed, calling upon God, and fearing that he would never get an answer. When night fell, he continued, almost in desperation. Finally a voice spoke to him saying, "Enos, thy sins are forgiven thee, and though shalt be blessed." Enos was overjoyed. He knew beyond a shadow of a doubt that his sins were forgiven, but he was confused as to how it was done. The Lord knew what was in his heart and told Enos it was because of his faith in Christ whom he had never even seen or heard, but believed in.

When Enos had first knelt in prayer, his prayers had been for himself. But after the voice had spoken to him, something changed in Enos. He forgot about himself and began to think of the Nephite people. He was concerned for the welfare of all the Nephites, so again he went to the Lord in prayer and again the Lord told Enos that as long as they were obedient, the people and the land would never be cursed. From a simple hunter, worried about his own fate, Enos had been changed into a leader of his people. He was willing to put their needs above his own. He even prayed to God for the Lamanites, who were then raiding the farms of the Nephites, killing many innocent people and causing destruction wherever they went.

Knowing how easily the Nephites could turn toward sin, Enos shared with God a great desire he had. He asked that if the Nephites should sin and fall away from God and be destroyed, and the Lamanites weren't completely destroyed, that God would protect the record of the Nephites so that one day, when the time is right, the plates would be brought forth to the Lamanites so they could be brought to salvation. The Lord promised Enos that the records of the Nephites would be preserved and brought forth to the Lamanites at some time in the future. God was really pleased that this young man would be so concerned about his enemies who had attacked his city over and over. With renewed strength, Enos prophesied and bore his testimony to the Nephites. The Nephites in turn, tried to win the Lamanites over to the Lord, but the Lamanites weren't ready to hear about God because their hatred was so strong, and they had been accustomed to living like animals. It was awful. They became wild and ferocious, eating only raw meat and drinking animal blood. They lived in filth and wore only loin cloths. It was easy to forget that the Lamanites actually had some good qualities, such as the Lamanites' love for their families. Their one goal in life, it seemed, was to destroy every last one of the Nephites.

Shortly before Enos passed away, he gave the plates to his son, Jarom. Jarom was probably a soldier, because most of his short story talks about the constant wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites. During Jarom's lifetime, the Nephite nation really grew. They kept the laws of Moses and remembered to keep the Sabbath day holy. The laws of the land were very strict. The kings and spiritual leaders remained faithful to the Lord and they taught the people God's ways. They also remained alert to attacks by the Lamanites and fortified their city. Soon, the Nephites became a very rich people. They had a lot of gold and silver. Their buildings were decorated with finely detailed carvings of wood. They had machinery and all kinds of farming tools. They were, of course, ready for war at any time with the Lamanites, with their bows and arrows, darts, and javelins. Even though there were more Lamanites, the Nephites were able to win in battle because of their trust in God.

Just before Jarom died, he passed the plates and records to his son Omni. Poor Omni was neither a writer nor a religious man. But because he was a descendant of the great Nephi, he inherited the care of the plates and was responsible for adding to the record. Sitting in front of the plates, with the metal writing rod [we might say 'stylus'] in his hand, Omni searched his own soul harder than he had ever done before in his life. He knew he was writing in a book that was very special and sacred. This was a book that contained some of the greatest inspired writings of his people and of the world, and he, a soldier, had to add something that would be read by people for

centuries to come. Omni thought long and hard about it and decided he could write only the truth. Painstakingly he very humbly admitted in writing, "Behold, I am a wicked man and I have not kept the statutes and commandments of the Lord as I ought to have done. Omni, in turn, handed the plates over to his son Amaron. Amaron wrote only a few sentences in which he says that the most wicked part of the Nephites were destroyed. There must have been a terrible battle, or war, between the 2 great groups of people. Many Nephites were killed, and according to Amaron, only the righteous were saved. Since Amaron didn't have any sons to give the plates to, he called his brother Chemish to his house one day. The 2 men looked at the plates together. Amaron, with great difficulty, put down his few sentences while his brother watched, and then he handed the plates to Chemish. Chemish gave the plates to his son, Abinadom. Abinadom had little to add to the sacred records. He did mention that the wars never stopped between the Nephites and Lamanites. After commenting that he knew of no revelations or prophecies to add to the record, Abinadom passed the plates along to his son Amaleki.

Amaleki may have reflected on the recent writers who had given such short accounts of their lives. He knew some who would later read these records might be tempted to skip over the writers from Enos to Abinadom. None was a prophet or great writer. Some even admitted to being unrighteous. But they all should be remembered. They all did at least one important thing – they kept the records. Circumstances for them may have been extremely difficult. They were at war, their country was invaded, their cities had been destroyed. These men had been away from home fighting and they had to leave the records in the care of their wives or other trusted family members. They had to maintain great secrecy, because the Lamanites would have liked nothing better than to have captured the records of Nephi. Through all this, they were faithful to a commandment given by an ancestor 200-300 years before when Nephi had told them to guard the record with their lives. Amaleki wrote on the sacred plates about King Mosiah. Like Nephi, Mosiah was divinely appointed to lead a colony of Nephites from the land of Nephi into a strange and dangerous wilderness.

It all began when Mosiah was warned by God that he and as many as he could gather should leave the land of Nephi immediately and into the wilderness. Mosiah of course listened and obeyed and was led to a land called Zarahemla. Soon after they arrived, Mosiah and his people discovered another group whom they called the people of Zarahemla. It must have seemed obvious that these people were neither Lamanites nor Nephites. The people of Zarahemla seemed very excited, however, to see another tribe. Mosiah and his group couldn't understand anything the people of Zarahemla said and likewise, the people of Zarahemla couldn't understand Mosiah and his group. Anxious to find out about this new group of people, Mosiah and his followers taught the others to speak their language so everyone could communicate.

Finally Mosiah was able to learn that the people of Zarahemla had also come from Jerusalem. They left when Zedekiah, king of Judah was captured and taken to Babylon. The people of Judah who escaped, ran into the wilderness, then with God's help, crossed the ocean and landed right where Mosiah had found them. Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fore fathers as best as he could remember. Unfortunately, because they had brought no records with them, and could not read nor write, so much of their history was lost to them. It didn't take long for the 2 groups to unite as one. Mosiah the Nephite leader was appointed by Zarahemla, leader of the people of Zarahemla to be king over all the land of Zarahemla.

Lesson 8 Study Questions

1. Did Jacob really speak French? (Jacob 5:48)

2. What does "remission" mean? (Enos 1:3)

3. Who did Enos wrestle with? (Enos 1:3)
   CAUTION: THIS IS COULD BE TRICKY…READ THE SCRIPTURE CAREFULLY!

4. Many people don't believe the Book of Mormon could be true because of things like the mention of "machinery" in the Book of Mormon (Jarom 1:19). What types of machinery do you believe may have been used during this time period?

Significant Quotations

"And it came to pass that peace and the love of God were restored again among the people; and they searched the scriptures..." ~ Jacob 5:38

"And the laws of the land were exceeding strict…And we multiplied exceedingly and became exceeding rich."
~Jarom 1:13,19

"…And they loved murder…" ~ Jarom 1:15

"Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently, teaching the law of Moses, and the intent for which it was given." ~ Jarom 1:24

Lesson 9

People in this chapter:	
Mosiah=king of Nephites	Nephi1=son of Lehi from Jerusalem
Zarahemla=leader of Mulekites	Moroni=son of Mormon; writer
Coriantumr=last survivor of Jaredites	Mosiah2=son of Benjamin
Benjamin=son of Mosiah	Helorum=son of Benjamin
Amaleki=son of Abinadom; keeper of records	Helaman=son of Benjamin
Mormon=Nephite leader; writer	

~ *read: Omni 1:35 – Mosiah 1:91*

"…Mosiah appointed by the leader of Zarahemla to be king over land of Zarahemla…"

One day, Zarahemla remembered a large stone his people had found and had it brought to King Mosiah. It had strange markings on it. By the power of God, King Mosiah was able to interpret those engravings. The stone told about a man named Coriantumr who was the last of his people. Zarahemla must have recognized the name Coriantumr as the man who had been discovered by the his people and lived among them for 9 months before he died. Coriantumr's ancestors had come to this land from the great tower when the Lord changed the language of the people. It seems Coriantumr's people had become so corrupt, the Lord had allowed them to destroy each other. Their bones were lying somewhere north of the land of Zarahemla. Unfortunately until now, the people of Zarahemla had known nothing about Coriantumr or his people because they couldn't speak his language. It seems King Mosiah had come upon evidence of a 3rd group of Jewish people who had come to this Promised Land! All too soon it seemed, King Mosiah grew too old to rule anymore. His son Benjamin took over for his father as king over the land of Zarahemla.

Soon after, the Lamanites found the Nephites who had traveled to the land of Zarahemla and fighting broke out almost immediately. There was a lot of bloodshed, but the Nephites seemed to always have an advantage over the Lamanites and were finally able to drive them out of the land of Zarahemla. Amaleki preached and prophesied to the people. He invited all to come unto God through Christ who is the only one with the power of redemption. He told about the ministering of angels, the gift of speaking with tongues, and in the gift of interpreting languages. He also taught fasting and prayer and staying close to the Lord always. If his people would do these things, they would be saved.

One day, a large group of the Nephites decided to go back to the land of their inheritance, so they left the land of Zarahemla and went into the wilderness. Their leader was a mighty man physically, but he was stiff-necked and unwilling to listen to the people. A fight broke out among the group and everyone was killed except for 50 who escaped and returned back to Zarahemla. Those 50 really wanted to return to the land of Nephi, though, and persuaded more people to go with them. One of the men in the new group was Amaleki's brother. Amaleki never heard from his brother again and soon realized he himself was old. He needed to pass the sacred items on to someone else, but he didn't have any children or other eligible relatives who could carry on for him. Amaleki knew that King Benjamin was a good and honest man, so he asked the king to continue writing in the sacred plates and to take good care of the treasures of Nephi.

279-124 BC

EDITOR'S NOTE:

- *The book of Omni ended about 130 BC*
- *The book called Words of Mormon was written around 385 AD*
- *The book of Mosiah begins approximately 130 BC*

The book called the 'Words of Mormon' was written near the end of Mormon's life. It connected 2 major series of writings from 2 different plates. The Spirit of the Lord told Mormon that the small plates of Nephi (which ended when King Benjamin was a young man) should be used to replace his own abridgement of the book of Lehi, which was the first book on the large plates of Nephi (this first book ended when King Benjamin was an old man about ready to die). So there wouldn't be a gap in the history of the Nephites, Mormon included the major events of King Benjamin's life in the book called 'The Words of Mormon'.

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Before Mormon turned the sacred plates over to his son Moroni, he wrote more about King Benjamin so those who would later read the writings from the sacred plates would come to the knowledge of God and salvation through Christ. King Benjamin ruled during a troubled time. There were people who claimed to be Christ. There were false prophets, false preachers and false teachers among the people. Each was punished according to their crimes. King Benjamin was a holy and just man and had many holy men in the land to help him. They preached with power and authority and had to be harsh at times because many of the people were stiff-necked and refused to listen. Finally, after years of work, King Benjamin was able to restore peace to the land of Zarahemla. King Benjamin had 3 sons: Mosiah, Helorum, and Helaman. He taught them to read and write in the language of his ancestors. He taught them from the holy records about their history and about God. He emphasized the importance of the sacred treasures, including the plates which contained their family tree and history of their people. The holy writings of God were vital to their life. Without the commandments of God, they would soon forget to believe and would end up like the Lamanites who did not read, write, or worship God. King Benjamin reminded his sons to keep the commandments of God always. If they did, God promised that they would prosper in the land.

When King Benjamin finished instructing his sons in every thing and every way that he could, he realized that he would not be around much longer, so he should choose someone to take his place. The question was: who would it be? King Benjamin asked his son Mosiah to come see him. He asked Mosiah to get the word out to all the people living in the land of Zarahemla, both Nephites and Mulekites, to please gather together because he (King Benjamin) had something to tell them. Tomorrow he would tell the people that Mosiah was to be the new king over all the people there. He would also give a name to the tribe of people living in this land of Zarahemla so all mankind everywhere would know these people were special because they kept God's laws and commandments. This name would last forever, unless God erased it because they allowed sin to rule their lives. If they ever do become sinful as a people, they will be weak like the Lamanites. God will no longer protect them as He has done with the Nephites. It has only been by God's protection that the Nephites haven't fallen victim to the bitter hatred of the Lamanites.

King Benjamin went on to tell Mosiah about all the different parts of being a king and how to rule the kingdom. He also put his son in charge of keeping the records and guarding the plates of brass, plates of Nephi, sword of Laban, and the ball which had guided the Nephites in their journey to the Promised Land. When Lehi's family was unfaithful, they were driven back and could not continue. They suffered hunger from droughts and sores and problems until they would finally remember as a single family unit to turn back to God and ask His forgiveness.
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Mosiah left his father and immediately began to spread the word about tomorrow's gathering at the temple to hear the king.

The people came from all over Zarahemla. There were so many, they couldn't count them all. They brought with them the best of their flocks so they could offer a sacrifice while they were at the temple. The people took the law of Moses very seriously. They wanted to give thanks to God who had brought them out of Jerusalem and protected them from their enemies. They also thanked God for guiding fair and honest men to be their teachers and leaders, including their king who had done so much for the people. These leaders had established peace throughout the land of Zarahemla and taught them to keep God's laws. They were a happy and loving people. They loved the Lord God and all men, even their enemies.

As soon as the people arrived at the temple, each family pitched their tents. They positioned the tents so the opening would be toward the temple so they could stay inside the tent, but still hear what King Benjamin had to say. The crowd was so big, however, that King Benjamin had a tower built so the people could all see and hear him. Even talking as loudly as he could from the tower, the people still couldn't hear him, so he had his words written down and distributed among the people.

He told them: "I have not commanded you to come here and take what I say lightly or half-heartedly, but that you should really listen to me. Open your ears that you will actually hear, and your hearts that you will understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be shown to you. I asked you here today, not to be afraid of me or think of me as more than a man, because I'm just like you. I get sick and have problems too, but I have been chosen by you and was dedicated for this holy use by my father, and was allowed by God to be a ruler, and a king over this people. I have been protected by God's mighty power to serve you the best I can. I have never taken gold or silver or any other payment from you; nor have I ordered you to be put in jail or allowed slavery, murder, stealing, adultery, or any kind of wickedness. Instead, I have taught you to keep all of God's commandments. I myself have worked hard with my own hands so you wouldn't have to pay taxes. I have served you as best I could so you wouldn't have any hardships, making life too difficult for you. I don't have to tell you this – you've seen it with your own eyes. I'm not saying I've done all this to brag about it because I've done it as a service to God. I'm telling you this so you can learn from it. When you serve others, you're also serving God. You have called me king. If the king works hard to serve all of you, shouldn't you in turn work hard to help each other? If you thank me for my help, shouldn't you also thank each other and more importantly thank God who is your heavenly king? We are all so unworthy of God's blessings, even if we serve Him with everything we've got all the time. All He asks is that we keep His commandments. He Himself has promised us that if we keep His commandments, we will succeed here in this land. He never changes, so what He says, is what will happen. If we do what He says, He will bless us beyond anything we can imagine. I'm saying this very plainly now so everyone - young and old - can understand me. Please remember the terrible things that have happened to those who sinned. Concentrate on the wonderful things that happened to those who kept God's commandments. Those beloved people who follow His ways and remain faithful are blessed both physically here on earth with things we can see and touch as well as spiritually with their reward in heaven when they live with God in a state of never ending happiness. Please, please, please remember these things and that they are true for God Himself has told us.

Lesson 9 Study Questions

1. Why did the Book of Mormon change from first person ("I, Nephi…") in *Words of Mormon* 1:5-13) to third person ("he had…") in *Words of Mormon* 1:18?

2. What did King Benjamin use to fight against the Lamanites? (Words of Mormon 1:20-21)

3. Who were the sons of King Benjamin? (Mosiah 1:2)

4. What does "the mysteries of God" mean? (Mosiah 1:4, 7, 39)

5. What does the word "suffered" mean in Mosiah 1:42?

Significant Quotations

"For there is nothing which is good, save it comes from the Lord…" ~Omni 1:45

"But behold, I shall take these plates…and put them with my record. And I do this for a wise purpose; for thus it whispereth me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me. And now, I do not know all things; but the Lord knoweth all things which are to come; wherefore, he worketh in me to do according to his will. And now I, Mormon, proceed to finish out my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi; and I make it according to the knowledge and the understanding which God has given me." ~Words of Mormon 1:9-13

"O how had you ought to thank your heavenly King." ~ Mosiah 1:51

"He doth require that ye should do as he hath commanded you, for which if ye do, he doth immediately bless you." ~ Mosiah 1:58

"My immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God." ~ Mosiah 1:66

Lesson 10

People in this chapter:	
Benjamin=Nephite king & son of Mosiah	Amaleki=brother of Ammon-a Mulekite
Jesus=Christ our Messiah and Savior	Helem=brother of Ammon-a Mulekite
Mary=mother of Jesus	Hem=brother of Ammon-a Mulekite
Benjamin=son of Mosiah1; Nephite king	Limhi=son of King Noah and a Lehi-Nephi king
Mosiah2=son of Benjamin; Nephite king	Noah=son of Zeniff and a Lehi-Nephi king
Ammon=a Mulekite leader of 16 men	Zeniff=father of Noah and a Lehi-Nephi king

~ *read: Mosiah 1:92 – Mosiah 6:10*

"…King Benjamin asked the people to remember God's words, then continued…."

There's something else that God has laid upon my heart to tell you. The all powerful Lord who rules in heaven will come down and live among us in a human body. He will work mighty miracles like healing the sick, raising the dead, causing the crippled to walk straight, the blind to see, the deaf to hear. He will cure many different kinds of diseases; He will remove evil from the hearts of people. He will be tempted and suffer terrible pain, strong hunger and thirst and extreme tiredness more than man can suffer and still live. He will actually sweat blood – why? For us. He will suffer for all the shameful wickedness and sin that people ever have or will commit. He will be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his mother shall be called Mary. He will come so that all men everywhere might be saved through their faith on His name. His own people will reject him and say he's just a man. Some will say he's the devil and they will brutally whip him, then crucify him to a cross. 3 days after he is dead and buried, though, He will come back to life and be ready to judge the world. And behold, all these things are done so that His blood can atone or take the place of our sins. He can redeem or save us from our sins if we ask Him to. There is no other way to enter heaven except through calling upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord and Savior. Natural man is an enemy to God because as natural men and women we have sinned. We must listen to the Holy Spirit and stop acting like the natural man and become a saint by acting like a holy believer and obey without being pushy, be modest without bragging and wait for the Lord with love in our hearts. There will come a time when news of a Savior will spread to every tribe, language, and people. When that time comes when all learn of Jesus, the only ones who will be found innocent will be the little children. They can't repent or turn away from sinning because they don't understand yet what sin is. It is only through turning away from sin and actively believing on the name of the Lord God and showing true repentance by our actions that we receive God's forgiveness. Those who are evil will see their own actions and feel the guilt which will cause them to back away from the presence of the Lord into endless misery and torment from which they can never return. They will receive eternal punishment for their souls. They will taste the anger of God as surely as if they drank it from a cup. They will receive justice or fairness just like Adam received justice when he ate the fruit from the forbidden tree. They will not receive mercy or undeserved forgiveness because they did not ask for it or even look for it. Their torture will be like being in a lake of never ending fire and horrible smells. The flames will never go out and the fumes will last forever and ever.

124-200 BC

When King Benjamin finished speaking to the people as an angel had instructed him, he looked around and realized all the people had fallen down because they were afraid of the Lord. They saw themselves as they really were in their sinful ways. They all cried out together, "O have mercy, and may the blood of Christ, give us forgiveness of our sins, and our hearts may be purified, for we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created heaven and earth, and all things, who shall come down among the children of men."

After they spoke, the Spirit of the Lord filled them full of joy. They received a forgiveness of their sins because of their great faith in Jesus Christ who would come to earth one day. King Benjamin told the people to love and serve each other. Take good care of each other. Not one of them should ever have to go hungry again. There are so many ways to sin, so they had to be very careful to keep God's laws and continue using their faith all the rest of their lives.

As soon as he finished speaking, King Benjamin asked the people if they believed what he had said. They answered with a speech of their own: "Yea, we believe all the words which you have spoken; and also, we know they are true because of the Spirit of the Lord with unlimited power, which has caused a great change in us, , that we have no more desire to do evil, but to do good continually. God has revealed to us through the Holy Spirit things which will happen in the future. We rejoice by the things our king told us. This great knowledge.causes us willingly to enter into a covenant with our God, to do His will, and to be obedient to His commandments. May He command us for the rest of our days. We are sick to think about bringing upon ourselves a neverending torment, that the angel spoke of; that we may not drink out of the cup of the anger of God." King Benjamin was pleased with what the people had done. They had made such a good promise with the Lord that King Benjamin wanted the people to take the name of Christ to help them to remember to always obey God. Every single person that day except little children entered into the covenant with God and took on the name of Christ.

Since King Benjamin was getting very old, he appointed his son, Mosiah, to be king over the people of Zarahemla. King Mosiah was a very good and wise king like his father. He worked in the fields right beside his people. He didn't want to become rich by taxing the people. He believed everyone, even the king, should work hard for what they had. The people of Zarahemla lived in peace for three years.

As was discussed previously, a large group of Nephites living in the land of Zarahemla decided several years ago to return to the land of Lehi-Nephi. Unfortunately, all but 50 were killed, so those 50 returned to the land of Zarahemla. They regrouped and took others with them to try again to live in the land of their original inheritance. Those who remained in the land of Zarahemla began to wonder about their brothers who had left so many years ago and gone back to the land of Lehi-Nephi. King Mosiah gave permission for 16 of his strong, young men to go find out what had happened to the group. It was no easy job to find the land of Lehi-Nephi and they wandered around 40 days in the wilderness before they found the group of Nephites who were living in the land of Nephi. That group of 16 young men from Zarahemla were led by Ammon.

Ammon and his three brothers Amaleki, Helem, and Hem were taken prisoner by the Nephites and brought before King Limhi. The king told the prisoners that he was the son of Noah, grandson of Zeniff, who had led a group of people out of the land of Zarahemla years ago. He asked Ammon who they were and what they were doing there. Ammon told him they were from the land of Zarahemla and had been sent to find out what had happened to the group that had been led by Zeniff. The king was excited to hear who they were. He told the prisoners that they themselves were like slaves to the Lamanites and were very heavily taxed. Now that these 16 young men from Zarahemla were here, they could help the people of Lehi-Nephi break free. Instead of being slaves

to the Lamanites, the people living in the land of Lehi-Nephi would gratefully become slaves to the Nephites from the Land of Zarahemla if they would help rescue them from the terrible situation they were in. The next day, King Limhi called all the people together. He introduced Ammon to the people and asked Ammon to tell them everything that had happened in the land of Zarahemla since Zeniff had led King Limhi's people to Lehi-Nephi.

After King Limhi dismissed the people, he asked Ammon if he could translate, but Ammon told him he couldn't. King Limhi explained that because they couldn't stand being slaves anymore, he had sent out 43 people to get help from the people of Zarahemla. They got lost in the wilderness, then discovered a land which was covered with bones laying everywhere among ruins. They found 24 gold plates with engravings, but the people of Lehi-Nephi couldn't read the plates. Ammon told King Limhi about a man who could translate the engravings because this man has a gift from God. This gift is called interpreters that he can look through. Only those commanded by God can look through them. Anyone else would die. A person using the interpreters is called a seer. The King of Zarahemla just happens to have this gift from God. The king said, "a seer is greater than a prophet." Ammon explained that a seer is a revelator, and a prophet too. Being a seer, is a great gift from God. By using this great gift with faith, a person can work mighty miracles and help his fellow beings.

The king was excited and thanked God. He knew there was a great mystery on those plates. The interpreters must have been designed to reveal all mysteries like this one to the people – if only the people would listen and seek for wisdom. Instead, they're like a flock of sheep who run from their shepherd and scatter, leaving themselves open to the wild animals of the forest.

Meanwhile, what previously happened to Zeniff and his people between the time they left Zarahemla until Ammon was captured by King Limhi? Since Zeniff knew the land pretty well, he had been sent out to spy on the Lamanites and to find their weaknesses so the small Nephite army could destroy them once and for all. What he found instead, was that there was hope for the Lamanites. Deep down they were good to each other and Zeniff saw the good in them. He reported back to the Nephites in the wilderness that their leader should make a treaty with the Lamanites. The man in charge, however was a strict, bloodthirsty warrior. When he heard Zeniff's report, he became furious and called for Zeniff to be killed for his treasonous report. He knew that the only good Lamanite was a dead Lamanite. Sides were taken, with father fighting against son and brother fighting against brother until most of the Nephite army was killed right there in the wilderness without a single Lamanite in sight. The few who were left decided to return to the land of Zarahemla.

Zeniff just couldn't let it drop, though. His heart's desire was to live in the land of their inheritance. Once again he gathered a group and left Zarahemla, heading back to the land of Nephi. Soon, however, the land dried up and there was no food to eat. They had lots of other problems, until they finally realized they had forgotten to include the Lord. They stopped and prayed immediately. Soon they came to the spot where the civil war had recently taken place and pitched their tents. Zeniff and 4 of his friends left the tent camp and went into the Lamanite city to talk to the king. They wanted to know if they could live side by side with the Lamanites in peace. The Lamanite King promised that they could live in the land of Lehi-Nephi and the land of Shilom. He even went one step further and commanded the Lamanites living in that area to move out so Zeniff and his group could live once more in the land of their inheritance.

DID YOU KNOW?

HISTORY OF THE PEOPLE OF MULEK (Mulekites)

Josiah was a good king over Judah, but was killed by an Egyptian warrior in the battle at Megiddo. After the death of King Josiah, his second son, Jehoahaz, was chosen by the people to be king of Judah. But Egypt rejected the will of the people and dethroned King Jehoahaz. In his place, the Egyptians crowned Josiah's firstborn son, Eliakim, since they could maneuver him easier. After his coronation, Eliakim changed his name to King Jehoiakim, and became a useful tool for Egypt to bring Judah under Egyptian control. Then Egypt fell at the battle of Carchemish and Babylon ruled the world. Messengers from the courts of King Nebuchadnezzar demanded taxes at the gates of Jerusalem, but Jehoiakim still loyal to the Egyptians, refused. War and destruction was beginning. This was clearly seen by the prophets – the most vocal being Jeremiah who wore an oxen's yoke around his neck and warned of the hardships of captivity, the greatest of which would be the yoke of slavery brought by the Babylonians. The king refused to listen to the warnings of the prophets, calling them traitors. King Jehoiakim died mysteriously as the Babylonians attacked the gates of Jerusalem. Jehoiachin, teenaged son of Jehoiakim, gave up the throne and to avoid bloodshed, surrendered to Babylon. The Babylonian army entered the holy city and captured 10,000 of her people, including the young king Jehoiachin, the prophet Ezekiel, and the sacred temple treasures. All were carried to Babylon. Mattaniah, the last great king of Judah was crowned by the Babylonian ruler Nebuchadnezzar. After his coronation, Mattaniah changed his name to Zedekiah, and for 11 years he ruled over Judah. The Babylonian taxes increased to an unbearable burden until Zedekiah rebelled and refused to pay tribute to Nebuchadnezzar. The Babylonians attacked Jerusalem without warning. Zedekiah and his officers tried to run, but were overtaken a few miles outside of Jerusalem. The sons of Zedekiah were brutally murdered before their father's eyes. Then, Zedekiah, having seen his entire line of descendants erased from the face of the earth, was blinded, bound with brass chains, and carried captive into Babylon. King Zedekiah had no clue that his youngest son, Mulek, had been smuggled out of the country. After a long journey across the ocean, young Prince Mulek arrived in the Land of Promise along with several others who had fled with him. [Holy Bible 2 Kings 21:24-25:7)

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

The Nephites and Mulekites fulfilled Isaiah's prophesies when they arrived in the Promised Land:*…"I come up to the height of the mountains, to the sides of Lebanon; and I will cut down the tall cedars thereof…and the remnant that is escaped of the house of Judah shall again take root downward, and bear fruit upward: For out of Jerusalem shall go forth a remnant, and they that escape out of Mount Zion; the zeal of the Lord of hosts shall do this. [Isaiah 37:24, 31, 32]"*

Both Lehi and Mulek had been uprooted by the Lord from Jerusalem and escaped to the Promised Land where they again took root down ward and bore fruit. Ezekiel's riddle spoke more plainly about Mulek's father, King Zedekiah: *…Thus saith the Lord God; A great eagle with great wings…came unto Lebanon, and took the highest branch of the cedar; he cropped off the top of his young twigs, and carried it into the land of traffic; he set it in a city of merchants. [Ezekiel 17:3, 4]*:

Ezekiel went on to explain what he meant: *Know ye not what these things mean? ...Behold, the king of* Babylon [Nebuchadnezzar] *is come to Jerusalem and hath taken the king thereof* [Zedekiah], *and the princes thereof* [the sons of Zedekiah], *and led them with him to Babylon; …all his bands shall fall by the sword. …Thus said the Lord God; I will take the highest branch of the high cedar* [King Zedekiah], *and will set it; I will crop off from the top of his young twigs* [sons of Zedekiah] *a tender one* [Prince Mulek], *and will plant it upon a high mountain and eminent* [the Promised Land]. *[Holy Bible Ezekiel 17:12-13, 20-22]*
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 10 Study Questions

1. How did Jesus bleed? (Mosiah 1:101)

2. What action can cause both you and your neighbor to sin? Mosiah 2:46-47

3. According to Mosiah 3:8 who is the father of those who have entered into a covenant with God? (hint: the answer is not "God".)
   EDITOR'S NOTE: What is a father? One who gives life. Christ saved us from death and offers us eternal life with Him. Because of His sacrifice on the cross, we become spiritual sons and daughters and He is our Father. It is not enough to ask the Lord to assist you in becoming His son or daughter. You must seek it with all your soul, covenanting to take upon you the name of Christ, keep His commandments, and always remember Him. Such a covenant will require prayer for help and guidance. Like Benjamin's people, your heart must be changed also.

4. What does it mean that God will seal you as mentioned in Mosiah 3:21?

5. What tax did Nephites living in Land of Lehi-Nephi have to pay to Lamanites? (Mosiah 5:35,36)

6. What was the penalty if the Nephites didn't pay their taxes? (Mosiah 5:36)

7. What 2 periods of time can a seer know about? (Mosiah 5:78)

8. Why was there a Civil War among the Nephites? (Mosiah 6:3-4)

9. What is an affliction? *(mentioned in Mosiah 6:6 but answer not given-look it up)*

10. What is a famine? What caused it among the Nephites? (Mosiah 6:6)

11. Why did Zeniff want to see the king? [state 2 related reasons] (Mosiah 6:8)

12. What was the king's response to Zeniff's request? (Mosiah 6:9)

13. Did Zeniff's group live among the Lamanites in the land of Lehi-Nephi and the land of Shilom? (Mosiah 6:10)

Bonus Question: Mosiah 1:17-18 says King Benjamin gave his people a name. What was it? (Mosiah 3:11**)**

BONUS QUESTION: Every person who heard King Benjamin's sermon entered into a covenant to keep the commandments and yet King Benjamin called priests to teach the people. Why? (Mosiah 3:6; and Mosiah 4:3-4) **To teach them even more about Got and how to live. Those who meet together often find it easier to remain close to God.**

Significant Quotations

"And now, if you believe all these things, see that ye do them." ~ Mosiah 2:17

Lesson 11

People in this chapter:	
Zeniff=father of Noah & Lehi-Nephi king	Nephi=4th son of Lehi from Jerusalem
Laman=Lamanite king	Sam=3rd son of Lehi from Jerusalem
Laman2=1st son of Lehi from Jerusalem	Noah=son of Zeniff and wicked Nephite king
Lemuel=2nd son of Lehi from Jerusalem	Abinadi=Nephite prophet during Noah's time
Ishmael=friend of Lehi from Jerusalem	Moses=Israelite leader and God's law giver
Lehi=Jewish prophet from Jerusalem	

~ *read: Mosiah 6:11 – 7:99*

"…the Lamanite king gave Zeniff and his people the land of Lehi-Nephi and Shilom…."

Zeniff and his people were thrilled! They began to build buildings and repair the city walls surrounding the cities of Lehi-Nephi and Shilom. They worked the ground and planted all kinds of seeds – everything from corn, wheat, and barley to neas and sheum. They also planted fruit trees. Zeniff's people grew in numbers and were greatly blessed with plenty for everyone.

It seems King Laman had been watching and waiting to see if his plan would work, and it did. But after only 12 short years, King Laman began to worry that the Nephites were getting a little too large in numbers and a little too strong. His plan all along had been to wait until the Nephites had fixed up the land, then overpower them and make slaves out of them. The Lamanites were a very lazy, idol-worshipping people and it didn't take much to stir them up with talk about making the Nephites their own personal slaves. They would have whatever they wanted and wouldn't have to lift a finger to get it.

In the land south of Shilom, all was quiet and peaceful. The Nephites were watering and feeding their animals and working their farms. Suddenly, a big group of Lamanites came out of nowhere and began killing the Nephites, stealing their flocks and grabbing the corn as it grew in the fields. Those Nephites who were able to escape, ran to the city of Nephi and called to Zeniff for protection. Zeniff armed them with bows and arrows, swords, cimeters, clubs, slings, and every kind of weapon they could come up with. Zeniff and his people joined the escapees from the city of Shilom.

They cried to God for help and He answered their prayers. The first day of battle carried on into the night. By daylight, the Nephites had killed over 3,000 Lamanites. Unfortunately, almost 300 of the Nephites also died in battle.

Peace settled over the land again. This time, however, Zeniff wasn't taking any chances. He saw to it that there was a stockpile of weapons made and kept ready because he kne]]w the Lamanites would someday be back for more. He set up guards throughout the land so there wouldn't be any more surprises. The men went back to working the land. The women made clothing. So it continued for a little over 20 years.

After a while, King Laman died and his son took over as ruler of the Lamanites. He began to stir up his people to go up against the Nephites again and overpower them

This time, however, the Nephites were ready, thanks to the guards who had been posted throughout the land. The Lamanites came to the land just north of Shilom this time. What a sight they were with their various weapons, shaved heads, and only loin cloths on their bodies. Zeniff

187-148 BC

told the women and children to go hide in the wilderness. He then told the men and boys – old and young alike - to grab their weapons and prepare for battle. They went, asking the Lord to give them strength. The Lamanites didn't know anything about God, so they were depending on their own strength. The Lamanites were strong, wild, ferocious and bloodthirsty. They believed what their fathers had taught them – that all Nephites were evil. Their ancestors (Laman, Lemuel, and some of Ishmael's sons and daughters) had been driven out of the land of Jerusalem because of Lehi's sins and had been wronged by Nephi, Sam, and the rest of the Ishmael clan. They were wronged in the wilderness, while crossing the sea, and it continued after they arrived in the land of their inheritance. They were angry with Nephi because they said he was trying to take over and become the ruler of them all. Everyone knew that family leadership went to the oldest ones because they had been born first. They were also furious when Nephi and his people left the group and stole the brass plates, taking them with him. Those twisted beliefs had been handed down from generation to generation of Lamanites, each one teaching their children to hate, murder, steal, and finally destroy all Nephites they came across. This hatred had grown for many years among the Lamanites. It was his hatred that caused King Laman to trick the Nephites and make them suffer for many years. The Nephites were now more determined than ever to fight for their lives, all the while putting their trust in the Lord.

This time, the Nephites killed so many of the Lamanites that they couldn't even count them all. The few Lamanites that were left ran out of Nephite territory.

With the crisis over, the hard working Nephites went back to their farms and chores.

Zeniff was getting old and turned the leadership of his people over to his son named Noah. Noah was nothing like his father. One of his first acts as king was to get rid of the trusted priests who had served his father and choose younger men who would do what he told them to. Almost immediately he brought about changes in the laws and sacred traditions that had kept people together as one, replacing them with laws of his own that would bring the people under tighter control.

With no morals, Noah allowed the evils of polygamy and other crimes.

Heavy taxes were laid on the people, equaling 1/5 of each Nephite's possessions. A large percentage of the taxes were divided among the priests and military leaders. The rest was used to build spacious buildings and provide luxuries for the few. Even the original purpose of the temple was changed from one of worship to a monument of power for Noah and his priests. Curious designs, some looking pagan, were carved in the walls of the temple. Two high towers were built – one was by the temple and overlooked the city of Shilom and Shemlon (where the Lamanites lived). The other tower was built north of Shilom on a hill which had been a place of safety when the Nephites had to escape from the Lamanites. Everything was built with money he got from taxing his own people.

He had a lot of vineyards and winepresses built. Soon wine flowed like water throughout the land and many of his people stayed drunk on wine much of the time.

Very slowly – just a few at a time – the Lamanites began sneaking in to the land. They started killing Nephites who were working in their fields or taking care of their animals. Hatred for the Nephites had returned. King Noah sent out his armies and the Lamanites were driven back to their own lands. The Nephite army returned, bragging about what they had done on their own with no help from anyone. They bragged, saying their 50 could stand against thousands of Lamanites. The Nephite army had actually enjoyed spilling Lamanite blood, thanks to the leadership and teachings of their king and priests.

There was one man among them, though, whose name was Abinadi. He spoke to the people the words that the Lord gave him: "I strongly warn you people, for I have seen your disgusting acts, wickedness, and idol worship. Unless you repent, and turn to the Lord your God,He will allow your enemies to win and enslave you. You will constantly suffer by their hands. You will know that He is the Lord your God, and He is a jealous God. Because He will allow you to be punished for your sins. When you all beg for help, He will be slow to act. Unless you show by your behavior that you are sorry for what you have been doing and ask God to forgive you, He won't even listen to your prayers, nor will He deliver you from your suffering."

When King Noah heard about it, he said, "Who is this Abinadi that I and my people should be judged by him? Who is the Lord, that he should bring such trouble to my people? Bring Abinadi to me – NOW! "Bring him here so I can kill him for saying such things." the king demanded. The people all looked for Abinadi, but they couldn't find him anywhere – Abinadi was in hiding. Two years later, Abinadi began walking among them again, this time in disguise. Once again he began prophesying the words of the Lord. He told them what would happen because of this generation's sins and because they had not repented, but had forgotten God. He said they would become slaves and terrible things would happen to them – everything from near starvation because of bugs eating the crops to being treated no better than donkeys with heavy burdens to carry, to being beaten by the winds and hail. Unless these people repent, the Lord will destroy them completely. There will be a written record of them left behind so future generations will know what happened to them.

The people didn't like hearing all these things, so they grabbed him, tied him up, and took him to King Noah. They told the king all that this man had said and that he was claiming it came from God. "We know that none of us are guilty of any sins, so we shouldn't be condemned by God or be judged by this man. This man is lying. Besides, we're too strong to be captured by the Lamanites and become slaves."

The King commanded that Abinadi be thrown into prison while he and his priests decide what to do with him. The priests wanted to question him so they could trip him up, so the King commanded Abinadi be brought before them.

Instead of tripping up Abinadi, the prophet answered all their questions and ended up confusing the priests. They asked him about different scriptures and what they meant. Abinadi answered that they were priests and were supposed to be teaching the people. They were supposed to understand the spirit of prophesy and now they were coming to him to find out what these things meant? If they understood the scriptures and didn't teach them to the people, they were misrepresenting and changing God's ways. Abinadi asked them what they were teaching the people. The priests answered that they were teaching the Law of Moses. Abinadi came right back with the question that if they were teaching it, why didn't they themselves keep those laws? He told them they were only after riches and had committed many sins, which in turn caused the people to commit many sins. God had told him to warn the people. If they knew God's ways, couldn't the priests tell he was speaking the truth? Yes, they knew he was speaking the truth and they should be shaking before God because of their sins. He asked them if salvation comes by keeping the Law of Moses and they said yes, it did.

Abinadi said if you keep the commandments of God, you will be saved. The laws which God gave Moses stated, "Thou shalt have no other God before me. Thou shalt not make unto thee any idols, or any likeness of anything in heaven above, or things which are in the earth beneath." He asked them if they have kept these laws, then he answered himself that no, they had not kept even the first two laws, nor had they taught them to the people.

Lesson 11 Study Questions

1. What is a cimeter as mentioned in Mosiah 6:19? Is it smaller than an inch???

2. 12 years after Zeniff & his people arrived in the land of Lehi-Nephi, there was a battle. How many were killed? (Mosiah 6:23,25)

3. In 3 words or less, , why did the Lamanites hate the Nephites? (Mosiah 6:46-53)

4. What is ziff? (Mosiah 7:6,11)

5. How much did King Noah tax his own people…and why? (Mosiah 7:6-18)

6. Why were the Nephites living in Lehi-Nephi blind? (Mosiah 7:43)

7. How valuable is the life of a king? (Mosiah 7:50)

Significant Quotations

"And he [Noah] caused a breastwork to be built before them [the priests], that they might rest their bodies and their arms upon, while they should speak lying and vain words to his people." ~ Mosiah 7:15

Lesson 12

People in this chapter:	
Abinadi=Nephite prophet during Noah's time	Messiah=Jesus Christ our Savior
Noah=wicked Nephite king & son of Zeniff	Alma=priest of wicked king Noah
Moses=Israelite leader and God's law giver	Helam=Nephite convert baptized with Alma

~ *read: Mosiah 7:100 – 9:52*

"…Abinadi asked the priests if they had kept God's commandments, then he answered no…."

The king had heard enough. He told the priests to take this man away and kill him because he was crazy. They all got up and came toward Abinadi, but suddenly Abinadi told them not to touch him because God would kill whoever laid a hand on Abinadi because he had not yet delivered his message from God. Besides, he hadn't finished answering their questions.Abinadi said, "You are angry with me, but I have just spoken the truth. When I repeated the words God had given me to say, you judged me as being crazy." The Spirit of God was in Abinadi and his face shined with a brilliant light and no one in the room dared to touch him. There was no doubt that he was speaking with power and authority directly from God. He continued speaking. "I see that the truth of your sins cuts right to your hearts and my words fill you with wonder and amazement, but also with great anger. But I must finish my message and remember this: what you do to me afterwards will be an example of things to come." Abinadi read the Ten Commandments to the priests and King Noah because he knew they had not taught them to the people. They hadn't even studied these commandments of God for themselves and had no idea what was in them.

After reading the Ten Commandments, he asked if they had taught these to the people and urged them to keep these laws of God. He answered for them – No, because of they had, the Lord wouldn't have sent me to prophesy about the bad things to come because of the sins of the people. He reminded the priests that they had told him that salvation comes from the Law of Moses. He told them how important it is to keep the Law of Moses for now, but there would come a time when the Law of Moses was no longer needed. By the way, he informed them, salvation doesn't come from just keeping the Law of Moses. If God himself didn't willingly pay for the sins of the people, all would die in their sins even with the Law of Moses. The reason these very strict laws were given was because the Israelites were a very stubborn people, quick to sin, but slow to remember the Lord. These Laws were given to keep them close to God and away from sin. Did the people understand this? No! Moses and all the prophets had prophesied to the people about a Messiah to come who would redeem or pay for the sins of all people everywhere throughout time. The prophets have all said the same thing in different ways. God himself would come down to the earth and take the form of a man and walk around with great power doing good everywhere. He would bring life to the dead. He would suffer for his great works, though. Isaiah said he would grow up as any young man of his country, not looking different or strange, but just as a regular person. He would be rejected and hated. He was beaten and whipped because of our sins. He suffered because of us and never cried out or complained. He died with sinful men but was buried among the rich because he had not done anything evil.

Abinadi went on to explain the Trinity to the priests. That portion of God that came to earth and lived as a man is called the Son of God. That portion of God who remained in heaven with all

148-147 BC

the power and glory is known as the Father. They are two parts of the same God – the eternal Father of heaven and earth; and the earthly flesh known as the Son who was tempted but did not give in to any temptation. He allowed himself to be made fun of, violently whipped, and be disowned by his own people, even after he worked many wonderful miracles among the people. He allowed the people to torture and finally kill him. By doing this, God won a victory over death and gave the Son power to be a go-between for the people of this earth and God in heaven. Who was allowed to speak up for the innocence of this man as was the custom? No one was given the chance to. When His soul returns to the Father, the Son will watch over all who follow him. Who will that be? Whoever listened to the prophesies about the Lord coming for his people and believed that God would save them and looked forward to that day when they would be freed from their sins. Those are His people and they will join Him in the kingdom of God. Because death has been defeated and Christ has power over death, there will be a resurrection of the dead. All those who believe will come alive in the first resurrection. They will live with God. Also in the first resurrection are those who died before Christ came to earth and died not knowing about the Son of God or anything about salvation. They too will have eternal life, as will little children.

But you all should be very afraid because God will not redeem those who rebel against him and die in their sins. From the creation of the world, all those who knowingly rebelled against God, those who have known the commandments of God and refused to keep them will have no part in the first resurrection. Are you scared yet? You should be. No one who willingly rejects God and His laws will be saved. There would be no justice if all were saved whether or not they accepted God. His laws must be obeyed. There will be a time when every nation and people on the earth will know about the salvation of the Lord. The wicked will be thrown out and will cry and beg, but it won't do any good. The devil, that old serpent from the Garden of Eden, will have power over the wicked who refused to follow God. Both the wicked and the devil are en enemy to God.

If Christ had not come into the world and risen from the dead, causing a victory over death, there could have been no resurrection. But Christ did come and did rise from the dead. The victory does belong to Christ. He is the light and life of the world. He is a light that can never be darkened and life that can never die. All mortals will put on immortality and be judged by Christ according to what they have done. If they have been good and followed Christ, they will have endless life and happiness. If they have been sinful and refused Christ, they will have endless torment and be given to the devil who rules over them eternally. These people went their own ways and did whatever they wanted to, having never called upon the Lord while the arms of mercy were spread out to them. They were commanded to repent, but they refused. Shouldn't you shake and fear and repent of your sins, knowing it is only through Christ that you can be saved? If you teach the Law of Moses, also teach the people that it is only a shadow of things to come. Teach them that redemption comes through Christ the Lord who is the everlasting Father.

As soon as Abinadi finished speaking to the priests, King Noah commanded that the priests take him out and kill him. "One of the young priests named Alma was a direct descendant of Nephi. Alma believed what Abinadi said, mostly because they were all guilty of the sins Abinadi had testified they had done. Alma begged the king to let Abinadi go, but the king got even more angry when he heard that and threw Alma out of the palace. Then the king thought about it and sent his servants to go find Alma and kill him. Alma must have sensed that he got away too easy, so he hid for many days. He passed the time by writing down all the words which Abinadi had spoken.

Meanwhile, the king called for his guards to tie up Abinadi and throw him into prison. After 3 days of talking to his priests, King Noah commanded that Abinadi be brought to him again. He told the prophet that there was enough evidence against Abinadi to have him put to death. Abinadi had

claimed that God himself would come down from heaven and live among the people. He could save himself, however, if he took back the terrible things he had said against the king, his priests, and the people in general. Abinadi told the king he couldn't take back what he had said against everyone – even if they threatened to kill him - because it was all true, every last word. If they chose to kill Abinadi, they would be killing an innocent man and his death would be a testimony against them when they died and came before God.

King Noah was afraid because of what Abinadi had just said about going before God on Judgment Day, and was just about to order Abinadi's release, when the wicked priests of King Noah accused Abinadi of insulting the king. This made the king mad and he ordered Abinadi to be burned at the stake. When the flames started burning his body, he cried out to the priests, "What you have done to me, your children will do to others who also believe in the salvation of God. You will contract all kinds of diseases because of your sins. You will be beaten and scattered like sheep are scattered by wild beasts. You will be hunted and finally suffer death by fire like me. God will take revenge on those who destroy His people. Oh, God, receive my soul." Then Abinadi died.

Meanwhile, Alma repented of his sins as a priest of King Noah and went quietly among the people teaching the words of Abinadi. He taught them how they could be redeemed only because of Christ's suffering, death, resurrection and going back to heaven to rule with God. Many who heard him believed what he was saying. He continued preaching and teaching quietly so the king wouldn't hear about him. Just outside Lehi-Nephi, Alma found a place called Mormon, named after a previous Nephite king. The forests around Mormon contained wild beasts, but also made a good hiding spot for Alma, who lived by a fountain of pure, clean water, which he named the Waters of Mormon.

One day, there was quite a large gathering of believers at the Waters of Mormon. Alma recognized these believers wanted to come into the fold of God and be called His people. They were eager to help each other, and were willing to stand up as witnesses for God, even if it meant death. Alma asked these believers if they would like to be baptized in the name of the Lord, entering into a covenant with Him to serve Him and keep His commandments so His Spirit would strongly be with them. They all clapped their hands for joy and said in unison, "Yes, with all our hearts, this is what we really want."

Alma went down into the water first with Helam and stood in the water saying, "O Lord, pour out thy Spirit upon thy servant, that he may do this work with holiness of heart." As soon as he said those words, the Spirit of the Lord was with Alma as he continued by saying, "Helam, I baptize thee, having authority from the Almighty God, as a testimony that ye have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead, as to the mortal body; and may the Spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you; and may he grant unto you eternal life, through the redemption of Christ, whom he has prepared from the foundation of the world." After Alma said these words, both of them were buried in the water. They came up rejoicing and were both filled with the Spirit of God.

Alma took another with him into the water and baptized the second person as he did Helam, except he himself didn't go under the water again. So it continued until he baptized everyone there that day – all 204 people. Each one was filled with the grace of God. And they called themselves the church of God, or the church of Christ, from then on. Those who later believed were also baptized by the same power and authority from God and they were added to his church. With authority from God, Alma ordained priests, so that there was 1 priest for every 50 members. The priests preached and taught the people about the kingdom of God. Alma commanded the priests to teach nothing except the things he had taught them, including what had been spoke by the holy prophets.

Lesson 12 Study Questions

1. How does Mosiah 7:114b compare to Exodus 20:5?

2. Discuss "the sins of the fathers" as noted in Mosiah 7:114

3. Why did Abinadi quote the 10 commandments?

4. Why did Abinadi quote from Isaiah?

5. Why did it please God for Jesus to be whipped? (Mosiah 8:25)

6. What does damnation mean? (Mosiah 8:85)

7. What was the real reason King Noah put Abinadi to death? (Mosiah 9:10-12)

8. What are fagots and how did they kill Abinadi? (Mosiah 9:20)

9. Who baptized Alma? (Mosiah 9:43-45)

10. How many were baptized by Alma on the day Alma himself was baptized? (Mosiah 9:45,47)

Significant Quotations

"I perceive that they [the commandments of God] are not written in your hearts" ~ Mosiah 7:111

"And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no evil, neither was any deceit in his mouth." ~Mosiah 8:24

(Another way to say this scripture: And his grave was expected to be among the criminals; but he was buried in a rich man's tomb instead because he was not guilty of any crime or sin.)

"Break forth into joy, sing together, for the Lord hath redeemed Jerusalem."
~ Mosiah 8:68

Lesson 13

People in this chapter:	
Alma=former priest of Noah-now preacher	Limhi=son of King Noah
Gideon=Nephite enemy of King Noah	Abinadi=Nephite prophet during Noah's time
Noah=wicked Nephite king of Lehi-Nephi	

~ *read: Mosiah 9:53 - 9:142*

"…Alma told his priests to teach nothing but what Alma had taught them…."

They preached on repentance and faith in the Lord who had redeemed His people with his sacrificial death and resurrection. He told the people that there should be no fighting amongst themselves – they should all remember their faith and baptism and be united in love to each other. He taught them to keep the Sabbath day holy and give thanks to the Lord. One day every week was set aside to gather together for learning and worship. He told the priests whom he had ordained to support themselves by working and not have others do everything for them. In exchange for their work, the priests became strong in the Spirit, gaining a knowledge of God so they could teach with power and authority. Alma taught the people of the church to give. Those who had a lot, should be able to give a lot; those who had a little, should be able to give just a little; those who had nothing, should receive what they needed. The people willingly shared their gifts and possessions with each other.

One day, the king noticed a movement among the people and sent his servants to watch them and find out what was going on. On the day of the week set aside to go to Mormon, the people there were discovered by the servants of the king. The king accused Alma of stirring up the people to rebel against him, so he sent his army to destroy them all.

Alma and his followers (about 450 total), found out the king's army was coming and took their tents into the wilderness to hide out. The army looked everywhere, but didn't find a trace of them and finally returned to the king with the bad news that the believers had all vanished. There hadn't been much need for an army for quite a while, so the king's men had become a small group.

Those people still left in the city of Lehi-Nephi began taking sides. A number of them began to threaten the king. One of them who was tired of the evil king and his selfish ways was Gideon, who had vowed to kill the king. One day, he came upon King Noah and they began to sword fight. When the king saw that he was losing and that Gideon was about to win, the king ran for his tower which was near the temple. The chase was on! Just as Gideon was about to climb up the tower, the king looked around and saw an army of Lamanites on their land. The king cried out asking for Gideon to spare him so he could help fight against the Lamanites. The king really wasn't concerned for his people. He was worried about his own life…

Gideon spared him. King Noah commanded the people to follow him (Noah) and run because the Lamanites were coming. They all followed the king into the wilderness, even the women and children, running as fast as they could. The Lamanites, however, were faster and began killing the Nephites. When King Noah saw this, he ordered all the men to leave their wives and children behind and run away. Many of the men refused and chose to stay with the women and children. The rest of the men did as the king commanded and ran away, leaving their families behind to be killed by the Lamanites. Those who had stayed with their families, asked their beautiful daughters

147-145 BC

to step in front and beg the Lamanites not to kill them all. The Lamanites softened because the girls were so pretty and agreed not to kill the Nephites. Instead, they captured them and took them back to the Nephite homes in the land of Nephi and agreed to let them live under one condition: the Nephites would bring them King Noah and one half of all they owned. Every year they would give one half of their possessions to the Lamanite king, as a tax.

One of the sons of King Noah had stayed behind with the women and children, so he had been captured and returned to Nephi. His name was Limhi and he was an honest and just man. Limhi didn't want his father to be killed by the Lamanites, but he knew many of the things his father had done. Secretly, Gideon sent men out into the wilderness to look for the king and those who had run away with him. Meanwhile, The men who had obeyed the king and ran away, decided they had made a mistake. They now promised themselves they would return to Nephi and if their families were dead, they would go after the Lamanites and probably also be killed. The king found out they were planning to leave the forest and return to Nephi and commanded them not to return. This made the men very mad and they tied up the king and burned him at the stake. They were just about to tie up the priests and burn them to death also, but the priests managed to escape and run away. The men were just about to return to the land of Nephi when they met the men that Gideon had sent out to look for them. Gideon's men told them everything that had happened, including the tax they now all had to pay to the Lamanites. The men told Gideon's group that they had killed the king and the priests and run away farther into the wilderness. They all returned to the land of Nephi, rejoicing in the family reunions. They gathered around Gideon and told him what they had done to the king and how the priests had all run away. Life was good again… …wasn't it?

Limhi, son of King Noah, was a good man and began to establish peace in the kingdom of Lehi-Nephi. The Lamanite king had guards posted throughout the land so the Nephites couldn't leave. Even though they weren't allowed to leave their land, the Nephites were left alone and lived in peace as long as they paid their taxes to the Lamanites.

Every so often, the Lamanite daughters gathered together in Shemlon to laugh, sing, and dance. It was a time to be by themselves and just have fun. The priests of King Noah who had run away into the wilderness were too ashamed and afraid to return to their homes in Nephi. Even though they missed their wives and children, they knew the Nephites would probably still try to kill them. One day, the priests discovered 24 young Lamanite maidens, so they grabbed them and carried them back into the wilderness.

When the Lamanites realized their daughters were missing, they were furious with the people of Limhi because they assumed the Nephites had captured their daughters. The king led his army to the land of Nephi to destroy every single Nephite in the land. Limhi saw the king and his army when he was up in his tower. He noticed they were armed for battle and gathered the Nephites together. He told them what he had seen and suggested they all go into the fields and forests and hide. They waited until the army was almost upon them, then they jumped up from their hiding places and began killing the Lamanites, since they had the element of surprise. Even though there were twice as many soldiers as there were Nephites, the people of Limhi fought hard for their lives and their families – and they didn't even know why the Lamanite army had attacked! Among the dead bodies lying on the ground, the people of Limhi found the Lamanite king who was wounded, but not dead yet. The Lamanite army had retreated so fast, they hadn't even bothered with taking back their dead. The Nephites took him back to the city of Nephi where they patched him up as best they could, then presented him to King Limhi where they asked if they could kill him. (Who knows why they didn't kill him

on the battlefield? Perhaps they had to wait for someone in charge to give the ok, since their prisoner was such an important man.) King Limhi asked the Lamanite king, "Why in the world did the Lamanites start a war against us? We haven't done anything wrong. We've kept all our promises to you and up until now, you've kept all your promises to us." The Lamanite king angrily told them he broke his promise because Limhi's people stole 24 innocent Lamanite maidens. That's why he called for battle and the Lamanite soldiers eagerly responded.

Limhi was shocked. He hadn't heard anything about this. Nephites kidnapping young Lamanite women? He ordered an immediate search of the entire land, promising that whoever had done this would die. When Captain Gideon heard the king's order, he suggested that King Limhi didn't need to search the people, nor blame them. He was pretty sure something this bold could only have been done by the evil priests belonging to Limhi's father, King Noah. Gideon reminded his king that those wicked priests were still hiding out in the wilderness somewhere. It sounds just like something they would do. After all, the priests cared about no one but themselves. Gideon recommended that King Limhi quickly go tell the Lamanite king what they think happened because Gideon could see that the Lamanites were already preparing for another battle – and this time, there would be no element of surprise. Unless the Lamanite king could talk his people out of war, the Nephites would surely die and the prophecies of Abinadi would come to pass on all of them. Gideon wanted to go with Limhi to try to soothe the Lamanite king and remind him of all the promises that had been made. It was still better to work for the Lamanites for nothing than to be dead. Limhi told the wounded king all about his wicked father and his father's priests. He even told the king about his father being burned at the stake, and the priests running away into the wilderness. It had to be them who had kidnapped the young Lamanite women. No one else would have a reason or opportunity or would even think of doing such a terrible thing.

Fortunately, the Lamanite king believed Captain Gideon and King Limhi. He even suggested the Nephites go out with him to meet the Lamanite army. If they went out unarmed, the Lamanite king promised the men that his people would not harm them. The Lamanite king seemed to be an honorable man and so far had not lied to the Nephites, so Gideon and Limhi led their people and followed the king to the Lamanite army without any weapons. When they reached the army, the Lamanite king bowed down and told his men what they believed had happened. When the soldiers saw the Nephites were so trusting that they hadn't even come armed, they listened as their king begged them to spare the Nephites with him. The Lamanites realized that what the king had said was probably true and the fight seemed to leave them. They turned their backs on the Nephites and returned with their king to live peacefully in their own land. Limhi and his people returned to their city and life quickly returned to normal. Shortly after returning to their own land, the Lamanites started thinking about all that had happened and became angry against the Nephites. satan can turn hearts in the blink of an eye, it seems. Once again, the Lamanites came onto their land and surrounded the Nephites. Oh, they kept the promise their king had made to Limhi – they didn't dare kill the Nephites, but they made sure their lives were miserable. They would hit the Nephites, put heavy burdens on their backs, and treated them like animals. The words of Abinadi were coming true.

Lesson 13 Study Questions

1. After burning Abinadi at the stake, who was the first enemy King Noah met? (Mosiah 9:77)

2. What did the king see when he was on top of the tower? (Mosiah 9:79)

3. What did the king ask Gideon and why? What was the real reason? (Mosiah 9:80-81)

4. What did King Noah command the men in the wilderness to do? Did they? (Mosiah 9:84-86)

5. What did the group of families do when the Lamanites came upon them? (Mosiah 9:87)

6. Did their strategy work on the Lamanites? (Mosiah 9:88-89)

7. Under what conditions were the Nephites allowed to stay in Lehi-Nephi? (Mosiah 9:89-90)

8. What happened to King Noah and why? (Mosiah 9:96)

9. What did the Lamanite king do with some of the tribute (taxes) the Nephites gave him? (Mosiah 9:106)

10. How did the Nephites fight? (Mosiah 9:117, 119)

11. How did the Nephite army compare to the Lamanite army? (Mosiah 9:118)

12. What caused the war? (Mosiah 9:125)

Significant Quotations

"And thus they became the children of God." ~ Mosiah 9:55

"There began to be a division among the remainder of the people" ~ Mosiah 9:75**

"And it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women" ~ Mosiah 9:88

"And it came to pass that they returned to the land of Nephi, rejoicing, because their wives and their children were not slain" ~ Mosiah 9:101

"And when the Lamanites saw the people of Limhi, that they were without arms, they had compassion on them, and were pacified towards them." ~ Mosiah 9:139***

☺ **Was this the first time math was mentioned in the Book of Mormon?

☺ ***_Did these people inspire someone to sculpt the statue Venus de Milo?_

Lesson 14

People in this chapter:	
Abinadi=Nephite prophet during Noah's time	Ammon=Mulekite leader of 16 men
Limhi=son of Noah	Gideon=Nephite army captain
Mosiah=son of Benjamin king in Zarahemla	Alma=converted Nephite spiritual leader
Noah=wicked Nephite king-son of Zeniff	

~ *read: Mosiah 9:143 – 11:19*

"…The words of Abinadi were coming true…."

The Nephites were really suffering and there was no way out for them. Everywhere they turned, the Lamanites were there just waiting and watching. Escape was impossible at this point.

The Nephites began to complain to the king because of all their misery. They were willing to take a chance by going into battle. Anything would be better than living like this! Finally, the king agreed and they put on their armor and went out to chase the Lamanites from their land. Unfortunately, they were no match for the great Lamanite army and many Nephites were killed in battle. Those still alive were driven back to their homes.

The people of Limhi were overcome with sadness and grief for the many deaths that had taken place during the battle. Everyone it seemed was crying over someone they had lost – women grieving over their husbands, children crying over their fathers, and brothers weeping openly for their brothers. The fearful howling of the widows was so loud day after day that after a while, the rest of the people began getting stirred up until they were all angry again against the Lamanites. Again they suited up and went after the Lamanites, but once more they were chased back to their homes after losing many more Nephite men in battle. The crying and howling started up and the people became angry a third time and those men who were left picked up their weapons. For the third time, the Nephites suffered defeat and for the third and final time, they were forced to retreat to their homes. This time, the Nephites accepted their situation and humbled themselves to be slaves to the Lamanites. They also humbled themselves before God and cried all day long to Him, asking God to take them out of their misery and remove their painful suffering. The Lord was not quick to do so, because of all their past sins, but he did hear them and began to soften the hearts of the Lamanites so they eased up a little bit, but He did not take them out of their slavery.

Slowly but surely, the Nephites began to prosper again. They grew better and larger crops. The animals they raised multiplied. The Nephites no longer suffered from hunger. Because of all the men who had been killed in battle, there were a lot more women than there were men, so King Limhi commanded every man to also give to the widows and children so they wouldn't go hungry. Although the people of Limhi stayed pretty much together at all times to protect their food and livestock, it wasn't safe to go outside the city. Even the king didn't feel safe outside of the city walls unless he had his guards with him. The Lamanites were still out there and who knew what they would do. There was peace for now, but the Nephites knew that could change at any moment.

145 BC

King Limhi also had his people keep lookout around the land for the priests of his father who had caused so much trouble for them. The Nephites were very anxious to catch the priests. Not only did they start wars, now they were sneaking into the city at night and stealing food and some of their valuables. Finally the Nephites decided to set a trap.

[THIS LESSON IS A CONTINUATION OF MOSIAH 5 WHEN ZENIFF LEADS A GROUP OF PEOPLE FROM ZARAHEMLA.]

There was peace in the land of Lehi-Nephi between the people of King Limhi (son of King Noah) and the Lamanites. But peace was not enough for the Nephites who were so heavily taxed that they were almost like slaves to the Lamanites and they couldn't stand it anymore. They were desperate to find the priests of King Noah. Then the Lamanites should back off or leave them alone all together.

[EDITOR'S NOTE: review Lesson 10 of this book.] One night when King Limhi was with his guards outside the city, they came across Ammon and his 3 brothers who had been sent by King Mosiah in the land of Zarahemla. King Limhi assumed they were some of the priests of King Noah, so he commanded the guards to grab them, tie them up and throw them into prison. Fortunately, Ammon was able to explain who they were and what they were doing there. King Limhi was thrilled. Now they would have some help in getting out of their terrible situation with the Lamanites.

Previously, King Limhi had sent out a small group of (43*) men to find the land of Zarahemla. After awhile, they came upon a land filled with dry, old bones. They assumed it was Zarahemla and went back to the land of Lehi-Nephi very saddened. They reported their findings to King Limhi just a few days before Ammon, his brothers and their friends arrived. The small group of 43 men had brought back writings they found on metal plates, which they assumed was a record of the people whose bones they had found. That's why King Limhi was excited to hear from Ammon that King Mosiah in the land of Zarahemla had a gift from God that allowed him to translate unknown engravings.

Ammon and his friends were sad also. Sad because so many of the Nephites had been killed in the wars with the Lamanites. Sad because King Noah and his priests had led so many people to commit all kinds of sins against God. Sad for the death of Abinadi. Sad for not knowing what happened to Alma and the many people who went with him. If they had only known, they would have rejoiced because Ammon and his friends had already made a similar covenant with God to always love, serve and obey Him. Since Ammon and his group had arrived, King Limhi and many of his people also wanted to be baptized, but there was no one in the land of Lehi-Nephi who had authority from God to baptize. Ammon did not feel he was worthy enough, so the Nephites decided they had to wait until someone was sent to them who did have authority from God. For now, they would concentrate on getting away from the Lamanites.

Ammon and King Limhi gathered all the people together so they could figure out the best way to get out of this terrible situation with the Lamanites. All they could come up with was to pack up what they could and sneak out into the wilderness. They couldn't hope to fight the Lamanites – there were just too many Lamanite solders and most of the Nephite men had been killed in previous battles. Captain Gideon spoke up and informed them of a gate in the wall at the back of the city. The guards there were usually drunk at night and everyone could sneak out that way. Gideon volunteered to deliver the last of this year's taxes which was the wine. He would give the guards their wine, which of course the soldiers would immediately start drinking. Once the guards

**Mosiah 5:60*

were passed out, the people, their possessions, and their animals could all walk quietly around the left side of the guard's camp and walk all the way around the land of Shilom. They would head home to Zarahemla. The king thought this was a great idea and had his men pass the plan to all the people so they could get ready. Finally everything was ready and in place. King Limhi sent the wine to the Lamanites. In fact, he sent them a little extra as a gift. It didn't take long for the guards to fall asleep from a drunken stupor. Quietly the people left the city. They went around the edges of Shilom and headed straight for the land of Zarahemla with Ammon and his friends in the lead. The people had taken all their gold, silver, and other precious things. They took everything they possibly could. At last they reached the land of Zarahemla. They eagerly joined with the people of King Mosiah and the people of Zarahemla who welcomed them into the city.. King Limhi agreed that they would all follow King Mosiah now. King Mosiah was very pleased to receive their records which included the records found in that valley of dry bones that was written in an unknown language. When the Lamanites woke up and discovered that the Nephites and all their possessions were missing, an army was sent out to return them to the land of Lehi-Nephi. The Lamanite army tracked them for 2 days before they lost them in the wilderness.

[EDITOR'S NOTE: WE TAKE ANOTHER SIDE TRIP BY READING WHAT HAPPENED TO ALMA AND HIS GROUP OF PEOPLE AFTER THEY FLED WHEN ABINADI WAS BURNED AT THE STAKE. REVIEW MOSIAH 9:28-74 BEFORE BEGINNING MOSIAH 11:1]

Meanwhile…Alma and the other worshippers of God had been driven into the wilderness by the people of King Noah at the king's command. He had been afraid Alma was stirring up the people against him. The Lord warned Alma that the armies of King Noah were coming, so Alma told his group to gather up whatever they had – animals, grain, possessions – and run into the wilderness. The Lord was with them and slowed down the followers of King Noah so they couldn't catch them. Eight days later, they came to a beautiful land with clear, pure water. They pitched their tents and began to plant crops and build buildings. They worked long, hard hours.

The people loved Alma and wanted him to be their king, but he turned them down because the Lord had told him it was not right to have one person feel that he was better than another. The Lord specifically stated that it was not good to have any man rule as king because men can become corrupted as King Noah and his priests were corrupted. Alma, being one of Noah's former priests, said he himself was caught up in the greed and power. He did many things that were terrible in God's eyes for which he humbly repented. Alma suffered through many problems, but the Lord finally answered his prayers and turned Alma into an instrument for Him. He brought many people to God, but he was still just an instrument. He is no better than anyone else in the group. By following after King Noah and his priests, the people were subject to his whims and wishes. Whatever King Noah or one of his priests wanted, the people had to do or give. They were bound by the ropes of sin – not ropes you can see – but all the same, they were tied by the greed and power of these men. They broke those ties when they ran away from that evil city. Now they were free, and Alma wanted them to always be free. He said, "Trust no man to be king over you. Trust no man to be your teacher or minister unless he is a man of God, walking in His ways and following His commandments."

Because he had established the church, God had appointed Alma to be their high priest. He taught the people that every man should love his neighbor as much as he cared about himself and his own family and possessions. There should never be any fighting among them. No one was to preach or teach unless they were called of God through Alma. They were to be fair and honest men and watch over the people. They were also to give the people instructions on how to be righteous, walking in God's ways.

Lesson 14 Study Questions

1. After the war was over and the wounded Lamanite king returned to his people, how many times did the Nephites attack the Lamanites? (Mosiah 9:145,151,152)

2. Who were the Nephite men ordered to support and why? (Mosiah 9:158)

3. King Limhi sent a search party to find Zarahemla. What did they find? (Mosiah 9:167-169)

4. What happened to the people of Lehi-Nephi after Ammon came? (Mosiah 9:175,176)

5. Why did Ammon refuse to baptize anyone in Lehi-Nephi? (Mosiah 9:177)

6. How did Captain Gideon and King Limhi lead the people out of captivity? (Mosiah 10:5-14)

7. Did the people of Lehi-Nephi find the land of Zarahemla? What happed? (Mosiah 10:16-17)

8. What did King Limhi present to King Mosiah? (Mosiah 10:17)

"ANTI"

Our understanding of the word "anti" (against) may be very different from the original Book of Mormon language and ancient times. One Native American equivalent word for "anti" is anta, which means *copper;* from this comes the name *Andes Mountains.* The word appears in the Peruvian language as Antisuyu, the name given to the eastern part of the country where the tallest of the Andes Mountains are found. Anti-Nephi-Lehi, as the name of a country, would mean *the mountain region in the land of Nephi in the land of Lehi.* The brother of King Lamoni was evidently named in honor of this famous land and the Anti-Nephi-Lehites who lived in that part of the country.

Significant Quotations

"…they did not at that time form themselves into a church, waiting upon the Spirit of the Lord." ~ Mosiah 9:177b

"…And also trust no one to be your teacher nor your minister, except he be a man of God, walking in His ways and keeping His commandments…" ~Mosiah 11:15

Lesson 15

People in this chapter:	
Alma=high priest converted Nephite	Mosiah=son of King Benjamin
Limhi=son of King Noah	Nephi=4th son of Lehi from Jerusalem
Noah=wicked Nephite king	Mulek=son of Zedekiah king of Judah
Amulon=leader of wicked priests of Noah	Zeniff=father of Noah & Lehi-Nephi king
Laman=title for all Lamanite kings	Benjamin=son of Mosiah-king of Zarahemla
Moses=Israelite leader and God's law giver	Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior
Abinadi=Nephite prophet during Noah's time	

~ *read: Mosiah 11:20 – 11:121*

"…The priests appointed by God were to teach the people how to walk in God's ways…."

The people did well and became quite successful in this new land they called Helam. They also built a city which they called Helam, located in the land of Helam. When the people would go astray, the Lord would discipline them until they repented. God showed the people of Helam his mighty power and they were very happy to be so close to the Lord.

One day while they were working their gardens, they saw an army of Lamanites coming, so they ran from the fields and gathered in the city. Alma told them not to be afraid, but to remember that God would take care of them. They cried to the Lord to soften the hearts of the Lamanites so all these followers would be spared. The Lord heard their prayers and did indeed soften the hearts of the Lamanite soldiers. Alma and the other men went to the Lamanite army and surrendered. Once again, the Lamanite army conquored Nephite land. This time, they had taken control of the land of Helam, so Alma, along with his people, were again subject to the Lamanites.

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Meanwhile, once they recovered from their drunken stupor, the Lamanite army chased after the Nephites led by King Limhi. The army got lost in the wilderness after only two days. After many days of wandering around, the army stumbled across the wicked priests of King Noah and the 24 Lamanite women who had been living in a place they called Amulon, named for the leader of the priests.

Amulon sent the 24 women who were now the priests' wives to talk to the Lamanite army and beg them to spare their lives and the lives of their husbands. Once again, the women softened the hearts of the Lamanites so they did not kill the priests. The wicked priests and their wives decided to join the Lamanites. They all traveled in the wilderness until they finally discovered the land of Helam where Alma and his group were living. The Lamanites promised these Nephites that if they would point out the way to the land of Nephi, they would give them their freedom.

After Alma showed them the way to the land of Nephi, however, the Lamanites broke their promise and set up guards around the land of Helam. The rest of the Lamanites went on to their homes in the land of Nephi. A few returned shortly to the land of Helam, including the wives and children of the guards who had been left behind. The king over all the Lamanites appointed Amulon, the former Nephite priest leader, to be a lesser king over the land of Helam. Amulon answered only to the king over all the Lamanites. Soon Amulon proved himself to be a loyal Lamanite leader and the king of the Lamanites allowed Amulon and his fellow priests to be teachers

145-122 BC
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

over the people which included the lands of Shemlon, Shilom, and Amulon where the Lamanites had control and were living. The Lamanites were now learning the language of the Nephites. The king over all the Lamanites, named Laman after his father, King Laman, had appointed lesser kings in all 3 lands.

The Lamanites were all friendly with each other and lived peaceably throughout the Lamanite land. However, they did not know God. Amulon and the former priests did not teach them anything about God or the law of Moses or even the words of Abinadi. In fact, the only thing the former priests taught the Lamanites besides how to read the Nephite language, was to write so they could keep their own records and write to one another.

In a short while, the Lamanites became rich and began trading with each other. They learned quickly and became very wise to the things of the world. They enjoyed all kinds of wickedness and trickery except with other Lamanites whom they treated with respect.

Amulon recognized Alma as one of his former priests who had believed the words of Abinadi. Amulon began to torment Alma and his followers. He even taught his children to bully the children of Alma's people. Soon the labor put on Alma and his people was more than they could bear. They cried to God for help, but Amulon commanded them to stop praying. In fact, he even put guards over them to watch; if anyone called on God, they would be killed. Alma and his followers did not pray out loud, but continued to pour out their hearts to the Lord who knew the thoughts of His children. The Lord spoke to them silently in their minds, "Don't worry. I know the promises you made to Me and I will take care of you. I will make it so you don't even feel the burdens put on you. You will not suffer nor hurt from the strain put on you while you are held captive. I will do this so you may be a witness that God is always with his people, even in their times of great trouble."

Overnight, the work put on Alma and his people became light. God made their bodies strong so they could do their chores easily. They did their work happily and became patient, knowing that God was in charge. They were so faithful and cheerful, that once again God spoke to them through their minds, "Rest happy in this thought – tomorrow I will free you from this slavery." God then told Alma, "If you lead these people, I will be with you and I will give them their freedom."

All night long, Alma and his people gathered their possessions, grains, and flocks together. They had a lot of animals, so it literally took all night long to gather them. In the morning, God caused the Lamanites who were in charge of Alma's group to fall into a deep sleep. Alma and his people went into the wilderness. After traveling all day, they pitched their tents in a valley they called Alma because he had led their way. Here they were able to pray out loud. Men, women and children poured out their thanks to God for showing His great mercy. He eased their work when they were in bondage and He freed them from slavery. They recognized that only God could have gotten them out of their situation and away from their enemies. They all praised the Lord out loud.

The Lord told Alma to quickly get the people out of the land they were in because the Lamanites had woken up and were chasing them. The Lord said he would stop the Lamanites in this Valley of Alma. They would not get any farther and would stop the chase. Alma and his people packed up everything and quickly left the valley they were in. After they had traveled through the wilderness for twelve days, they came upon the land of Zarahemla where King Mosiah and his people greeted Alma's group with open arms and great happiness.

King Mosiah called all the people together. (There weren't as many descendants of Nephi as there were descendants of Mulok (Mulek), the original people of Zarahemla – and even with these 2 groups combined, they were still less than one half as many as the Lamanites.) They all gathered together to hear King Mosiah. He read the records of Zeniff and his group and all their adventures from the time they left Zarahemla until they returned again. He also read about Alma and his group

and all their troubles from the time they left Zarahemla until they returned again. The people of Zarahemla were sad. They were thrilled for those who had escaped slavery, but grieved and cried for those who had been killed by the Lamanites. They praised God for His goodness and mercy, but they were also filled with pain and great sorrow for their brothers, the Lamanites and their sinful way of living and for the well being of their souls.

The children of the wicked priests of King Noah, were so disgusted with the behavior of their fathers that they no longer wanted to be known as Lamanites. Instead, they chose to be called Nephites and follow the Nephite ways. All those living in Zarahemla were united and were all called Nephites, regardless of where they had come from because the kings had all been descendants of Nephi ever since the Nephites met the Mulekites in the land of Zarahemla.

Once King Mosiah was finished reading and speaking to the people gathered together, he asked Alma to also talk to the people. He went to each group of people, preaching repentance and to have faith in God. He urged Limhi (son of King Noah) and his people and all those who had escaped from slavery to remember that it was God who had freed them. Alma went on to teach the people many things. After he finished, Limhi spoke up and asked to be baptized. All of the people in Limhi's group said they too wanted to be baptized. Just as he had done for his people in the waters of Mormon, Alma baptized all those who asked. All those who believed Alma's words were baptized, becoming members of the Church of God.

Alma asked King Mosiah if he could build churches throughout all the land of Zarahemla. King Mosiah gave his permission. He also gave Alma power to ordain priests and teachers at every church. This was done because there were so many people that they couldn't all worship and study together. They couldn't all hear and they certainly couldn't all fit into one building at the same time. Every church had its own priests and teachers. Every priest preached the words given them by Alma. Even though there were 7 different church buildings located throughout Zarahemla, they were really just one church – the Church of God – because they all believed alike. The only things preached in the churches were repentance and faith in God. Whoever wanted to take on the name of Christ or God joined the Church of God at one of the local churches – and became known as the people of God. The Lord poured out His Spirit on the people of God. They were blessed and did well by living off the land.

Many of the teenagers and young adults were too young to understand the powerful, spirit-filled words spoken years ago when King Benjamin was the leader, so they didn't believe what their fathers believed concerning Christ. Because of their unbelief, their hearts were hardened against God. They refused to join the church. They didn't even pray. Now that King Benjamin's son Mosiah was king, the young unbelievers mislead many of the older people with their lies and convinced them to commit many sins against the church and against God. When the church members who had sinned were brought to the priests, they turned the church members over to Alma who had the final authority over church matters. This authority had been given to Alma by King Mosiah. It was quite a problem because there were many witnesses who testified about the sins committed by the other church members. Nothing like this had ever happened before and Alma was disturbed about what to do, so he turned the sinners over to the king. Alma told the king that the people had been seen by their accusers doing these sins and the sinners refused to repent, so he was turning them over to King Mosiah to be judged and punished according to their crimes.

King Mosiah told him no. It wasn't up to him to judge the people for sins they had committed. He was leaving the judgment to Alma. This time, Alma went to the Lord, asking for guidance about what to do. After Alma had poured out his soul, God spoke to Alma saying that he and all those who were baptized in the waters of Mormon were a blessed people for many reasons.

Lesson 15 Study Questions

1. What occupation did the priests of King Noah become? (Mosiah 11:35)
2. Why did the Lamanites soften their hearts toward Alma and his followers? (Mosiah 11:32) Why did the Lamanites soften their hearts toward Amulon and his followers? (Mosiah 11:38)
3. What is one good thing that the priests of King Noah did? (Mosiah 11:51)
4. How did the Lamanites believe regarding 'honor among thieves'? (Mosiah 11:53)
5. What did the Nephites do when they were told they couldn't worship God? (Mosiah 11:59) What would happen if they did? (Mosiah 11:58)
6. ☺ How tall was Amulon? (Mosiah 11:43)
7. ☺ Why would the Lamanites have done well at a car wash? (Mosiah 11:52)
8. ☺ Since there were no gyms, how did Amulon exercise? (Mosiah 11:54)
9. ☺ In our lesson today, what did God turn into a candle? (Mosiah 11:63)
10. ☺ Since there were no baseballs, what did the Nephites play with? (Mosiah 11:69)
11. Among the Nephites in the Land of Zarahemla, who refused to be baptized? (Mosiah 11:105)
12. Were there many non-believers in Zarahemla? (Mosiah 11:110)
13. Is there a difference between a crime and a sin? (Mosiah 11:111, 118, 119)
14. Should church leaders take action against a member's sins as was done in Mosiah 11:112?
15. What is priestcraft as mentioned in Alma 1:18? (2 Nephi 11:106)

Significant Quotations

"And they did afflict the king sorely with their complaints; therefore he granted unto them that they should do according to their desires." ~ Mosiah 9:145

"Now there were a great many widows in the land; and they did cry mightily from day to day; and their continual cries did stir up the people to anger." ~ Mosiah 9:149,150

"…And I will ease the burdens which are put upon your shoulders, that even you cannot feel them upon your backs…" ~ Mosiah 11:61

"And they gave thanks to God, yea, all their men, and all their women, and all their children, that could speak, lifted their voices in the praises of their God." ~ Mosiah 11:72

Lesson 16

People in this chapter:	
Alma1=spiritual leader and convert	Ammon=son of King Mosiah; destructive teen
Abinadi=Nephite prophet burned at stake	Aaron=son of King Mosiah; destructive teen
Jesus=Christ our Messiah and Savior	Omner=son of King Mosiah; destructive teen
Mosiah=son of King Benjamin	Himni=son of King Mosiah; destructive teen
Alma2=son of Alma1; destructive teen	Nephi=4th son of Lehi from Jerusalem

~ *read: Mosiah 11:122 - 13:6*

"…God told Alma those who were baptized were a blessed people for many reasons…."

They were blessed because of their great faith in the words of the prophet Abinadi and the words of Alma. Alma was blessed because he had set up God's church among the people. They were also blessed because they were willing to be known as God's people and attend a church bearing His name. Alma was blessed because he had come to the Lord regarding the sins of the people. God said that Alma was His servant and that Alma would have eternal life if he would serve God and keep His people together. All who listened and wanted to do God's will would be received and baptized into the church. Whoever is baptized, must repent first. Whoever the church receives as a member, must believe in God – then God will completely forgive him or her. God the Father created us and Jesus Christ the Son will willingly pay the price for our sins. If we remain faithful until the end of our lives here on earth, we will have a place with God at His right hand. At Judgment Day when the 2nd trumpet sounds, those who refused God will come before Him and will recognize who He is. God will announce that He does not acknowledge them as His children and they will leave His presence to go to the everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his followers. Whoever does not hear and obey God will not be accepted into His church. God will deal with them on Judgment Day. The Lord told Alma to judge the people by the sins they committed against God. If the sinner admits his sins to God and to Alma, and truly repents, he will be forgiven by God. God will always forgive us if we truly repent. That means to accept guilt, say they are sorry, and try very hard never to commit that sin again. God reminded all the people to forgive their neighbors of wrong doing. If they refuse to forgive when the sinner has repented, the one who refused to forgive becomes guilty of that same sin. If the person did not repent of his sins, they would not be acknowledged as one of God's people. This is how it must always be. They cannot continue to be a part of the church if they do not repent. Alma wrote down everything God said to him so he wouldn't forget a word. He wanted to judge the people of the church fairly, according to God's laws. Alma judged those people who had sinned against the church according to God's word. Whoever admitted their sins and repented, were considered church members. Those who refused to confess and repent were no longer considered church members and their names were marked off the membership list. Alma took charge of all things concerning the church. Once again, there was peace among the believers. They lived as righteously as they could. Many saw how the believers were living and wanted the same thing. They also came to know the Lord, repented and were baptized into the church.

Unfortunately, Alma and the believers were treated badly and suffered because of those who didn't belong to the church. The people were told to pray continually and to give thanks to God in

all things. The believers were suffering and complained to the priests. The priests complained to Alma and Alma in turn, went to King Mosiah about it. King Mosiah talked to his advisors about it. Persecution, harassment, discrimination – they were all outlawed by the laws of the land and by the laws of the church. Everyone was to be considered equal, no matter what their belief was. Everyone was to help their neighbors, if needed from time to time, but everyone was to work and support themselves. There was peace throughout the land again. The people began to multiply and scatter all over the land of Zarahemla. The Lord guided them and they became a large group of wealthy people.

The sons of King Mosiah and one of the sons of Alma were numbered among the non-believers. Alma's son, called Alma the Younger, was a very wicked, idol-worshipping young man. He had a gift of speaking that could persuade people to do anything. Unfortunately, Alma the Younger led many people away from God. He caused a lot of problems and helped the devil gain power over the people. He and the sons of King Mosiah secretly went about trying to destroy the church and lead the people astray, despite God's laws and the king's laws.

One day, while the 4 young men were out causing trouble, an angel of God came out of a cloud and appeared in front of them. When he spoke, it was like thunder and caused the ground to shake where the young men stood. They were so shocked that they fell down and couldn't understand what the angel was saying to them. The angel said, "Alma, stand up. Why are you harassing the church of God? God has told the people this was His church and nothing would destroy it except the sins of all the believers. The Lord has heard the prayers of his people, especially the prayers of His servant Alma – your father - who faithfully prayed for you that you might come to know the truth. I have come here to convince you of God's power and authority that the prayers of his faithful servants might be answered. Do you deny God's power? Doesn't my voice shake the earth where you stand? Don't you see me before you that I came from a cloud and I caused the earthquake? God sent me to you. Go and remember what happened to your fathers in the lands of Helam and Lehi-Nephi when they were slaves. The Lord God Almighty freed them from slavery. Alma, stop trying to disrupt and destroy the church." As soon as he was finished talking, the angel disappeared. Alma and his friends fell down again from the shock. They had seen and heard an angel of God! They had felt the earth shake because of its thunderous voice! They knew nothing but the power of God could shake the earth so hard it trembled it almost broke. Alma was so shocked that he couldn't open his mouth or speak. In fact, he couldn't move at all - he was paralyzed! His friends carried Alma to his father and told him all that had happened. Instead of being sad, Alma the Elder was excited. He knew that his prayers had been answered and that the power of God had touched his rebellious son. Alma the Elder invited everyone to come and see what the Lord had done for his son and his son's friends. He also asked the priests to gather to fast and pray to God so the Lord would open Alma the Younger's mouth that he could talk again and that his arms and legs would be strong enough to use again. He also wanted the people to see and know about God's goodness and wonderful mercy.

Alma the Elder and the priests fasted for two days and two nights. On the third day, Alma the Younger stood up and told them not to be concerned for him anymore. He had repented and was redeemed from his sins and was a new person, having been re-born. The Lord told him that all people everywhere must be born again. They must be changed from a sinful person to a child of God. Unless they do this, they cannot enter the heavenly kingdom of God. Unless they are re-born, they will be thrown out. I know because I was heading down that same path and would have been thrown out. After so much pain and suffering that I almost died, the Lord had mercy on me and grabbed me from the brink of an everlasting hell. My soul has been redeemed from the chains of

sin. I was in the darkest pit, but now I know the wonderful light of God. I rejected my Savior and denied what the elders had said about Him, but now I know that on Judgment Day every knee will bow before him and all will say that He is God. Those who rejected God on earth will admit that their everlasting punishment is fair and just.

From that time on, Alma the Younger and his friends, the sons of King Mosiah, named Ammon, Aaron, Omner, and Himni traveled throughout Zarahemla preaching the word of God, even to those who harassed and threw things at them like the young men themselves did. But nothing could stop them. They were faithful to God and did their best to repair the damage they had done. These five young men brought many to God and taught about the Great Redeemer to come. The 4 sons of Mosiah went to their father with a request. They wanted to go with a few of their friends to the land of Nephi to preach to their enemies, the Lamanites. They hoped to share what they knew about God and convince them to stop sinning. Just because the Lamanites had been taught that way, that didn't make it right. They hoped to convince them to stop hating Nephites. The Promised Land could become a land of peace. They wanted everyone everywhere to be saved and go to heaven, so not one single person would be sentenced to Hell. These 4 young adults who had once been some of the worst creatures on earth now shook at the thought of even one person dying without knowing Jesus Christ as their Savior. King Mosiah wasn't pleased with the request, but the boys begged their father for many days to let them go on this mission. Finally, Mosiah prayed about it. The Lord spoke to Mosiah and told him to let them go because many would believe them and be saved. God assured Mosiah that He would protect them. With God on their side, Mosiah could no longer refuse. He gave permission for his sons and their friends to go to Lamanite country.

This created an unusual problem for King Mosiah. He now had no one to pass down his throne to when he got old. He had talked to his sons before they left, but none of them was interested in becoming king - they all felt the urgent call to be missionaries. Mosiah took all the records which were on the plates of brass, the plates of Nephi, and the golden plates and all the sacred treasures he had been guarding. The golden plates had been given to him by Limhi which he translated using a device made of two special stones (called the Urim and Thummim) fastened together. The Lord allowed the device to be used by different people from time to time so all could know about the sins and horrible things people sometimes do so that others may learn from their mistakes. The person who uses the device to translate is called a seer. The gold plates were about a group of people who lived long ago when many were trying to build a huge tower to reach the heavens, but the Lord changed everyone's language, so no one could understand anyone else. They could no longer work together - it was too confusing - so they gave up and scattered. The people of Mosiah were very sorry to hear what had happened to some of their ancestors, but were glad for the knowledge it gave them.

EDITOR'S NOTE: THE PEOPLE WRITTEN ABOUT ON THE GOLD PLATES WILL BE DISCUSSED LATER IN THIS BOOK. THEY ARE KNOWN AS THE JAREDITES FOUND IN THE BOOK OF ETHER IN THE BOOK OF MORMON.

Mosiah bundled up all the records and sacred items and gave them to Alma the Younger, who was the son of Alma the Elder. He asked Alma to guard and keep these holy items and to also keep a record of the people. The things Mosiah had given Alma should be handed down from generation to generation, as it had been since the time Lehi left Jerusalem.

Once that project was taken care of, Mosiah sent out a royal question throughout all the land, asking the people who should be their next king. Everyone said Aaron should be their next king. Aaron was one of Mosiah's sons who had gone on the missionary journey and had previously refused to take the throne - in fact, they had all refused the throne before they left. This time King Mosiah sent out a written letter to be read to all the people.

LESSON 16 QUESTIONS

1. What happened when a church member committed a sin? (Mosiah 11:113-120 and 137-139) What if he or she didn't repent? (Mosiah 11:141)

2. What parts of the Book of Mormon remind us of the U.S. Constitution and Declaration of Independence, which were written before Joseph Smith ever heard about the Book of Mormon? (Mosiah 11:153 and Mosiah 13:36, 54, 57)

3. ☺ What caused the Nephites to grow tall? (Mosiah 11:158)

4. When Alma the Younger was struck down by the angel of God and made mute, what happened to allow him to speak again? (Mosiah 11:183)

5. Who were the princes living during this time in Zarahemla? (Mosiah 11:203)

6. How did King Mosiah translate the plates of gold which were written by the long ago tribe of Jaredites? (Mosiah 12:15-18, 23) What are they called in the Bible? (Exodus 28:30 IV and KJV) What were they called in the Doctrine & Covenants? (3:1a) What did the Jaredites call them? (D&C Section 15:1b) What else were they called?

7. Why did the 4 princes go to the land of the Lamanites? (Mosiah 12:3-4)

Significant Quotations

"Yea, and as often as my people repent, will I forgive them their trespasses against me."
~ Mosiah 11:139

"And thus they were instruments in the hands of God, in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth, yea, to the knowledge of their Redeemer." ~ Mosiah 11:206

"And how blessed are they! For they did publish peace." ~ Mosiah 11:207*****

***** EDITOR'S NOTE: *Besides printing, publish means 'to make known or announce publicly; proclaim'.*

Lesson 17

People in this chapter:	
Mosiah2=son of King Benjamin at Zarahemla	Alma1=spiritual Nephite leader
Noah=wicked Nephite king	Nehor= preacher against Church of God
Lehi=Jewish prophet from Jerusalem	Gideon=Nephite army captain
Alma2=spiritual Nephite leader	Amlici=follower of Nehor; wanted to be king

~ *read: Mosiah 13:7 – Alma 1:62*

"…King Mosiah sent out a letter to be read to all the people…."

It said: "I will continue to be your king as long as I live. When I am gone, you should appoint judges to rule the people fairly and wisely according to the laws of God. The problem with kings is that not all of them rule fairly. All it takes is one bad king. Look what happened when Noah was king. The people became corrupt and sin was everywhere. Don't forget the terrible destruction of the wicked and the slavery that followed. If the people hadn't repented, they would all still be in bondage today. They are only here by the grace of God. Once you get a bad king, you can't do anything about it without people getting killed. He will have his wicked friends around him and his guards will be even closer to him. He totally ignores any Godly laws made before him. He makes his own laws that are as evil as he is and whoever doesn't obey gets killed. God doesn't want anything bad to happen to you, but that's the chance you take by having a king. That's why electing judges is so much better. The majority of the people usually will choose who and what is fair. The people must vote for their leaders. If the time comes when the majority of the people choose sin, then know that God's judgment will come upon you. This is how it will work - if the judges don't do their jobs according to the law, you can take them to a higher judge. If the higher judges don't judge fairly, call together a small number of the lower judges and they can judge a higher judge. I feel that I must insist. I command you to do these things because they are right and will help keep you on God's path. I command you to no longer have a king. If the people sin, they themselves will have to answer for it. The sins of many people have been caused by the wickedness of their kings. Everyone in this land should be equal. I want this to be a land of liberty, so that everyone can have and enjoy their rights and freedoms."

Mosiah wrote many more things about all the headaches that a righteous king has. He reminded them about all the times they had complained to their king. The burden of keeping the laws of this land should be the responsibility of all people, not just one. He reminded them about all the things that happened to the people with a bad king. Sin and evil becomes widespread - killing, stealing, idol worship, and so many other sins that they can't all be named. These things go against the laws of God. The people could see the truth in what King Mosiah had written down and they agreed with him to give up the idea of having another king. In fact, they became excited about their new found freedoms and opportunities. They agreed that it was only fair that they answer for their own sins and wrong doings.

The people gathered together and voted on who would be their judges. Everyone loved King Mosiah. They knew that he was a very special man. He wasn't a bully who got his riches from taxing the people. He had no desire to fight and conquer. Instead, he was a very peace loving

92-87 BC

leader and he lead his people well. The people realized that this latest law he had created was for their own good and the good of their children. Before the judges were elected, time was measured by the number of years since Lehi had left Jerusalem (600 BC). Now time would be counted by the numbers of years when the judges ruled. Alma the Younger was elected chief judge, but he also held the office of high priest. As high priest, he was in charge of all matters concerning the church. Alma lived as honestly and morally upright as possible. He judged the people the same way.

There was peace throughout the entire land of Zarahemla and all the Nephites were together, except the 4 sons of Mosiah and their friends. Alma the Elder and founder of the Church of God finally passed away at the age of 82, having lived as closely to God's laws as he could. Not long after that, King Mosiah also passed away. It was during his 33rd year as king and he was 63 years old. It was now 509 years since Lehi had left Jerusalem and the reign of the kings over the Nephites was finished. Before King Mosiah died, he made sure there were good laws in place for the people to live by and the people accepted those laws.

In Alma the Younger's first year as Chief Judge, a man was brought to Alma. He had been preaching what he claimed was the word of God but it was going against the church Alma's father had begun. He said that the priests and teachers should be supported by the people instead of having to work in their own fields. He also said that in the end, everyone would go to heaven, so there was no need to worry about it. God had created all men, so God would save all men so they would all have eternal life. After sharing his beliefs over and over, the people finally began to believe him and some gave him money and supported him. This caused him to be arrogant and proud of himself. He started wearing fancy clothes and started his own church.

One day on his way to preach, he met one of the teachers of the Church of God. The new preacher, was a mountain of a man, very large and strong, and he began to argue with the teacher, hoping to convince him to join his new church; but the teacher was a man of God and answered every argument with the words God gave him. The new preacher was named Nehor and the teacher from the Church of God was Gideon. He was the same Gideon who had helped Limhi's group of Nephites escape from Lamanite slavery. [He was also the same Gideon who had chased after evil King Noah and would have killed the king if the Lamanites hadn't been attacking at that very moment. When the Lamanites blamed King Limhi and the other Nephites for stealing the 24 Lamanites girls, it was this same Gideon who convinced the Lamanite King that it was the wicked priests who had taken them.] Nehor was very angry with Gideon because he was using God's words against him and Nehor couldn't trick or convince Gideon to join him. In fact, he got so mad at Gideon, that he drew his sword and slashed Gideon over and over. By now, Gideon was an old man and he wasn't as strong and quick as he had been when he was a young captain in the army. Nehor easily stabbed Gideon to death. The people of the Church of God were horrified and took Nehor to Alma to be judged of his terrible crime against a good man of God. Nehor wasn't afraid, though, and boldly spoke up for himself. Alma replied, "This was the first time that priestcraft* has been used among the Nephites.

It isn't bad enough that you introduced priestcraft, but you enforced it by using a sword. If priestcraft were ever to be enforced among all the Nephites, it would destroy our entire nation. You have killed a righteous man who has done much good for the Nephite people. If I were to spare your life, Gideon's blood would come after all of us for revenge. According to the law of Mosiah and acceptance of that law by our people, you are found guilty and are sentenced to die."

**PRIESTCRAFT IS DISCUSSED AT THE END OF LESSONS 6 AND 15 ANSWERS.*

They took Nehor to the top of Manti hill. There he admitted that what he had taught the people was not God's word - in fact, it was the opposite of God's laws. Then, Nehor was put to death in a way that caused him great shame.

Unfortunately, Nehor's death did not put an end to priestcraft. Many loved the proud and beautiful things of the world and they continued preaching the false beliefs, using their selfish pride to get richer so they could have more things. They were very careful, though, not to lie - they just preached their beliefs. They knew if they lied, they would be breaking the laws and would be punished. The law couldn't touch a man because of what he believed. They also didn't rob or steal because there were laws against those too; and everyone knew what the punishment was for murder. Nehor had proved that law was in effect.

After a while those who didn't belong to the Church of God began to torment those who did belong and had taken the name of Christ. They made fun of them because the true believers were a humble people who refused to put money first. There was a strict law among the church people that no church member should bully or discriminate against a non-member. They should also not harass each other. It didn't take long for satan to inch his way into the church. Soon, many church members became proud and snooty and felt they were better than others. Sometimes fist fights would break out. Many of the church members began to harden their hearts against God's ways. Their names were marked off the membership list and were no longer considered the people of God. Those who did stay with the church, however, were as faithful as they had always been. This caused a lot of problems for those who followed God's ways - they were treated badly and suffered a lot from the others, but they didn't let the words bother them.

When it was time for worship, the priests, teachers and congregation left their work to meet at church. After the services were over, the priests, teachers, and congregation returned to their work. No one was better than anyone else at church and everyone worked as best they could. They all took care of each other. If any in the congregation were sick or needy, the others helped them until they were able to return to their work. They always dressed neatly and cleanly. They didn't wear expensive showy clothes or jewelry. And the people of the Church of God became very rich in every way. They hadn't gone looking for money, but the Lord had blessed them. They helped everyone they heard about, whether or not they were a church member. Soon the church members became a lot richer than any of the non-members and spent their money wisely. The non-members dressed in expensive outfits and spent a lot of time and money on witchcraft and idols. They were constantly lying, stealing, hording their own things, and basically doing all kinds of things they knew to be wrong, but no longer cared, if it helped them get more things. Those who broke the laws were punished, so others stopped just short of breaking the law or were sneaky enough not to get caught.

In the 5th year of the judges, a very sneaky and clever man named Amlici became known. Amlici followed the teachings of Nehor, even though it had been 4 years since Nehor had been executed by law. Amlici drew many people to his side and became very powerful. Many wanted him to be declared king over the Nephites. This really worried the people of the Church of God and all others who hadn't gone over to Amlici's side. They knew that if Amlici could gain the voice of the majority of the people, they would lose their rights and freedoms because they could see that Amlici was not a good man. They knew that Amlici would try to destroy the church.

Finally the day came to vote. The judges counted the voting ballots. Amlici lost - he would not be the king over the Nephites. Amlici didn't take the news very well. He stirred up his followers to become angry with those who didn't vote for him. The angry followers decided to gather together

and appoint Amlici king anyway.

Lesson 17 Study Questions

1. What is lucre as mentioned in Mosiah 13:59?

2. Was Moroni the very last Nephite King? (Mosiah 13:67-68)

3. Why did Alma enforce the death penalty on Nehor? (Genesis 9:12 IV; Genesis 9:6 KJV)

4. What does ignominious mean? (Alma 1:23)

5. What does it mean to "impart of your substance" as mentioned in Alma 1:40?

6. Why did the people of the church of God have no respect for poor people? (Alma 1:46)

EDITOR'S NOTE: TO "FEAR THE LORD" AS IN MOSIAH 13:41 MEANS "IN REVERENCE AND IN OBEDIENCE TO" THE LORD. IT DOES NOT NECESSARILY MEAN TO BE AFRAID.

Significant Quotations

"But I desire that this land be a land of liberty, and every man may enjoy his rights and privileges alike, so long as the Lord sees fit, that we may live and inherit the land." ~ Mosiah 13:45
"And he testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day, and that they need not fear nor tremble, but that they might lift up their heads and rejoice, for the Lord had created all men, and had also redeemed all men; and in the end, all men should have eternal life.. ~ Alma 1:6-7

"And when the priests left their labor, to impart the word of God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the word of God" ~ Alma 1:37

"And they did not wear costly apparel, yet they were neat and comely…they began to be exceeding rich…and they did not set their hearts upon riches…and thus they did prosper and become far more wealthy than those who did not belong to their church." ~ Alma 1:41-47

Lesson 18

People in this chapter:	
Amlici=follower of Nehor; wants to be king	Amulek=friend of Alma; missionary of Ammonihah
Alma=chief judge then Nephite missionary	Zeezrom=attorney
Nephihah=chief judge after Alma retired	Antionah=a chief judge of Ammonihah
Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Redeemer	

~ *read: Alma 1:63 10:49*

"…Amlici didn't win, so his followers appointed him king anyway…."

His first duty as king was to command his people to grab their weapons and go after the other Nephites and force them to accept him as their king. Those who followed Amlici called themselves Amlicites. Those who didn't accept him as king were called Nephites or the people of God. The Nephites knew what the Amlicites were up to and prepared for an attack. They armed themselves with swords, cimeters, bows & arrows, stones & slings, and anything they could find to fight with. They organized themselves by appointing captains, higher captains, and chief captains. The Amlicites also organized themselves with military leaders.

The Amlicites attacked the Nephites at Hill Amnihu which was east of the Sidon River. The Nephite Chief Judge Alma was at the front lines of his army along with the Nephite captains. The terrible battle lasted all day. By nightfall there were 12,532 dead Amlicites and 6,562 dead Nephites. Both sides were exhausted. The Nephites pitched tents in the valley of Gideon for the night. Alma sent spies to follow the remaining Amlicites and find out what they were planning so the Nephites could be prepared. They returned the next morning terrified at what they had seen. They told Alma they followed the Amlicites to the land of Minon, just north of the land of Zarahemla, and saw the Amlicites join a huge Lamanite army. It was easy to tell the warriors apart. The Amlicites had put a red mark on their foreheads. The Lamanites also had the red mark, but their skin was dark and their hair was cut. They were naked except for loin cloths and their weapons.

The Amlicite/Lamanite army found some Nephites and began chasing them towards the city of Zarahemla. If the Nephite army didn't hurry, the Amlicite/Lamanite army would take over Zarahemla and all would be killed. When the Nephite army heard this, they headed toward the city of Zarahemla. As they started crossing the Sidon River, the Amlicite/Lamanite army met them and would have wiped them out, but the Lord was with the faithful Nephites who had already been praying to God to help them in this war. Though there were fewer Nephites, the Lord gave them great strength.

At one point, Alma and Amlici fought each other face to face. During the fight, Alma prayed that God would spare his life so he could help protect his people. He immediately gained the strength needed to kill Amlici with his sword. Looking around, Alma saw the king of the Lamanites and went after him, but the king saw what had happened and ran. Alma and his guards threw the bodies of the dead Lamanites into the Sidon River so the rest of the Nephite army could cross over the river and continue the fight. Once all the Nephite army was on the west side of the river, the Amlicites and Lamanites began retreating to the Hermounts wilderness, even though they outnumbered the Nephites. Many wounded Amlicites/Lamanites were eaten by the wild beasts.

87-82 BC

Once the battle was over, the Nephites buried their dead and returned home. Many of their families had been killed and a lot of their crops had been trampled into the ground. In this one year, tens of thousands died, and it was only the 5th year of the Judges.

Peace and wealth continued to grow throughout the land of Zarahemla. Pretty soon, many of the people became very proud of the things they had made and bought. They began to wear rich looking clothing and jewelry. They were very proud of their homes and tools. As they looked around at their neighbors, however, they realized their friends and neighbors appeared to be even richer and have more things than they did. Ugly fights broke out and life-long friends no longer spoke to each other, but spread terrible rumors about each other. Lying and cheating became normal everyday happenings. The people who belonged to the Church of God were some of the richest in the land, so they became the ones who bragged, cheated, gossiped, and lied the most – they were even worse than the people who didn't belong to the church!

Since he was high priest over the church, Alma was just sick about how the people were behaving. He could hardly believe his friends and neighbors would act this way simply because the Lord had blessed them so greatly. Alma prayed long and hard about the situation, and he continued praying until the Lord gave him an idea of what should be done.

Alma told the people it was time for a new Chief Judge. He recommended Nephihah and called for an election. The people voted to accept Nephihah as their Chief Judge. This left Alma free to go among the people and preach to them. He began his Crusade for Christ campaign right in his own home town. He used plain and simple words and told them exactly what they needed to hear, even though they sounded harsh – that's because they were harsh. The words needed to be strong especially as he spoke to the church members.

Then Alma went on to preach about Jesus Christ, the Messiah and Redeemer who was coming. He would be the only one who could wash their sins away. He also preached repentance – both what it was and that it was required in order to be allowed into heaven. He also told them exactly what would happen if they did not repent of their sins and accept Jesus as their Savior. Alma invited those church members who had fallen away to come back into the fold of the good shepherd; and to those who have never joined the church to repent and be baptized so they too could come into the fold of God. As soon as every single person in Zarahemla had heard Alma's message, those who believed and were baptized began to gather together and meet often to fast and pray and study about God. Alma was confident things were back on track the way they should be. Alma then moved on to the city of Gideon which was east of the river Sidon. It was the very first time he had ever been to Gideon to preach because he had been so busy with his judge's duties. His message to these people was very different because the people had not fallen away from the church as the people of Zarahemla had, so he was able to make his sermons more upbeat and positive. He still called the unbelievers to repentance and baptism, but he also told more about the coming Messiah.

As soon as he felt his work in Gideon was finished, Alma went back to his home in Zarahemla to rest. After a few weeks, he was refreshed and renewed, so he traveled this time to the city of Melek which was west of the river Sidon. As he began to preach and teach, the people came to him from all around Melek – clear to the edges of the wilderness. Many were baptized and as soon as his work was done there, he traveled north for three days until he came to the city of Ammonihah.

Unfortunately, the situation was very different at Ammonihah. satan had really gotten hold of the people so they refused to listen to Alma's preaching. Alma prayed very hard that the Spirit of the Lord would change the people, but their hearts remained hardened against God. They told Alma that they didn't believe in the foolish traditions of his church. They also knew he had given up

his judge's duties, so he didn't have any power or authority over them at all. Then they spit on him and threw him out of the city.

Even though his heart was heavy and he was very sad, Alma decided to go to the city of Aaron. Maybe the people there would listen to the message God had for them. While he was on the road to Aaron, an angel appeared to him and told him to go back to Ammonihah and preach again. He was to tell them unless they repent, God would destroy them. What could Alma do? He ran all the way to Ammonihah! This time, he entered a different way, by the south gate. As soon as he got inside the city, he realized how hungry he was from his many days of fasting. He went up to a stranger and asked him if he would give a humble servant of God something to eat.

The stranger's name was Amulek and he was also a Nephite. Even though he didn't know Alma and had never met him, Amulek knew he was a holy prophet because he recognized him from a vision he had recently had. He told Alma to come home and eat supper with him.

After dinner, Alma told his host that he (Alma) was a high priest over the church of God and had been called to preach here, but the people had thrown him out of the city. He was about to leave this part of Nephite land and never return again, but an angel had commanded him to go back and prophesy and testify again to the people. Alma rested up at Amulek's house for several days. Just in the few days that Alma had been gone, the people had become even more gross than before – but that didn't stop Alma. He stood before the people and preached to them about repentance and what would happen to them if they didn't repent and turn to God. The people got very angry and started to grab Alma so they could put him in prison, but Amulek felt led to give his testimony. The people were amazed. Two witnesses! While the people were thinking about Amulek's testimony, several attorneys stepped up and tried to trip up Amulek, but he stayed firm and continued prophesying to the people. The people got angry again and said that Amulek was lying because he spoke against the laws, lawyers, and judges of the land.

Attorneys got paid only when they were employed. It didn't take them long to figure out that if they stirred the people up and caused riots and disturbances, they would have a lot more business. The leader of these attorneys was a man named Zeezrom who began to question Amulek about God, then tried to bribe him; but Amulek knew what was in Zeezrom's heart and called him on it. He answered every tricky question Zeezrom could throw at him. Once again the people were amazed at Amulek's words. This time, however, Zeezrom began to tremble because he knew he was guilty of everything Amulek had said. Alma spoke up and explained things further to Zeezrom and the huge crowd of people who had gathered around.

After Alma finished talking, Antionah, who was a chief judge stepped up and started questioning the men. Alma went on to explain many things, including the order of priesthood and how it came about. Zeezrom began to tremble even more because he was now convinced of the power of God. Many of the other people also believed the words of the 2 men and began to repent and study the scriptures, but the majority were angry with Alma and Amulek and took them to another chief judge. Zeezrom stood up for Alma and Amulek and said that he was guilty, but these 2 men of God were innocent. The judges and the mob didn't want to hear any of that, so they spit on Zeezrom and threw him out. They gathered up the men who believed Alma & Amulek and stoned them. The women & children of the believers along with their records & Holy Scriptures were burned up in a fire. Alma & Amulek were forced to watch as the believers were tortured to death by fire. The men could hardly stand it. Amulek wanted to raise his hand and save them, but Alma said…

Lesson 18 Study Questions

1. Why did God cause the Lamanite skin to be dark? (Alma 1:106)

2. Who nominated Nephihah for the office of Chief Judge? (Alma 2:22-23)
   Why? (Alma 2:26-27)

3. What lit up the souls of the people of Alma I who were baptized in the Waters of Mormon? (Alma 3:12)

4. How did the Lord plan to destroy the land of the Nephites if there had been no righteous prayers during Amulek's time? (Alma 8:32)

5. How much money did a judge make? (Alma 8:52)

Significant Quotations

"…the wickedness of the church was a great stumbling block to those who did not belong to the church…" ~ Alma 2:17

"…Ye are not prepared to meet God. Behold ye must prepare quickly, for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand…" ~Alma 3:50-51

"The children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in fasting and mighty prayer, in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God." Alma 4:6

Lesson 19

People in this chapter:	
Amulek=missionary friend of Alma	Aha=son of Zoram
Alma=missionary to Nephites	Mosiah=king of Nephites
Nehor=a Nephite antichrist	Ammon=son of Mosiah; missionary to Lamanites
Zeezrom=attorney	Aaron=son of Mosiah; missionary to Lamanites
Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior	Omner=son of Mosiah; missionary to Lamanites
Zoram=a Nephite army captain	Himni=son of Mosiah; missionary to Lamanites
Lehi=son of Zoram	

~ *read: Alma 10:50 – 12:10*

"…Amulek wanted to stop the burning, but Alma said…"

"No, the Lord has received them into His glory. The blood of these innocents will stand as a witness against the people on judgment day and God himself will judge them."

One of the chief judges, who was just like Nehor, made fun of Alma and Amulek saying, "So, are you going to do any more preaching? You and your God couldn't even save these people." Then the judge ordered the two preachers be thrown into jail.

While in jail, the men were beaten, starved, left without clothes, and tied up with strong ropes. After many days, the chief judge and many teachers and lawyers came to see the two preachers. One by one they stepped in front of the cell and demanded of the prisoners, "If you really have the power of God, break your ropes, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this people." After the last one spoke, the power of God came upon Alma and Amulek, and they got up and stood on their feet, then Alma asked the Lord how long they would have to suffer like this. He prayed that the Lord would give them the strength to break the ropes. Instantly, the ropes broke. When the people saw this, they started running. They were so scared that they fell down and couldn't even get out the door! There was an earthquake and the prison walls broke in half and fell down, killing the chief judge, lawyers, priests, and teachers who had been tormenting Alma and Amulek. Because of their faith, Alma and Amulek came out of the jail without even a scratch.

The people who were left in the city heard the crash and came running to find out what had happened. When they saw Alma and Amulek, they were terrified and ran away as fast as they could.

Alma and Amulek left the city and went to the land of Sidom where they found all the believers who had been stoned back in Ammonihah. They told them what had happened to their wives and children, and also testified what had happened at the jail.

Zeezrom was also at Sidom. He assumed Alma and Amulek had been killed because of him. He thought over and over about all his sins and guilt. Everything bothered him so badly that he developed a burning fever which made him very sick.

When he heard that Alma and Amulek were in the land of Sidom, he sent a message asking

82-77 BC

them to come see him. They came immediately and saw him on his sick bed, burning up with fever. Even his mind was sore because of his worries and sins. When Zeezrom saw the 2 men, he reached out and asked them to heal him. Alma took him by the hand and asked him if he believed in the power of Christ to save him. Zeezrom said, "Yes, I believe all the words you tried to teach me." Alma told him if he believed Christ could redeem him, that he could be healed. Zeezrom said yes, he believed with all his heart. Alma then prayed to God to have mercy on Zeezrom and heal him according to his faith in Christ. As soon as Alma said the words, Zeezrom jumped up and began to walk. Word spread throughout all the land about what had happened. Alma baptized Zeezrom and Zeezrom began preaching to the people. Once the church was started in Sidom, Alma took Amulek back with him to Zarahemla, since his own people in Ammonihah still wouldn't believe in God and still wanted to kill Amulek. He left all his money and possessions behind.

Just a little over a month after Alma and Amulek moved from Ammonihah back to Zarahemla, the Lamanites attacked Ammonihah and killed every last person in the city. Some had bragged it was such a great city that not even God could destroy it, but in one day, it was completely wiped out. There were so many bodies, they only covered them with a shallow covering. The smell was so bad that no one tried to live in the city for many years. It was called the Desolation of Nehors because it was desolate or deserted and those who had been killed practiced priestcraft like Nehor did.

The Lamanites also attacked the city of Noah and killed some, while capturing others and dragging them off into the wilderness. It all happened so fast, the Nephite army didn't even have a chance to get to the two cities before it was all over.

The Nephite army captain Zoram and his 2 sons Lehi and Aha went to Alma because they heard he had the gift of prophecy. They asked him if the Lord wanted them to go look for the Nephites who had been captured. Alma told them exactly where the Lamanites would cross the river Sidon, south of Manti. If Zoram and his 2 sons would go on the east side of the river, the Lord would deliver the captives to them. The Lamanite army was scattered all through the forest, but Zoram, Lehi and Aha knew the Lord had prepared the way for them. Sure enough, they were able to walk right up and take the captured Nephites without a fight and without one single person getting killed! They returned the prisoners back to the city of Noah and the Lamanites left them alone for a while.

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

One day as Alma was traveling from the land of Gideon south to the land of Manti, Alma came upon a group of Nephites. As he got closer, he suddenly stopped in the road where he was and just stared at the men. He couldn't believe his eyes! The four men on the road coming toward him were his best friends from his youth - the four sons of King Mosiah! These were the same guys who were with him when an angel appeared and struck him down, putting him in a coma! All five of them were converted to the Lord as a result of that life changing event. Alma was excited to see them and was thrilled to learn that they were still strong in their faith. In fact, because of their many hours of prayer and fasting, they now had the gift of prophecy. When they taught, they had power and authority directly from God. Where had they been for so many years and why were they heading toward Zarahemla? The four brothers shared with their friend Alma incredible stories of their adventures of the last 14 years living among the Lamanites and their attempts to convert them to the Lord.
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

A Special Letter From Your Church

Dear Member,

You are hereby requested to travel as a messenger of the Remnant Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints to remote areas of the countries of Afghanistan, Iran and Iraq. Your assignment is very special. You are asked to share the gospel with a people who look upon you as a bitter enemy. They are a wild and ferocious people who delight in murdering and robbing missionaries. They worship idols and are living in conditions of gross wickedness. They will probably throw you out of their cities, mock you, spit upon you, or toss you into prison where you might be tortured or, at best, left hungry and naked. Yet the Lord loves them. They are His children and He desires you to take His gospel to them. The work will not be easy. In fact, it will be very dangerous, but the time to share the gospel with them is now.

Sincerely,

Remnant Church of Jesus Christ
of Latter Day Saints

1. How would you react to this call?
2. What could possibly motivate you to accept it?
3. Could any joy compensate for the possible pain and suffering such an assignment might bring you?

Alma 12:18-20
"And the Lord said unto them also, Go forth among the Lamanites, thy brethren, and establish my word; Yet ye shall be patient in long suffering and afflictions, that ye may shew forth good examples unto them in me, and I will make an instrument of thee in my hands, unto the salvation of many souls. And it came to pass that the hearts of the sons of Mosiah, and also those who were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites, to declare unto them the word of God."

Ammon and his brothers accepted such a call. Alma experienced similar challenges among his own people. Their feelings and works are recorded in the book of Alma, showing their efforts to share the gospel with others and the results of those efforts. How would your book be written?

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

The 4 brothers (Ammon, Aaron, Omner, and Himni) and some of their friends said goodbye to their families and friends in Zarahemla and headed out into the wilderness, looking for the Lamanite people. They were young, but very serious about witnessing to these distant relatives of theirs who had drifted so far away from God that they had become wild and ferocious. The Lamanites also worshipped idols and were very lazy. Their favorite way of getting rich was by murdering Nephites and taking their possessions – which wouldn't have been a very comforting thought to the families of these young men, except King Mosiah himself went to the Lord about it. God assured Mosiah that the young men would be protected on their journeys.
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 19 Questions

1. ☺ What kind of money did Alma receive after he started a church at Sidon? (Alma 10:108)

2. How many of the people living in Ammonihah were killed in the battle at Ammonihah? (Alma 11:14-16)

Significant Quotation

"And what added more to his joy, they were still his brethren in the Lord; yea, and they had waxed strong in the knowledge of the truth; ~ Alma 12:3

Lesson 20

People in this chapter:	
Mosiah=king of Nephites	Ishmael=friend of Lehi from Jerusalem
Ammon=son of Mosiah; missionary to Lamanites	Lamoni=Lamanite king in land of Ishmael

~ *read: Alma 12:11 – 12:141*

"…God assured Mosiah his sons would be protected on their journeys…"

The four brothers left Zarahemla behind them, taking only their swords, spears, bows and arrows, and slings. Day after day, they prayed and fasted that the Lord would be with them. They felt the Spirit of the Lord was definitely in their group. He comforted them and gave them courage along the way.

Finally, they came to the borders of Lamanite country. They decided it was best to split up, so they each went in a separate direction, trusting in the Lord that they would see each other again sometime...

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Ammon went to the land of Ishmael. It had been named for the sons of Ishmael who became Lamanites. As soon as he stepped onto their land, the Lamanites captured him, tied him up with ropes and carried him to King Lamoni who was a direct descendent of Ishmael. The first thing the king asked Ammon was if he would like to live with the Lamanites. Ammon told him yes, he would. Good answer! This really pleased the king, so he told the guards to cut him loose and informed Ammon he was giving him one of his own daughters as a wife. Ammon said that he could not accept such a fine gift, but that instead, Ammon would be his servant. The king agreed to this and Ammon was sent with the other servants to take care of King Lamoni's sheep.

On his 4th day, Ammon and the others herded the flocks toward a watering hole called Sebus. Unfortunately, there were already some sheep drinking at the watering hole and their shepherds scared off Ammon's flock. The other servants, fearing for their lives, ran in all directions as fast as they could go. Finally the servants settled down and got back together to discuss what to do. They decided the king would probably kill them because they had lost the sheep, and they began to cry because they were so afraid. Whenever shepherds lost any of the king's sheep, they were always executed.

When Ammon saw them crying over their desperate situation, he recognized this as an opportunity to witness about God's power to these men. He told them, "Wait a minute! Before we give up and just accept our death, let's at least try to find the sheep and round them up first. If we can bring the sheep back to the palace, the king won't have a reason to kill us!"

Sure enough, they found all the sheep and herded them back to the watering hole one more time. Unfortunately, the Lamanite rebels were still there, ready to scatter the king's sheep again. Oh, great! What if Ammon and the other shepherds couldn't find all the sheep again before they had to return to the palace?

Ammon spoke up and told his fellow servants to form a circle around their sheep so they wouldn't run away. While they were busy doing that, Ammon went to talk to the other rude shepherds. There were quite a few of them, so they were brave when only one of the king's servants came up to them since they knew they could take him on without a problem. They didn't
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

know the Lord had promised King Mosiah that all of his sons, including Ammon, would be protected. They didn't even know anything about the Lord or that he even existed! Ammon started picking up rocks and began using his sling. It didn't take long for the Lamanite shepherds to start falling down – this just made the other bad shepherds upset and came after Ammon with clubs. Ammon was quicker, though. Just as they lifted their clubs to hit him, he cut off their arms with his sword. They kept coming and Ammon kept slicing until every Lamanite who had come up against him with a club had lost their arms. Bleeding Lamanites started running – they had had enough.. Six of them had died because of Ammon's sling – the others were badly bruised and bleeding, but they were still alive. The only one of them he killed with his sword was their leader, but as they began getting up and coming after him again, he cut off their arms too and they ran away.

Once all the bad Lamanite shepherds were gone, Ammon and the other servants watered their sheep, then returned them to the king's pasture. The servants had picked up the arms lying around and carried them back to the king. King Lamoni asked them what this was all about and the shepherds each told what they had seen that day. When he learned about Ammon's loyalty, the king was amazed. He asked his shepherds if they thought Ammon might be the Great Spirit. They said they didn't know about that, but they were sure of one thing: he couldn't be killed by the king's enemies. They were also convinced that he was a powerful friend of their king. King Lamoni was more certain than ever that Ammon was the Great Spirit that his ancestors had talked about and by living among them had protected his sheep and his servant shepherds. King Lamoni remembered his former servants who had lost his sheep and he had ordered their executions. He hadn't thought much about it before, but now he knew he had probably angered the Great Spirit by having so many of his men killed simply because they had lost some of his flock.

The king asked where this man with such great power was. The servants told him that Ammon was in the stables feeding the king's horses. The king couldn't believe Ammon's faithfulness!

Before they had gone out that morning, Lamoni had commanded his servants that when they were done watering the sheep, they needed to get his horses and chariots ready so he could go to the land of Nephi to attend the great feast that his father who was king of all the Lamanites had ordered. The king was more certain than ever that Ammon was really the Great Spirit. The king had never been so shocked in all his life. Imagine that - the Great Spirit was right here in the king's own palace, and he was working for the king just like a servant. What could it mean?

When Ammon had finished his chores, he went to the palace to report to the king, but stopped when he saw the look on the king's face. He knew something was different, but he didn't know what. As he started to turn around and leave, one of the king's servants called to him, "Rabbanah, which means 'great and powerful king'. King Lamoni wants you to stay." Ammon bowed and asked the king, "What can I do for you, oh king?" The king didn't have an answer for Ammon and didn't speak for an hour. Later, Ammon spoke again, asking the king what he wanted him to do, but the king still couldn't answer him.

The Spirit of the Lord filled Ammon with the king's thoughts. Ammon asked the king, "Is it because you heard that I defended your servants and sheep, and killed 7 Lamanites with a sling and sword; then cut off the arms of those who came against me while I was defending your flocks and servants? Why are you so surprised? I'm just a man and am your servant. Whatever you want is what I will do as long as it is right. Just when the king thought he couldn't be any more surprised, he now realized Ammon could read his thoughts, but he just couldn't be silent any longer. The questions seemed to flow right out of him. He opened his mouth and asked, "Who are you? Are you the Great Spirit who knows all things?" Ammon answered him, "No, I am not." "Then how do you know what I'm thinking?" the king asked. You may speak boldly without fear of punishment

from me. Tell me what power was yours to fight off so many fellow Lamanites who had scattered my sheep. If you will tell me about these things, I will give you whatever you desire."

"What I really want from you is for you to listen to my words as I tell you by what power I do these things. That's all I ask of you." Lamoni answered him and said, "Yes, I will believe everything you tell me."

Ammon asked him if he believed there is a God. King Lamoni looked confused and said he didn't know what he meant by that word. Ammon re-phrased the question. "Do you believe there is a Great Spirit?" and King Lamoni nodded as he answered, "Yes." Ammon explained that the Great Spirit is called God and God created everything in heaven and earth. Lamoni once again frowned and replied, "Yes, I believe that the Great Spirit God created everything on the earth, but I don't know what a 'heaven' is. Ammon plainly stated, "Heaven is a place where God and all his holy angels live." "Is it above the earth?" King Lamoni wanted to know. Ammon nodded, "Yes, and he looks down on all the children of men: and he knows all our thoughts, plans, and what we intend to do because He himself created us from the beginning of time." King Lamoni thought about it a moment and spoke, "I really do believe everything you've told me. Are you sent from God?"

Ammon told him, "I am a man; and man in the beginning, was created after the image of God, and I am called by his Holy Spirit to teach these things to this people, that they may know what the truth is. A part of His Spirit lives in me which gives me knowledge and power, depending on my faith in God and my desire to serve Him." Ammon went on to tell the king more about God, beginning with the creation of the world and the fall of man. He continued, including what was happening in Jerusalem when their ancestor Lehi left with his sons. Ammon shared the adventures of Lehi and Ishmael's families and the rebellions and fights which split the families apart. He went on to explain the plan of redemption and the coming of Christ.

The king believed every part of what Ammon told him – every single word of it – and cried to God for mercy for himself and his people. As soon as he finished praying, he collapsed and fell to the ground unconscious. His servants carried him to his wife because they thought he was dead. She told them to lay him on a bed where he could lie in state and be properly mourned over. Finally, after 2 days of grieving, the servants started getting ready to take his body to the burial chamber which they had made for him. The queen wasn't exactly convinced her king was dead. She had heard about Ammon and sent for him. Ammon came immediately to see what he could do for her. She told him her husband's servant had mentioned that he was a holy prophet and had great power. "Please go in and check on my husband. He hasn't moved a muscle in 2 days and 2 nights. Some think he's dead and stinks, so they want to bury him. I really don't think he stinks. Would you see what you think?"

Ammon knew that King Lamoni was under the power of God. While unconscious, God was taking away his unbelief that had clouded his mind and was replacing it with the light of God that filled his soul with unspeakable joy and goodness. This had simply overpowered his body and caused him to be unconscious. Ammon reported to the queen after viewing the king's body, "he's not dead, but is only sleeping. He will wake up tomorrow, so please don't bury him. Do you believe me, my Queen?" She replied, "I really don't have anything to base my feelings on except your word, but I do believe you." Ammon went down on one knee, "Blessed are you because of your great faith. Even among the Nephites, there has never been such great faith as yours." Ammon left the room, but the queen stayed to watch over her husband's body all through the night and up to the hour when Ammon said he would wake up. She wanted to make sure all the servants had gotten the order not to bury the body. How horrible it would be to lose her husband now after all that had happened!

LESSON 20 Questions

1. How does Alma 12:11 compare to Mark 6:9 and Doctrine & Covenants 83:15a?

2. Which way did Ammon go when the brothers split up? (Alma 12:29)

3. Which of King Lamoni's ancestors came from Jerusalem? (Alma 12:32)

4. What did Ammon win for pleasing King Lamoni the first time they met? (Alma 12:35) Did he claim his prize? (Alma 12:36)

5. How long had he been in the land before he got into his first fight? (Alma 12:38)

6. What 2 weapons did Ammon use against the Lamanites during his first week as a missionary? (Alma 12:52, 56)

7. What did the king's servants call Ammon and what does it mean? (Alma 12:83)

8. How many men did Ammon kill the first week he was a shepherd? (Alma 12:89)

9. If the king didn't know what the word "God" meant, how was it that the queen knew what it meant? (Alma 12:101-102, 116, 129)

10. Did the queen think the king smelled bad? (Alma 12:131) Did Alma think the king smelled bad? (Alma 12:136)

11. Who were some of the groups of Lamanites converted as a result of the missionary efforts of the 4 sons of King Mosiah? (Alma 12:101-178; 13:28-29; Alma 13:30-22) (Alma 12:190-214; 13:30-14:9; 14:17-20) (Alma 14:51-54) (Alma 14:62-65**)** (Alma 14:73-74)

Significant Quotations

"Notwithstanding they believed in a Great Spirit, they supposed that whatsoever they did, was right." ~ Alma 12:71

"…the light of everlasting light was lit up in his soul…" ~ Alma 12:134

" For the king was greatly astonished at the words which he [Ammon] had spoken, and also at the words which had been spoken by his son Lamoni; therefore he was desirous to learn them." ~ Alma 12:214

Lesson 21

People in this chapter:	
Ammon=son of Mosiah; missionary to Lamanites	Ammah=friend of Aaron
Lamoni=Lamanite king of land of Ishmael	Antiomno=Lamanite king of land in Middoni
Abish=a Lamanite palace servant	Mosiah=Nephite King in Zarahemla
Aaron=son of Mosiah; missionary to Lamanites	Noah=wicked Nephite king
Muloki=friend of Aaron	Amulon=wicked high priest of Noah

~ *read: Alma 12:142 – 13:5*

"…How horrible it would be to bury the king when he wasn't dead …"

At the exact time Ammon had said the king would wake up, Ammon and the servants joined the queen at King Lamoni's bedside. The king woke up and sat up in the bed, then stretched out his hand to his wife and said, "Blessed be the name of God, and blessed are you. As sure as you live, I have seen my Redeemer and he will be born of a woman and he will redeem all mankind who believe on His name." Once again, he was overcome with joy and passed out. The queen at this point became overpowered by the Holy Spirit of God and she too collapsed. Seeing with his own eyes his prayers answered about the Lamanites accepting God, Ammon fell down on his knees and poured out his soul in prayer and thanksgiving to God. Ammon also was so overcome with joy that he too collapsed and was lifeless.

When the servants saw this, they cried unto God because they had been there and saw Ammon's special power and they also called on the name of God until finally they fell down as if they were dead. Only one Lamanite palace servant was left standing. Her name was Abish and she had secretly been converted to the Lord many years ago because of a spiritual vision her father had had. She had never told anyone about her beliefs in God, but that was all about to change. She knew what had happened to the king, queen, Ammon, and all the servants was because of God's power and she saw this as a wonderful opportunity to show the people so they would come to know and believe in Him also. She ran out of the palace and went from house to house, telling all the people to come see what had happened, so the Lamanites went to the palace to see for themselves just what had happened to their king. When they got to the palace, the crowd couldn't believe what they were seeing. They saw their king, queen, and all the royal servants lying dead on the ground. Then they saw Ammon – a Nephite and therefore an enemy of the Lamanites. Some people said a great evil had come upon them because the king had let a Nephite live in their land. Others argued the king had brought this evil on his house because he had killed his own servants who had lost some of the royal sheep. Some were still furious at Ammon because he had killed and injured some of their families and friends at the waters of Sebus when he protected the king's flock from the bad shepherds. In fact, the brother of the leader whom Ammon had stabbed was so angry, that he walked up to Ammon and drew his sword to kill him and avenge his brother's death. Instead of killing Ammon, the angry brother dropped dead where he stood.

Seeing that Ammon could not be killed, the people were afraid of Ammon and were afraid to touch anyone from the palace who had fallen down. They began to wonder what could cause such great power and what this all meant. Some said Ammon was the Great Spirit, while others said he was sent by the Great Spirit. But there were some who said Ammon was a monster sent by the

Nephites to torment the Lamanites. One group decided the Great Spirit had sent Ammon to cause problems because of their sins and reminded everyone that it was the Great Spirit that was always on the Nephites' side and protected the Nephites. They went on to explain that it had been this Great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their fellow Lamanites. Fights broke out over the different ideas. Abish who had called them all there in the first place, started crying when she saw the fighting. She picked up the queen's hand to pull her up from the ground. As soon as Abish touched the queen's hand, the queen woke up and got to her feet. She spoke loudly and everyone could hear her, "O blessed Jesus, who has saved me from an awful hell! O blessed God, have mercy upon this people." As soon as she said it, she clapped her hands because she was so happy. She continued to pray out loud. As soon as she was done, she reached over to King Lamoni and grasped his hand. Instantly he woke up and he also stood. Seeing some of the fighting still going on, the king began to share with them what Ammon had taught him. All who listened to him believed and were converted to the Lord. Unfortunately, there were many among them who didn't want to hear the teachings and left. As Ammon and the palace servants woke up, they testified to the people that their hearts had been changed and that they no longer wanted do wrong. Many said they had seen and talked with angels and shared what the angels told them about God. Many believed and were baptized that very day. They became a righteous people and established a church where the Lord poured out His Spirit on them.

Once the church had been established, King Lamoni asked Ammon to go with him to the land of Nephi so he could present Ammon to his father who was king over all the Lamanites. But the Lord warned Ammon not to go to the land of Nephi because the king there would kill him. Instead he was to go to the land of Middoni because his brother Aaron and his friends Muloki and Ammah were in prison. When Ammon told King Lamoni that he would not go with him to meet his father because he was needed in the land of Middoni to help his brother and friends get out of jail, King Lamoni asked him who had told him this. Ammon said God had told him. Lamoni insisted on going with Ammon because he knew King Antiomno who ruled in Middoni and was a friend of his and would plead on behalf of the young Nephites. Lamoni ordered his servants to get the chariots and horses ready for their trip. While they were on their way to Middoni, they met Lamoni's father. The king who was ruler over all the land asked his son, "Why did you not come to the great feast? And perhaps more importantly, why are you traveling with this Nephite, a child of a liar? Lamoni told him where he was going and why because he did not want to offend his powerful father. He also told him everything that had happened to him which had caused him to miss the royal feast. Lamoni was stunned when he saw his father's face and realized just how angry his father was with him. He shook as he told Lamoni that all Nephites were liars and only came among the Lamanites to steal from them. He commanded his son to kill Ammon immediately with his sword and to come with him and return to the land of Ishmael. Lamoni refused. I will not kill Ammon and I will not return to my home. I will go to Middoni so I can help release Ammon's brother and friends because I know they are holy prophets of the true God. His father was enraged and drew his own sword to kill Lamoni, but Ammon spoke up, "You will not kill your son - even if it would be better for him to die right now than you. You see, sir, he has repented of his sins, but if you were to die as you are now, your soul would not be saved. If you were to kill this innocent man, his blood would cry out from the ground to the Lord his God for vengeance and you might lose your soul." The king answered, "I realize that if I should kill my son, I would indeed spill innocent blood, because it is actually you who are out to destroy him." and he attacked Ammon. Ammon was hit time after time, but nothing happened to him. Finally, Ammon hit the king's arm so hard, it lost all feeling and dropped uselessly to his side. When the king saw that Ammon could kill him, he began to beg

Ammon to spare his life, but Ammon raised his sword and said, "I will kill you unless you promise that my brother and friends will be released from prison." The king, fearing for his life, said, "If you will spare me, I will give you anything you want – even one half of my kingdom." Ammon knew he had the king right where he wanted him and told him, "If you will promise to get my brethren out of prison, not be angry with your son, Lamoni, let him keep his kingdom and run it any way he chooses, then I will let you go. Otherwise, I will kill you here and now."

The old king could hardly believe his good luck! This Nephite could have killed him on the spot, but he didn't. He also recognized the deep friendship that had formed between these 2 young men; how his son had changed and how this Nephite was so different from what he had thought all Nephites were like. "Because this is all you have asked for, I will order the immediate release of the young Nephites, and allow my son, Lamoni to keep his kingdom forever and rule it without anymore interference or supervision from me. I would also like to ask that once the prisoners are released, that all of you young Nephites come to my palace – I want to talk to you about what Lamoni spoke of here today. I'm very curious and interested in hearing more." Ammon agreed to come visit the great and powerful king at his home in the land of Nephi.

Soon Ammon and Lamoni said goodbye to the king and continued on their way to the land of Middoni. Lamoni was indeed a good talker and convinced his old friend to let the Nephites go. When Ammon saw them, his heart broke for the men. They were naked and their skin was raw and festering where they had been bound with strong ropes. They were starving and dying of thirst and suffered from all kinds of miseries – but they didn't complain. Obviously they had walked into a land where the people were much more hardened and more stiff-necked than the land where Ammon had gone. These people refused to listen to Aaron, Muloki, and Ammah. They beat them and chased them throughout the countryside until they finally caught them in the land of Middoni and had them bound up and thrown into prison. There they stayed until Ammon and King Lamoni were able to get them out of prison.

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Previously, when the 4 sons of Mosiah had split up, Aaron went toward the city which the Lamanites called Jerusalem, since that is where they had originally come from back in the old days.

Also living there in Jerusalem were Amalekites who were a group of Nephites who had fallen away and were hard-hearted and very sneaky with an extreme hatred for their former brothers, the Nephites, or anyone who dared to join up with the Nephite group. The Amalekites were the ones who led the massacre on the converted Lamanites who called themselves Anti-Nephi-Lehi's.

Another group of people who lived with the Lamanites in Jerusalem were the Amulonites. They also hated the Nephites. Despite all the preaching and witnessing done by the sons of Mosiah, not one single Amulonite ever repented or accepted the gospel. The Amulonites were descended from the wicked priests of King Noah, led by Amulon, the high priest. These men and women were Nephites on their father's side and Lamanites on their mother's. They chose to join up and live among the Lamanites.

The Lamanites were bad enough by themselves, but combined with the Amalekites and the Amulonites…well, the land called Jerusalem down by the borders of Mormon was not a pleasant place to be – especially if you were a Nephite.

When Aaron, one of the sons of the Nephite King Mosiah came wandering into Jerusalem one day, he went straight to the Amalekite synagogue and began to preach. It didn't take long for one of the Amalekites to start harassing and making fun of him. Most of the Amalekites belonged to the "Order of the Nehors".
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 21 Study Questions

1. Name one of the women named in the Book of Alma. What did she do? (Alma 12:150)

2. Who was the only person in the royal palace who didn't faint and why didn't they? (Alma 12:150)

3. What made the towns people angry when they saw the bodies scattered on the palace floor? (Alma 12:155)

4. What happened to the man who tried to kill Ammon while he was still unconscious on the palace floor? (Alma 12:160)

5. What caused the people of the palace to wake up? (Alma 12:169-172)

6. What does "rebuke" mean as mentioned in Alma 12:173?

7. Why did Ammon leave the land of Ishmael? (Alma 12:178)
   Where did he go next? (Alma 12:182) Why? (Alma 12:182)

8. What does it mean to "forbear" as mentioned in Alma 12:203?

9. If King Lamoni's father was furious with Ammon the Nephite, why didn't he try to kill him? (Alma 12:204-205)

10. Did Ammon's brother & friends ever get out of jail? Explain (Alma 12:207-213, 216)

Significant Quotations

"And it came to pass that there were many among them, who said that Ammon was the Great Spirit, and others said he was sent by the Great Spirit; But others rebuked them all, saying, that he was a monster…" ~ Alma 12:164-165a

"And behold, many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels, and had conversed with them." ~ Alma 12:177

"For the king was greatly astonished at the words which he [Ammon] had spoken, and also at the words which had been spoken by his son Lamoni; therefore he was desirous to learn them." ~ Alma 12:214

Lesson 22

People in this chapter:	
Nehor=a Nephite antichrist	Omner=son of Mosiah; missionary
Aaron=son of Mosiah; missionary to Lamanites	Himni=son of Mosiah; missionary
Muloki=friend of Aaron	Alma=spiritual leader; missionary to Nephites
Ammah=friend of Aaron	Amulek=friend of Alma
Ammon=son of Mosiah; missionary to Lamanites	Laman=1st son of Lehi from Jerusalem
Lamoni=Lamanite king over the land of Ishmael	Lemuel=2nd son of Lehi from Jerusalem
Adam=first man God created	Noah=wicked Nephite king
Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior	Amulon=wicked high priest of King Noah

~ *read: Alma 13:6 – 14:62*

"…Most of the Amalekites belonged to the Order of the Nehors…"

The order of the Nehors was started by an anti-Christ named Nehor. They:

1. Thought that meeting together was the same as worshipping
2. Believed that God would save all men
3. Denied Christ, saying that no man could know of things to come

Aaron saw that he was just wasting his breath, so he left the synagogue and went to another village called Ani-anti where he found Muloki, Ammah and the rest of his friends preaching. But the people there also refused to listen, so they went to the land of Middoni to preach, but only a handful believed in what they were saying. Unfortunately, those in charge were not among the believers and Aaron and those who could be rounded up were thrown in prison. The others escaped and took off, leaving Middoni. Aaron and the other prisoners were tortured and starved until their brother Ammon and King Lamoni came to get them out of prison.

It wasn't long before the Spirit of the Lord urged them to start preaching again. They shared the word of God anywhere there were Lamanites who would listen. Finally, the Lamanites began to listen and many accepted the truth and repented.

Soon King Lamoni and Ammon said goodbye to the Nephite missionaries and headed back home to the land of Ishmael. Once they got back home, however, King Lamoni refused to let Ammon be his servant any longer. Instead the king had churches built and allowed his people to gather there often if they chose to worship God and listen to Ammon's preaching. The people were so anxious to hear about God that Ammon preached daily to them.

Right after King Lamoni and Ammon left Middoni, Aaron traveled to the land of Nephi. The first thing he and his friends did was to go straight to the palace and ask to see the king, who happened to be King Lamoni's father and was king over all the Lamanites. Aaron and his friends bowed before the king and told him who they were. They asked the king if he would spare their lives, they would agree to become his servants. The king said, "Stand up. I don't want you to be my servants, but I insist that you help me with something that has really been bothering me. Why didn't your brother Ammon come with you out of Middoni?"

Aaron told the king, "The Spirit of the Lord led him in a different direction. He has gone to the

90-77 BC

land of Ishmael to teach the people of Lamoni. The King asked them, "What does that mean…'Spirit of the Lord'? Those words are what has been troubling me because Ammon had talked about the Spirit of the Lord. Also what did Ammon mean, 'If you repent, you will be saved and if you don't repent, you will be left out at the last day?'"

Aaron was excited, and told the king, "As sure as you live, oh king, there is a God." The king began to catch the excitement now and asked more questions. "Is God that Great Spirit that brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem?" Aaron explained, "Yes, God is the Great Spirit and He created everything that had ever been made, both on earth and in heaven." Then he asked the king a very important question. "Do you believe it?" The king said yes, he believed it and wanted to hear more. He assured Aaron that he would believe every word that Aaron told him about God. Aaron began with the creation of Adam, and how God had created man in His own image. He explained that God gave man commandments and because of sin, man fell from his perfect fellowship with God. He shared the plan of redemption for all those who believed in Christ. After Aaron was finished, the king asked one final question: "What shall I do, that I may have this eternal life which you have talked about? I want to be born of God and have this wicked spirit taken from me and receive His Spirit that I may be filled with joy and not be tossed aside at the last day. I will give up all that I own and give away my kingdom, so that I may receive this great joy."

Aaron stated, "If you repent of all your sins and bow down before God and call on His name in faith, believing that you will receive, then you will have the hope you are looking for." Immediately the king bowed down before the Lord and cried out loud saying, "Oh God, Aaron has told me that there is a God. If you are God, please make yourself known to me and I will give up all sin to know You, so I may be raised from the dead, and be saved at the last day."

As soon as he said those words, he fell down as if he were dead. His servants jumped up and ran to the queen and told her what had just happened to the king. As soon as the queen saw her husband lying on the floor, she also noticed that Aaron and his friends were standing over him. Assuming they had knocked the king unconscious, she commanded the servants to take the men out and kill them. The servants saw why the king had fallen and were too scared to touch Aaron or his friends. They begged the queen to not make them kill the men because they were so powerful. When the queen saw how terrified the servants were, she became afraid herself. Instead, she told her servants to call the people together so they could kill these Nephites.

When Aaron saw how determined the queen was and knowing the hardened hearts of the Lamanites, he was afraid rioting would break out, so he stretched out his hand and said to the king, "Stand." The king immediately woke up and got up on his feet." The queen and many of the servants watched in both amazement and fear. The king witnessed all that he had learned from Aaron about God, the Great Spirit, and Christ's plan of salvation. The entire household was converted to the Lord. As the people started gathering together because of the queen's earlier command, they saw the Nephites and started getting angry. The king stood before the crowd and explained that Aaron and the others were his friends. Once the crowd calmed down, the king asked Aaron and his friends to preach to the people. The king even sent out a decree among all the lands of the Lamanites that no one should bother Ammon, Aaron, Omner or Himni or any of their Nephite friends who are preaching the word of God, no matter where they are. In fact, they are to have free access to all houses, temples, and sanctuaries. The king sent out this decree with the hopes that all his people might be converted and follow the Lord. He wished the Lamanites could see that they and the Nephites were really brothers so all could live together and worship together as God intended them to. Aaron and his friends went out establishing churches, and ordaining priests and appointing teachers throughout the land among the Lamanites as they preached and taught the

word of God. Thousands were brought to the Lord, and believed again in the traditions of the Nephites. They were taught from the sacred records and the prophecies which were handed down, even to the present time. Once the Lamanites were converted, they never fell away again. They laid down their weapons and never fought against God's people anymore. The Lamanites who were converted came from the land of Ishmael, the land of Middoni, the land of Shilom, the land of Shemlon, the city of Nephi, the city of Lemuel, and the city of Shimnilon.

None of the Amulonites were ever converted though, and only one of the Amalekites ever believed (Alma's friend Amulek). The rest of the Lamanites hardened their hearts against the Lord even more, if that is possible.

The converted Lamanite king and the other believers wanted to have a distinctive name so they wouldn't be associated with the other Lamanites. The king discussed the matter with Aaron and many of the priests. They decided to call themselves Anti-Nephi- Lehi's. They were hard working and became friendly with the Nephites. The king was old and decided to pass the entire Lamanite kingdom over to Lamoni's brother. He proclaimed that his son, the new king, should now be called Anti-Nephi-Lehi. Shortly afterward, the old powerful Lamanite king passed away.

Meanwhile, the rest of the Lamanites who had not been converted, were stirred up by the Amalekites, and the Amulonites, to anger against their brethren who now called themselves Anti-Nephi-Lehi's. Their hatred became so strong that they took their weapons and went after the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

When Ammon and his friends from Ishmael saw what the Lamanites were getting ready to do, they went to Midian where Ammon ran into his other brothers and friends who had left Zarahemla so long ago. They all decided to go to the land of Ishmael to discuss with Lamoni and Lamoni's brother Anti-Nephi-Lehi how to defend themselves against the Lamanites since the Anti-Nephi-Lehi's had chosen never to fight using weapons ever again. As a testimony to God and man that they would never use weapons again for war, they buried all their weapons deep in the ground. They also vowed that before shedding anyone's blood, they would give up their own lives first. The Lamanites soon came, geared up for battle.

When the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi saw the Lamanites coming toward them, they went out to meet them and fell down to the ground and began to call on the name of the Lord. While they were still kneeling down to pray, the Lamanites began killing them. Before the Lamanites realized no one was fighting back, they had killed 1,005 Anti-Nephi Lehi's. Once they saw that their brethren wouldn't move out of the way to avoid getting slashed, the Lamanites stopped the killing. Many of them repented what they had done and threw down their own weapons. In fact, there were more Lamanites who repented that day than there were Anti-Nephi-Lehi's who were killed. None of the converts were Amalekites or Amulonites or from the Order of Nehor; but they were actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel. It just seemed to prove that once a person knows God and falls away, they become even more hardened that those who had never even known God's ways. By this time, most of the Lamanites left were actually wicked Nephites descended from Noah's priest Amulon who had earlier joined with their Lamanite brothers, since they were like in spirit. Their one goal in life now it seemed, was vengeance by destroying the entire Nephite nation. When the Lamanite tribe went to the land of Zarahemla in search of Nephites, they wiped out the first city they came across - city of Ammonihah. These people of Ammonihah were Nephites, it was true, but only one of them had ever been converted to the Lord and he, Amulek, had left with his friend Alma long ago.

After destroying Ammonihah, they had many battles with other Nephites who killed many of the Lamanites. Most of the Lamanites who were slain were descendants of priest Amulon.

Lesson 22 Study Questions

1. How often did Ammon preach to the Lamanites in the land of Ishmael once King Lamoni was converted? (Alma 13:29)

2. Which king lived in the land of Nephi? (Alma 13:31)

3. Why did the Lamanite king in Alma 13:51 have to bow down in order to have salvation, if we don't have to bow down today?

4. How did God make himself known to the king of the Lamanites? (Alma 13:54)

5. ☺ Who were the pen pals of the Anti-Nephi-Lehi's? (Alma 14:20,30)

Significant Quotation

"…He loveth our souls as well as he loveth our children; in His mercy, He doth visit us by His angels…" ~ Alma 14:38

"And thus we see, that they buried the weapons of peace, or they buried the weapons of war, for peace." ~ Alma 14:47

Lesson 23

People in this chapter:	
Amulon=wicked priest of Noah	Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior
Aaron=son of Mosiah; missionary	Ammon=son of Mosiah; missionary
Abinadi=Nephite prophet in Noah's time	Mosiah=son of Benjamin; Nephite king
Noah=wicked Nephite king	Alma=son of Alma1; Nephite spiritual leader
Lamoni=a Nephite king	Omner=son of Mosiah; missionary
Moses=Israelite; God gave 10 commandments	Himni=son of Mosiah; missionary

~ *read: Alma 14:63 – 15:35*

"…Most of the Lamanites who were slain were descendants of priest Amulon…"

The rest of the Lamanites and the Amulonites ran into the wilderness to hide out. While resting up in the wilderness, many of the Lamanites had time to think back on everything that had happened and remembered the words of the missionary Aaron. Many of those Lamanites were converted right then and there – without any missionary actually being there. It seems the seeds that Aaron's group had sown, finally grew until the Lamanites got the picture and repented. This made the Amulonites angry because the Amulonites were the captains and leaders of the Lamanite armies and now they had no army to lead. The Amulonite leaders burnt to death those newly converted Lamanites right there in the wilderness where they were all still hiding. This did not sit well with the non-converted Lamanites who were, after all their own tribe. The non-converted Lamanites began hunting down and killing the Amulonites, so the Amulonites scattered even farther into the wilderness. This fulfilled the prophecy of Abinadi who had predicted: what Noah's priests had done to him (burned Abinadi at the stake), they would do to others who believed in God. Because of these acts, the descendants would be scattered like sheep without a shepherd and killed by wild beasts (or in this case, the wild beast-like Lamanites).

The Lamanites realized they couldn't beat the Nephites, so they went back to their own territory. Some went to the land of Ishmael and some to the land of Nephi (where King Lamoni and his father had reigned). Naturally, the Lord had a hand in this, because most of those who settled back there became converted at last and joined the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi. They too buried their weapons and became a righteous people who not only followed the laws of Moses, but also looked forward to the coming of Christ, because they realized that just following the laws of Moses wasn't enough to bring about their salvation.

Ammon and his brothers got together to discuss all these Lamanites being converted. (To review: 4 sons of King Mosiah II give up their right to the throne and leave Zarahemla to become missionaries to Lamanites (Mosiah 12:1). Their friend Alma the Younger stays in Zarahemla and is a chief judge, then missionary to the Nephites. He meets up with his four friends 14 years later (Alma 12:1). The stories of the four brothers' efforts are Alma 12:6 through Alma 15:16 when we take up the story again of their meeting their friend Alma.

They were so excited over the success of their efforts in converting the Lamanites to the Lord. Ammon, as always, led the discussion. He said, "We have so much to celebrate. How could we have guessed when we left Zarahemla 14 years ago that the Lord would have poured out His blessings on us? Which blessings? The blessings that we're allowed to be instruments for God to

bring thousands of Lamanites from darkness into the light of God! The field sure was ripe and we were truly blessed because we thrust in our sickle and worked hard to gather in more souls for God. These souls belong to God now. Blessed be the name of God. Let's sing His praises and give thanks to His holy name. Just think – if we hadn't left Zarahemla, our new brethren would still be our bitter enemies and would still be strangers to the Lord."

When Ammon, in his excitement, paused for a breath, Aaron jumped all over him, saying, "Whoa, Ammon. I think you're getting a little carried away and your enthusiasm has turned into bragging." Ammon was quick to set him straight, though. "I'm not bragging about my own accomplishments, dear brother. My heart is just so overwhelmed with joy right now because of the things God has done and allowed us to witness and help Him with. By myself, I'm weak and can do nothing. With God I can do anything – and the same goes for you all. You know it just as much as I do. I'm just trying to praise God and give Him all the glory. How can anyone say too much about His great power and mercy? I can't even begin to tell you how I feel. He saved us when we were going around trying to destroy His church! He picked us up out of the miry clay. He didn't have to even bother with us, but He did. By repenting, using faith and good works, and continually praying, we get a glimpse into some of the mysteries of God and can learn more about Him. Because of our closeness with the Lord, we are supposed to turn around and share it with everyone else we possibly can so they too will repent.

Remember how the other Nephites in the land of Zarahemla laughed at us when we told them we wanted to go preach to those murdering Lamanites? They didn't believe anything we had to say would ever get through to the Lamanites because they were so wicked. In fact, our own people wanted to send our army to wipe out every single Lamanite before they could come over and destroy us! But we went with a purpose, not of war, but to save just a few souls. When we were so depressed and about to give up, the Lord comforted us and told us to go to the Lamanites and be patient and He would help us to be successful…so we went among them and we were patient even when some of us were tortured. We testified anywhere and everywhere we could find a Lamanite. What did we get in return? Kicked out, mocked, spit on, beaten, stoned, tied up, and thrown into prison. Always, though, the Lord watched over us and delivered us. We couldn't have done it without Him.

Looking back, we can now see the fruits of our labors. Are they few? No! They are tremendous! And we know the converted Lamanites are sincere because of their love for all mankind, whether that love is accepted or not. They would rather be killed than kill their enemies! They even buried their weapons – now that shows you something about their love towards their enemies! I've never seen such love before – not even among the Nephites! We Nephites wouldn't even hesitate to pick up a weapon and defend ourselves, even if (or maybe especially if) it means killing a Lamanite. My joy has carried me away to bragging, but I'm bragging about God – not us. He continues to watch over us even when we are in this strange land which is so far from Israel, the land of His people. I realize that God is mindful of all His creation, no matter what land they're in."

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Even though the Lamanites had left the Anti-Nephi-Lehi people alone, the Amalekites decided to get revenge because many of their friends had been killed in battle. Once again, the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi refused to fight and many were killed. When Ammon and his brothers saw what was going on, they decided to take the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi to Zarahemla for their safety. The King of the Anti-Nephi-Lehi's, however, said the Nephites would kill them because of what they had previously done before they buried their weapons. Ammon asked the king that if the Lord told Ammon to take the people to Zarahemla, would he and his people go? The king assured Ammon
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

that if the Lord told them to go, the Anti-Nephi-Lehi's would become their slaves until their debt of sinning and killing the Nephites had been paid in full. Ammon told him that it was against the law for the Nephites to have slaves. Instead, they should simply go and ask for mercy. The king told Ammon to go ask the Lord what they should do. Ammon prayed to God and the Lord answered him. He told Ammon to get the Anti-Nephi-Lehi's out of the land quickly because the devil had gotten hold of the Amalekites who were stirring up the Lamanites again. God promised to protect the people. Ammon returned to the king and told him everything the Lord had said.

The 4 sons of Mosiah, all the Nephites with them, and the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi all gathered their belongings and animals and headed toward Zarahemla. Once they passed through the wilderness dividing the 2 great countries, Ammon told the people to wait here. He and his brothers would go into Zarahemla and talk to the Nephites on their behalf.

Ammon, Aaron, Omner and Himni were on their way to Zarahemla when they came across their old friend Alma the Younger, whom they hadn't seen in 14 years. Ammon was so overwhelmed with joy that he fell down. All his energy had been used up in his excitement and his legs just wouldn't hold him up anymore. All the men were filled with joy when meeting again after so many years. Alma insisted on the men coming to his house. Shortly afterward, they went to the chief judge Nephihah and told him what had happened in the land of Nephi among the Lamanites. Nephihah sent out a letter to all the Nephites throughout Zarahemla, asking them what they thought about allowing the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi to live here. The people all decided to give their new friends the land of Jershon*, which was a beautiful place by the sea just south of Land Bountiful. It would be their own land of inheritance. The Nephites would also establish an army and guard these peaceful people if they would give a portion of what they had in order to provide for the army.

When Ammon heard this, he and Alma hurried back to the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi who were still in the wilderness. They told the people what the Nephites had said and done for them.

Alma told the people about his experience with an angel of the Lord and how he and his friends became converted. Alma told how he had been struck down and his friends (the sons of King Mosiah) had carried him back to Alma's father and told what had happened to all of them. Everyone was touched-what a great day of rejoicing that was!

It took no time to pack up the tents and belongings of the Anti-Nephi-Lehi's and soon they were on the way to their new land of inheritance. Even though they had been born Lamanites, they were now officially known as Nephites because of their strong faith in God and Christ. Sometimes they were also called the people of Ammon.

Word quickly spread throughout the land of Zarahemla that the newest addition to their tribe were indeed a peculiar people because of their refusal to use weapons to kill any living person, whether a dreaded Lamanite or not. They were simply a peace loving people with no fear of death, because they knew that if they were killed, they would soon be with the Lord, and it didn't matter to them whether they lived on earth or lived in heaven. They just wanted to praise the Lord no matter where they were.

Even though the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi were peaceable, the other Nephites living in the land of Zarahemla were afraid for their new found friends and neighbors, so they followed through with establishing an army to surround Jershon to protect the new Nephites.

** "Jershon" is a Hebrew word which means the land of the expelled or of the strangers. Before it was given to the Anti-Nephi-Lehi's, it was a part of the Land of Zarahemla.*

Lesson 23 Study Questions

1. Which Nephite missionary helped convert the Lamanites in the wilderness near Zarahemla? (Alma 14:64)

2. What caused a civil war in the wilderness? (Alma 14:63-67)

3. Who prophesied about what would happen during this civil war? (Alma 14:68-72)

4. What happened to the non-converted Lamanites once the civil war was over? (Alma 14:73-74)

5. What are sheaves and garners as mentioned in Alma 14:85?

6. Who were the 5 friends who met again after 14 years of being apart? (Alma 15:16,19)

Significant Quotations

"…Therefore they began to disbelieve the traditions of their fathers…" ~ Alma 14:65

Lesson 24

People in this chapter:	
Alma=Nephite spiritual leader	Giddoni=Nephite high priest
Korihor=a Nephite antichrist	Adam=first man God created
Ammon=son of Mosiah; missionary	Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior

~ *read: Alma 15:36 – 16:70*

"…Nephites in Zarahemla built an army to surround Jershon…

Knowing the ways of the Lamanites, they also set an army around the borders of the land of Zarahemla so that all Nephites would be protected because it seems the Lamanites had followed the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi into the wilderness.

What happened next was an awful battle like has never been seen before on this continent. Many of the Nephites were killed in this struggle, but also tens of thousands of Lamanites were slain. Those Lamanites who weren't killed simply ran, scattering every which way.

Once the fight was over, the cries of the Nephites who were still alive rang out loudly for their families and friends who had been slaughtered by the Lamanites. The mourning period ended with a time of fasting and prayer because even though they were sad, they knew the promises of God and that their family and friends were with God at that very moment.

In fact, as Alma thought about it, he became overjoyed because of the successful missionary efforts in the Lamanite territory known as the land of Nephi.

Unfortunately, there were only a few months of peace among the Nephites after their terrible battle with the Lamanites. Peace never lasted very long for them.

In the 17th year of the reign of the judges, a man came to Zarahemla and started stirring up trouble. His name was Korihor and he was an antichrist. There weren't any laws in place regarding a man's religious beliefs. He could believe and serve in God or not (it was his choice), but he could not rob, commit adultery, murder and so on without being punished. For every crime, there was a law and punishment that fit that crime – except the sin of not serving God. God gave everyone his own agency or choice to believe in Him or not – God does not force Himself on anyone.

Korihor told everyone he came in contact with that there is no Christ and they were fools to believe there was. He stood on the street corners and announced, "No one can possibly know the future. Prophecies are just foolish traditions passed down from our ancestors. You can't really know about things you cannot see, therefore you can't really know there will be a Christ who will come in the future. If you believe someone could take away your sins, you're crazy. The reason is: we are all alone in this life. Anything you have is strictly because of your own doing. In fact, whatever you do cannot be considered a crime. There is no such thing as sin. Whatever you do to get by is ok. Remember: only the strong survive. Try to get all you can in this life because one day you're going to die and that's it. Live it up while you're still able."

Korihor was a very good speaker and led many people astray with his speeches. Korihor decided to start traveling around and sharing his beliefs with more people. He went over to the land of Jershon to talk to the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi whom Ammon and King Lamoni had helped convert. Fortunately, they were smarter than the Nephites because they grabbed him and tied him

90-74 BC

up and took him to Ammon who was now a high priest. Ammon had him escorted out of the land – none of the people in the land of Jershon wanted anything to do with Korihor, so he was banished.

This did not stop Korihor. It didn't even slow him down. He just went over to the land of Gideon and started again. Once again the people captured him and tied him up and carried him to the high priest Giddonah who happened to be talking to the chief judge. Giddonah questioned Korihor: "Why are you trying to pervert and corrupt the ways of the Lord? Why are you teaching the people that there will be no Christ and interrupting their rejoicing? Why do you speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets?"

Korihor answered, "I don't teach the foolish traditions of our fathers, or teach the people to restrict themselves with foolish laws handed down by ancient priests, who hold great power and authority over them to keep them in ignorance. They aren't even allowed to lift up their heads, but stay bowed down according to your words. You say these people are free – I say they are enslaved. You say the ancient prophecies are true – I say you can't possibly know for a fact that they are true. You say these people are fallen because of the sins of Adam – I say no one is guilty because of what his ancestors did, even if they choose to do the same things their ancestors did. You say that Christ will come – I say you don't even know if there is a Christ. You say He will be killed for the sins of the world and that's how you lead the people by the foolish traditions of your ancestors. You keep them burdened so they can't even enjoy their rights and privileges for what? So you can reap all the benefits and grow rich and fat from their hard work. They are afraid to use what they have because they might offend the priests who rule by their own desires, dreams, whims and pretended mysteries. If the people don't do as you say, they will offend some unknown God, a being who has never been seen and never will be."

When Korihor had finished spitting out his accusations, Giddonah and the chief judge saw how hardened Korihor's heart really was against God. They shook their heads, because they knew nothing they could say would make any difference to him, so they said nothing to him. They had him tied up again and sent him to the army officers to escort him back to the land of Zarahemla to go before Alma and the chief judge who was governor over all the land of the Nephites and the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

As soon as Korihor was brought before Alma and the chief judge, he started again blaspheming against God. He accused the priests and teachers of leading the people away by their silly traditions just so they could reap the benefits of the peoples' hard work without having to do anything themselves.

Alma could listen no more and stood up. "You know we don't get rich off the people. I have worked my piece of land since the beginning of the reign of the judges and still do my own work for my family's support. I did rely on hospitality when I was a traveling missionary, but I provided for my family. None of the other priests nor I have ever received a penny for all the work we did for the church. Only the judges received some support and they were paid by the hour, as the law allows. If we don't get anything out of working for the church, why would we do it? The only benefit is knowing we speak the truth and the joy we get when the people come to know the Lord. You know these things, so why would you say we only preach so we can profit by it? Do you actually believe that we could trick the people into believing something that causes them to be so very happy?" Korihor told him, "Yes." So Alma looked him straight in the eye and asked him point blank, "Do you believe there is a God?" and Korihor answered, "No, I don't."

Alma wanted to be certain there was no misunderstanding, so he was very specific when he asked, "Do you deny that there is a God, and also deny the Christ? Korihor, as sure as I'm standing

here today, I'm telling you I know there is a God, and I also know that Christ will come. What evidence do you have that there is no God, or that Christ won't come? I say you have no proof except your own words. I, on the other hand, have everything around me as a testimony that these things are true. You also have everything around you as a testimony to you that they are true. How can you deny everything you see and feel and hear? I know that deep down you really believe, but you have been overpowered by a lying spirit and have shrugged off the Spirit of God, so It has no place in you; but the devil has power over you, and he is using you to destroy the children of God."

Smugly, Korihor came back with a challenge: "If you will show me a sign, that I may be convinced that there is a God and show me His power, then will I be convinced of the truth of what you're saying.

Alma shook his head and responded, "Absolutely not! You've had plenty of signs! Are you purposely tempting God? You say, 'show me a sign' when you have the testimony of all these people and the holy prophets. It's right there in the scriptures. Just open your eyes and look around you. Everything in this world proves there is a God. Even things above the world – the sun, moon, and stars witness of the Supreme Creator, yet you go around trying to lead the people away, insisting there is no God. Do you still deny there is a God despite all these witnesses?" Korihor nodded, "Yes, I deny it and will continue to deny it unless you can show me a sign which proves otherwise."

Alma knew without a doubt that Korihor's heart had become so hardened that he couldn't see the truth when it was pointed out right in front of him. In fact, he told Korihor just how sad it made him that Korihor had hardened his heart so much by resisting the spirit of truth that now Korihor's own soul would be destroyed because of it.

"The sad fact is, Korihor, that it is still better that your soul is lost forever, than losing the thousands of souls you could have helped destroy by your lying and appealing ways. If you dare to deny again, God will take away your ability to ever speak again. You will never mislead these or any other people anymore."

Korihor knew he was walking a thin line now. He very carefully answered Alma, "I don't deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God. I also tell you right here and now to your face, Alma, that you yourself can't be absolutely certain there is a God, can you? Unless you show me a sign, I will not believe."

Alma told him, "You want a sign? I'll give you a sign. God will take away your ability to speak so that you will never again be able to say anything against Him or His ways. Just as soon as Alma said those words, Korihor was struck dumb, meaning he couldn't utter a single sound – not even a grunt or a groan. When the chief judge saw this, he wrote a note to Korihor which said: 'Now are you convinced of the power of God? Who did you want Alma to use to show his sign? Did you want him to afflict others so you could see a sign? He showed you a sign – do you still want to argue about believing in God?'

Korihor wrote back: 'I know I can't talk now because I've been struck dumb and I also know that nothing except the power of God could have done this to me. Yes, I knew there was a God, but the devil tricked me. He appeared to me in the form of an angel and said, "Get these people back for me because they have all gone off after an unknown God. Then he convinced me there is no God. He even taught me what to say. That's what I taught the people because his words were pleasing to my mind. I was so successful in my teaching that I actually believed what I was saying. The words blinded me to the truth and brought this curse on me.'

Korihor wrote a note to Alma, asking Alma to pray to God so He would remove the curse from Korihor.

Lesson 24 Study Questions

1. What does it mean in Alma 15:55 to "harrow up"?

2. What scripture is talked about in Alma 16:9?

3. According to Nephite law, what was the punishment for non-believers in God? (Alma 16:10)

4. What law did Korihor break? (Alma 16:13 & 60)

5. Compare Alma 16:13 & 19 to Alma 16:20-21. Is it ok to overlook what someone does as long as it's not against the law?

6. What hope did the followers of Korihor have? (Alma 16:19)

7. Do Christians believe an innocent child is guilty because of the sins of his ancestors as mentioned in Alma 16:31?

8. ☺ How do we know the devil has electronic equipment? (Alma 16:51)

9. How does the Book of Mormon define "dumb"? (Alma 16:66)

Trivia Question: *What is the longest Lesson in the Book of Mormon?*

Significant Quotations

"But, behold the devil hath deceived me…" ~ Alma 16:67a

"…he [the devil] appeared unto me in the form of an angel…" ~Alma 16:67b

(The deepest desires of Alma's heart; excerpts from Alma 15:52-69)

"O that I were an angel, and could have the wish of mine heart, that I might go forth and speak with the trump of God, with a voice to shake the earth, and cry repentance unto every people…

But behold, I am a man, and do sin in my wish; for I ought to be content with the things which the Lord has allotted unto me…

Yea, and this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God, to bring some soul to repentance; and this is my joy…

Now when I think of the success of these my brethren, my soul is carried away, even to the separation of it from the body, as it were, so great is my joy…"

Lesson 25

People in this chapter:	
Korihor=a Nephite antichrist	Corianton=son of Alma the Younger
Alma=Nephite spiritual leader; chief judge	Moses=Israelite; God gave 10 commandments
Zoram=a Nephite leader of idol worship	Christ=Jesus, Messiah and Son of God
Himni=son of Mosiah; missionary	Zenos=prophet of old Israel
Ammon=son of Mosiah; missionary	Zenock=prophet of old Israel
Aaron=son of Mosiah; missionary	Amulek=friend of Alma; missionary
Omner=son of Mosiah; missionary	Helaman=son of Alma the Younger
Shiblon=son of Alma the Younger; spiritual leader	

~ *read: Alma 16:71 – 17:5*

"…Korihor write a note asking Alma to pray God would remove his curse…

Alma knew that if the curse was lifted, Korihor would just start in again trying to lead the people away, so he told Korihor 'no' and explained why it would not ever be lifted. News spread fast of what had happened to Korihor and the chief judge sent out a public statement to all the people that those who had believed the words of Korihor must immediately repent or the same judgment would come upon them. Every person who had been led astray saw the wickedness in Korihor's beliefs and all were converted again to the Lord. For the rest of his life, Korihor went from house to house begging for food. Eventually, he wound up with a group of people who had separated themselves from the Nephites, and called themselves Zoramites. Shortly after he arrived in the land of Antionum, east of Zarahemla, that had been settled by a man named Zoram and his followers, Korihor went out begging for food as he always did. Not only was he ignored, but the people paid so little attention to him that they knocked him down and many of them walked over him, until he was trampled to death. So much for being a charming speaker against the church. He was doing the devil's work, but obviously the devil doesn't take care of his own helpers!

Soon afterwards, Alma heard about the Zoramites bowing down to idols and worshipping in strange ways. After he and his friends had been so successful as missionaries in Lamanite country, now he finds out a group of his fellow Nephites are turning away from God, worshipping idols and making up their own religion. He was also afraid the Zoramites might stir up the Lamanites over this and cause a war. Alma was disturbed about the whole situation with the Zoramites.

After praying about it, Alma asked his friend Himni to look after the church in Zarahemla while Alma took three of his friends Ammon, Aaron and Omner and two of his younger sons Shiblon and Corianton with him to go preach to the Zoramites. On the way, they went to Melek and also asked Amulek and Zeezrom to go with them. Both men were eager to go on this new missionary venture once they heard how the Zoramites were living. The Zoramites didn't keep the Law of Moses - they didn't even pray daily as all God-fearing Jewish men did. In fact, they had distorted the laws, customs, and traditions so badly, it was, unbelievable. The Zoramites had built synagogues, but they only gathered there one day a week and their style of worship was in no way reverent to God.

In the middle of the synagogue, the Zoramites had built a tall prayer stand, taller than the tallest man, but it would only hold one person at a time. They took turns climbing up and standing on this platform, high above the other people, stretching their hands up and praying the same

74 BC

prayer every week. Then they went home and never thought about God again until they went to the synagogue the following week. This "canned" prayer said they believed: God was and always would be just a spirit; the traditional beliefs of the Nephites were false; the Zoramites were God's only chosen people, for which they thanked God; and there was no Christ. Alma and his helpers were stunned. They had never heard of anything like Rameumptom, which is what the Zoramites called their prayer stand. In fact, the word Rameumptom means "Holy Stand". These missionaries had their work cut out for them! It was obvious to Alma that because of the way they were dressed, these people cared only about themselves and their wealth.

The first thing Alma did was to pray for strength because these people were actually making him sick. He then prayed for comfort because he was sad down to his soul. He also prayed for patience and success in leading these people back to the Lord. Alma then laid his hands on each of the missionaries and they all became filled with the Spirit of the Lord. They immediately separated and began to preach to the people. The Lord took care of the missionaries because they never got hungry or thirsty. What a God! The first bit of success they had came from the poor people who had been thrown out of the synagogues, simply because they dressed like, well, poor people. The Zoramites felt that poor was the same as being filthy and poor in spirit, so they weren't allowed to worship God.

One day, as Alma was preaching from Hill Onidah, a huge crowd of the poor people came to listen to him. One of the men in front said, "we aren't even allowed to worship in the synagogues that we helped to build with our own hands, simply because we are poor. What are we going to do now that we don't have a place to worship God?" Alma answered him saying, "Do you think the only place you can worship God is in your churches? Do you believe you should worship God once a week and that's all? It turns out that being turned away from your church is a really good thing, because you are humble and can repent and be saved through your faith, no matter how much faith you have to begin with. Test it and see if it's true or not. And what about your saying that you can't worship God because you can't get into the church building? Do you remember the prophet Zenos saying that God had heard his prayer when he was in the wilderness and in his field and in his house and even in his closet? God heard him when he was in church and when he had been thrown out of church. God hears us everywhere – no matter where we are. And Zenos also thanked God for being merciful to him because of Christ. Do you believe the scriptures? Do you believe what Zenos and Zenock and other prophets-even Moses-said from the sacred scriptures? If you do, how can you not believe in Christ? He will come to redeem His people and He will suffer and die to pay for their sins, but He will rise again from the dead and live with God eternally. But don't just take my word for it – plant these words in your heart and see if they grow through your faith. If they do, then you know they are true. May God grant your burdens be lightened through the joy of His Son."

After Alma spoke to the crowd, he sat down, then Amulek got up and began to speak. "Friends, I find it hard to believe that you really don't know about the coming of Christ, and if He is the Son of God. I know you were taught these things before you broke away from the Nephites. My brother Alma has proven to you over and over that the only way to salvation is through Christ. Now I will give you my testimony that the things he said are true. I know beyond a shadow of a doubt that Christ will come to earth and take the sins of the people upon Himself and He will pay for those sins with His life. Without His great sacrifice, all mankind would die without God. This is the whole meaning of the law; the great and last sacrifice will be the Son of God; and He will bring salvation to all those who shall believe on his name. Those who don't have faith nor repent will come under the whole law of justice instead of God's mercy. Pray in faith for repentance. Pray when you're in your

fields or with your flocks or in your houses or in your closets morning, noon and night. Pray for your souls and for your enemies and the welfare of those around you. Don't just stop with prayer, though. Follow through by sharing what you have with others and helping to take care of those who can't help themselves. If you don't help others, then your prayers mean nothing and you're a hypocrite. You've heard plenty of testimonies today. Now is the time for you to repent. If you wait too long, the devil will creep in and take over and the Spirit of the Lord will leave you. I know this is true because the Lord says He will not live in unholy temples – but only in the hearts of righteous men. One last word of warning, friends: have patience and do not hate those who wouldn't let you into their synagogue simply because you were poor. Hating is a sin and you don't want to sin anymore."

When Alma and the other missionaries had finished talking to the people, they left and went to the land of Jershon. As soon as they left, the Zoramite leaders called all the people together to find out who had believed the words spoken by the Nephites. The leaders didn't say how they themselves felt, but they encouraged everyone else to speak freely about their beliefs. This way they could find out who had actually believed the Nephites. It was obvious that the missionaries' words had appealed to the poorer people and the Zoramites were hostile to this group to begin with, so the believers who had been thrown out of the synagogues were now thrown out of their own city. The large crowd of believers followed the missionaries to the land of Jershon. This made the Zoramite leaders even more angry, if that was possible. The Zoramites threatened all the people now living in the land of Jershon, but the former Lamanites called Anti-Nephi-Lehi's just ignored the threats and took care of the ex-Zoramite believers. They fed them, clothed them and gave each family some land so they could start a new life in their new land.

Now the Zoramites were furious. They went to the Lamanites and stirred them up that both the Zoramites and Lamanites starting preparing for war against all the believers of God living in the land of Jershon. Since the Anti-Nephi-Lehi's would not fight, they left Jershon and went to the land of Melek, so there would be room for the Nephite army, which now included the ex-Zoramites.

Alma and the other missionaries returned to the land of Zarahemla, delighted in the souls who were brought to God, but saddened by the sins of the Zoramites who were former Nephites, their own brethren. Saddened that he was surrounded by so much sin and war, Alma knew that he had to talk to his sons, so he called for them to come visit him one at a time…

Helaman, Alma's oldest son, came to his father. "Son, I've been wanting to talk to you for a while without being interrupted. I feel it's time that I shared my testimony of God's love and mercy with you. I wasn't always a spiritual leader. In fact, I was worse than an embarrassment to my family. I caused the spiritual death of many church members. It was not a time in my life I am proud of, but you should hear the whole story from me instead of hearing about it somewhere else. I will tell you this so that you won't commit the same sin I did.

My best friends, and I were teenagers at the time. Ammon, Aaron, Omner, and Himni, and I knew there was no such thing as God and the people were dumb to say there was. They worshipped a God who didn't exist in their ridiculous churches with their 'holy of holies' and sacred treasures, acting all nice and polite and friendly to everyone in the streets. They would actually show up at someone's house to help whenever there was a need, usually before the person needing assistance could even ask.

We decided we would show them. We started off vandalizing their churches and before long, we worked our way up to actually destroying buildings. Of course we were smart enough to know we didn't want to get in trouble, so we would sneak out at night to do our little handy work. It was usually a contest to see who could do the most damage. Pretty soon, that wasn't even enough.

"DID YOU KNOW?" Seeds from the Old Country, mentioned in the Bible

Almonds, anise, apples, beans, calamus (cane sugar), figs, carob trees (St. John's tree, pods were often fed to the pigs), cassia (cinnamon), coriander, cucumbers, dill, flax, garlic, grapes, leeks, lentils, mandrakes, melons, millet, mulberries, mustard, nuts, olives, onions, pomegranates saffron.

Horses

Some people believe the Book of Mormon can't be true because in 1830 when Joseph Smith translated the Book of Mormon into English, the scholars of that day believed there weren't any horses in America until the Spanish conquistadors brought them from Spain, around the 1500's. After the Book of Mormon was published, however, the tar pits of Rancho LaBrea in southern California were discovered. In those tar pits are the fossil remains of horses proven to be in the Americas before the Book of Mormon times (2600 B.C. to A.D. 421). There are buildings in Chichén Itzá, Mexico that were built about 1,000 A.D. At the temple, there is a wall panel covered with carvings of birds and animals from that area, including carvings of horses. This means the carvings of horses found here in North America were done 500 years before Columbus even discovered America in the late 1400's A.D.

Zenock, Neum, & Zenos

In the Book of Mormon, there are 3 Hebrew prophets from ancient Israel-Zenock, Neum, and Zenos. These men are not mentioned in the Old Testament of the Bible, but were quoted on the brass plates kept by Laban. Each of these prophets told about the coming of Christ, being rejected by His own people and His crucifixion. They also prophesied to the Israelites what would happen because they had rejected the Messiah. Because the Jews didn't want to hear that one day they would kill their own Messiah, this message was lost when the Bible was put together. Because God always has a plan, Laban, a Jew, chose to include their prophecies among his records.

(Below taken from the Encyclopedia of the Book of Mormon by Margaret Bingman, Herald House)

Zenos – Prophet (Old Testament)

Zenos prophesied of the fate of a proud and pompous Israel, brought to destruction and captivity because of their refusal to heed their messiah. Instead, Zenos told them they would slay their own God. This was to bring about their scattering; but in time they would, through the gentiles they despised, be brought to a knowledge of what they had done, repent, and be gathered to become the great and perfect nation they were called to be. He incorporated his message in the parable of the tame olive tree. The Jews took offense at being told of their condition of wickedness and slew Zenos. Most Jews destroyed the record of prophecy. But Laban, in his zeal to maintain a perfect record, kept the prophecy. Thus when Nephi, son of Lehi, took the record prepared by Laban, the Lehites obtained the prophecy of Zenos. Jacob quoted it in the plates of Nephi with its interpretation for posterity. References: I Nephi 5:242; Jacob 3:30-153; 4:2; Alma 16:177-188, 205; Helaman 3:53; 5:101; 3 Nephi 4:71

Zenock – Prophet (Old Testament)

Zenock prophesied in Jerusalem of the life, crucifixion, atonement, and redemption of Christ. He also spoke of the branch of Joseph broken off and carried across the sea. Because of his zeal at a time when the Jews did not want to hear of their own wickedness to come, in slaying their own messiah, he was stoned to death. Laban, in his eagerness to maintain a perfect record, kept the record of Zenock the prophet. Perhaps because Zenock's message was a repetition of others, such as Isaiah, and contained nothing unique, or because what he said cut the pompous Jewish leaders to the quick, his message was not retained in the prophecies of the Old Testament.
References: I Nephi 5:240; Alma 16:188-189, 205; Helaman 3:54; 3 Nephi 4:70-71.

Lesson 25 Study Questions

1. Compare Alma 16:76-77 to Mormon 2:6.

2. Why did Alma clap? (Alma 16:116-117)

3. Is there a difference between "faith" and "belief"? (Alma 16:151)

4. Discuss the Nephites taking care of the ex-Zoramites <u>wants</u> instead of just taking care of their <u>needs</u>. Remember these were people who had been poor all their life and now someone was asking them what they <u>wanted</u>. (Alma 16:250)

Significant Quotations

"O Lord, wilt thou grant unto us that we may have success in bringing them again unto thee, in Christ?" ~Alma 16:114

"And now surely, whosoever repenteth shall find mercy; and he that findeth mercy and endureth to the end, the same shall be saved." ~Alma 16:135

"But behold, if ye will awake and arouse your faculties, even to an experiment upon my words, and exercise a particle of faith; yea, even if ye can no more than desire to believe, let this desire work in you, even until ye believe in a manner that ye can give place for a portion of my words." ~Alma 16:151

"…Whosoever shall put their trust in God, shall be supported in their trials and their troubles…" ~Alma 17:3

Lesson 26

People in this chapter:	
Alma2=Nephite chief judge	Aaron=son of Mosiah; missionary
Helaman=1st son of Alma the Younger	Omner=son of Mosiah; missionary
Abraham=Jewish father from old country	Himni=son of Mosiah; missionary
Jacob=son of Isaac; later known as Israel	Limhi=son of King Noah; good Nephite king
Isaac=son of Abraham	Shiblon=2nd son of Alma2
Jesus=Christ our Messiah and Savior	Corianton=3rd son of Alma2
Alma1=Nephite convert; called Alma the Elder	Isabel=Lamanite prostitute
Ammon=son of Mosiah; missionary	

~ *read: Alma 17:6 – 19:16*

"…Alma continues his testimony with his son Helaman…

We had just about trashed every church building and most of the Christian homes in our town. I don't remember now just whose idea it was, but we built these sturdy little boxes that we carried around and stood on so everyone could see us. We talked trash about the church and all Godly beliefs. We made fun of those who were believers. And I'm ashamed to say, we talked many good people into leaving the church. The five of us did more damage with our mouths than we ever thought about doing with our hands. I can only imagine how sick we made our parents feel. We led many people astray with our speeches.

This went on until one day, an angel appeared to us. When he spoke, it was like thunder and the ground shook under us like an earthquake. We were terrified. The angel put such fear in us, we literally fell down. It was like we were paralyzed. We couldn't move. All we could do was listen. Then the angel told us to get up, so we got up on our feet. The messenger of God told us in very simple terms that we were to stop immediately destroying God's holy church or else <u>we</u> would be destroyed. I was so terrorized with this horrible fear that I couldn't stand on my own two feet so I just collapsed. The angel kept on telling us things, but I couldn't hear a sound. All I could think about was my sins. I was tortured and tormented with those thoughts like I was in hell. What had we been thinking? I had rebelled against God and had blasphemed, or denied that the living God of Abraham, Jacob and Isaac even existed. I didn't want to stand in the presence of God and be judged of all the terrible things I had done. For three days and nights I couldn't say anything or move. I just kept thinking and re-living all my sins. You cannot understand the suffering I went through, Son. Then I remembered what your grandfather had prophesied and preached about. The Son of God who will be called Jesus Christ will soon come to the earth and pay for all the sins that all the people of this world have committed. I cried to Jesus to have mercy on me. Just as soon as I thought of that, all the things that had been torturing my mind left. In their place a fantastic joy that filled me up. I've never felt anything like that moment in my life. It was almost like my soul was shining with a brilliant light. I can't even describe this happiness and peace I felt. I saw the same vision our ancestor Lehi had seen. God himself was sitting on His throne, surrounded by a limitless number of angels. All of them were singing and praising God all at the same time and in mixing harmonies. It was beautiful. I wanted to stay there forever.

My friends had carried me to your grandfather's house. Grandfather Alma called for the priests

74-73 BC

to come pray over me. Soon my body received strength again and I stood up. As soon as I could talk again, I told all the people that I had been re-born of God. From that time on, I have shared, preached, and talked non-stop, trying to bring souls to God through repentance. I want everyone to have at least a taste of the sweet joy that I have so they can be re-born too and be filled with God's Spirit. I've been tied up, thrown in prison, threatened with death. But through it all, God has been right there beside me, supporting me when I really needed Him. He will continue to be with me always. I want you to know, son, God will continue to be with you, too, if you will keep His commandments. If you 'walk in His path', as we say, He will bless you in ways you can't even imagine. But if you don't follow His commandments, God will leave you and will break all ties with you. This is His promise and trust me, that is something you don't want to think about.

Helaman, it is time for you to take the sacred records and holy treasures that were put in my care long ago. I want you to keep a record of our people as I have done on these plates of Nephi. The plates of brass that have been engraved with the Holy Scriptures also contain a genealogy of our ancestors clear back to the beginning of time. It has been prophesied that these plates will be handed down from generation to generation until the Lord decides the time that they will go forth among every nation on the earth, so all people will know about the mysteries written on them. It may seem like a simple and foolish thing to say, but it's still true. The job of bringing souls to the Lord may seem overwhelming to you, but just take everything one step at a time. The Lord uses small things to bring about great events. Keeping these plates, the Liahona, the interpreters, and the sword of Laban may seem like a small thing to you, but God has a plan for them in the future where great multitudes of people will find salvation for their souls by these very items I am trusting you to keep safe. Ammon, Aaron, Omner and Himni used these sacred plates to bring thousands of Lamanites to the Lord. Who knows how many hard hearted Nephites can be won over by these simple records? Just remember this: the commandments of God are very strict. God said, 'If ye will keep my commandments, ye shall prosper in the land; but if ye keep not my commandments, ye shall be cut off from my presence.' If you keep God's commandments, know this – no power on earth or hell can take these treasures away from you because God is powerful and will keep all His promises.

Now, about these 24 plates made from gold that King Limhi's people found. Be sure to protect them because they will tell future generations about the secret works of darkness which destroyed an entire nation of people who lived here long ago. Take care of the golden plates, and also the directors that are with them. The plates tell about a group of people who were very evil and refused to repent, so they were completely destroyed. Be careful what you write about these people, though. Do write about their murdering, robbing, plundering and acts of wickedness. But don't give any details about their wicked secret oaths, covenants, or agreements, or others who read your records later on could fall under the power of satan. There is a curse on this land that when any group of people become 100% evil, they will be totally wiped off the face of the earth.

Teach the people, Helaman, that if they have to hate anything, may they develop an everlasting hatred of sin and iniquity. Preach repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ. Instruct them on how to become humble and why. Train them to withstand every temptation of the devil, using their faith in the Lord. Make sure they never become tired of doing good works. Perhaps most important of all, my son, learn wisdom in your youth; be faithful in keeping the commandments of God, and remember to call on God for support and He will guide you. Whatever you do, may it be for the Lord. Don't forget about the Liahona compass and how it worked. It guided our ancestors as long as they used it in faith. When they quit exercising their faith, the Liahona would not point the way for them, so they would get lost and go hungry and thirsty. When they remembered to use

their faith in God, the Liahona would guide them in the direction they were supposed to travel – what a miracle! That's another example of what I've been saying – the Lord uses small things to bring about great events. It's just as easy to stay on the straight and narrow path if you keep your eyes on Christ as it was for our fore fathers to keep going in the right direction if they kept their faith in God. Keep on the right pathway, son, take care of these sacred items, and declare the word of God to your people. That is all I can tell you, Helaman. May God be with you."

Helaman left his father and sought a quiet place to think about everything he had just heard. Could he do what his father was asking him to do?

Shortly after Helaman left his father, Alma called his next son Shiblon to hear his counsel.

"Shiblon, my son, I want to talk to you about what has been on my heart. Some of this I shared with Helaman already, but I also want to discuss part of it with you. Remember this: if you keep God's commandments, you will prosper in the land. I know that the God of Abraham will bless you greatly as long as you follow His laws. But the other side of that is…if you do <u>not</u> keep His commandments, you will be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

From your youth, you have been going down the right path in your faith walk with God. I sincerely hope you continue exercising your faith so it will grow daily. You have already pleased me as I've watched you grow spiritually, such as when we were on the missionary trip to the people of Zoram. You went through some terrible times. I know you were tied up and stoned for preaching, but you were patient because you knew the Lord was with you. I pray you will always remember to trust God – even when things aren't going your way. He knows the whole picture, son, and is always aware of your needs. What I have learned about God is not because I am smart or have studied or even because I am worthy. When my spirit was re-born, God in his great mercy revealed many things to me. He sent an angel to stop me from destroying His people and His work. I actually saw a real angel with my own eyes! When he spoke to me, it was like thunder from heaven and the whole earth shook from the sound. Can you imagine being told by an angel that what you were doing was wrong and making God angry?" Then Alma told Shiblon the conversion story he had told Helaman. "Jesus Christ is the light of the world. I hope that you will continue teaching the word of God and Christ and always be hard-working and in control with everything you do. Do not brag because of what you've done or can do. Be bold for God, but do not be obnoxious about it. And whatever you do, don't pray as the Zoramites did. They simply prayed so they could be heard and be praised for their own blessings, which they thought made them better than those without material things. May the Lord bless you and receive you when your journey here is finished. Go, now, Shiblon, and teach God's word to the people. Be sincere and go with God."

Once Shiblon left, he was deep in thought about his father's words. Soon Corianton came to his father. "Come, my son" Alma said. "I haven't had an opportunity to speak with you in quite a while "Corianton, I was sincerely hoping you would watch and learn from your older brother on our recent trip. My goodness, son…while the rest of us were fasting, praying, preaching, teaching, and converting the Zoramites to the Lord, you were sneaking over to the land of Siron and running around with some Lamanite girl named Isabel who was a prostitute, no less!" "Father, would you just leave me alone and stop trying to run my life?" Corianton angrily shot back. "My son, do you not realize the sins you've been committing? You brag about being so smart…but you sure don't act like it. These sins are a disgrace before God. I love you, Corianton, but I'm telling you these things that you might see what you've been doing and repent and quit sinning. You can't hide anything from God – He's with you all the time in everything you do and everywhere you go. You're still young. Ask your brothers – they'll tell you exactly how it is. They remember what it's like to be young and they can help you if you let them.

Lesson 26 Study Questions

1. Is something wrong with the Book of Mormon? Why does Mosiah 11:177-185 state that Alma was unconscious for 2 days and 2 nights after the angel spoke to him and his friends; but Alma 17:8 clearly says Alma fell down for 3 days and 3 nights after the angel spoke to him and his friends?

2. Who did Alma and the 4 sons of Mosiah murder when they were teenagers? (Alma 17:11) How does this compare with I John 3:15?

3. Discuss Alma 17:33-34. How does this compare with I Nephi 1:170?

   Brass, as it is known today, is an alloy (or mixture) of copper and zinc. Brass during Bible and Book of Mormon times was different, since zinc had not yet been discovered. Back then, brass meant copper or an alloy of copper and tin. Because copper tends to corrode when exposed to oxygen, some believe the Plates of Laban (called Plates of Brass in the Book of Mormon), were made of mostly what we call copper, so they would be in need of constant care and polishing.

4. Who was Gazelem? (Alma 17:55)

5. What is the difference between a director (Alma 17:71) and directors (Alma 17:56)

6. What does Alma 18:15 mean when it says "bridle your passions that you may be filled with love"?

7. What is the unpardonable sin? (Alma 19:8)

8. Are we like Catholics? What did Alma mean in Alma 19:13 & 14 when he told his son to cross himself?

"DID YOU KNOW?"

The Sadducees of Christ's time did not believe in resurrection; nor did they believe in angels or a spirit that survives after the body is dead. The Pharisees, however, did believe in these things, including resurrection of the dead. The Jews became divided over this issue and there was a great disagreement. Some Christians today don't believe Christ literally rose from the dead; nor do they believe "death and hell" will literally give up their dead someday, as in Revelation 20:13-15.

Significant Quotations

"Yea, let all thy doings be unto the Lord, and whithersoever thou goest, let it be in the Lord…" ~Alma 17:69

"Yea, when thou liest down at night, lie down unto the Lord, that he may watch over you in your sleep…" ~Alma 17:70

Lesson 27

People in this chapter:	
Alma=chief judge of Nephites	Zerahemnah=Lamanite general
Corianton=3rd son of Alma	Laman=1st son of Lehi from Jerusalem
Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior	Lemuel=2nd son of Lehi from Jerusalem
Adam=1st man God created	Ishmael=friend of Lehi from Jerusalem
Benjamin=son of Mosiah1; Nephite king	Noah=wicked Nephite king
Eve=1st women God created	Amulon=wick chief high priest of King Noah
Zoram=Nephite leader of idol worship	Moroni=chief captain of Nephite army

~ *read: Alma 19:17 – 20:21*

"…Alma continues to counsel his son Corianton…

"Do you realize the damage you did in the land of Zoram? The Zoramites saw how you acted and refused to listen to anything I had to say. The Holy Spirit has instructed me to warn my children to always do good. If you don't follow God's ways, you will lead many people down the path of destruction. Go back to the Zoramites and admit your sins before them. Undo the wrongs which you have done. Seek not for the riches of this world, but for the Kingdom of God.

You have heard me speak of Christ before. I want to make sure you understand that He literally is coming to earth to take away the sins of this world and give salvation to everyone who will accept Him. This was the ministry that you were called to do."

"Well, Father, I wasn't exactly clear on some issues. I heard one of our missionaries talk about resurrection of the dead. If they're dead, how can they come back to life?"

"I know it can be confusing. Those who died from Adam's time until Christ is resurrected will rise again, but only after Christ comes to earth and fulfills His mission here. But mark my words, there will come a time when all who have died will come forth. No one knows when this will happen, but the important thing is: it will happen."

"Father, do you know what happens between the time we die and when we are resurrected?"

"Yes, son, I do because I have studied the ancient scrolls and the Lord has enlightened me after much prayer and fasting. You see, our spirit, whether good or evil, is taken back to God. Those who are righteous go to a place of happiness, called paradise. It is a place of rest and peace where they have no more worries or cares or sadness. The wicked, however, will be thrown into a place of total darkness. There will be crying, moaning and screaming, because their sins allowed satan to take control over them. This will be a horrible, fearful, unspeakable place with God's anger bearing down on them the whole time. Here they stay until the time of the resurrection where their souls will be reunited with their bodies."

"Reunited? What about those who lost their limbs in battle?"

"Don't worry! The bones and joints will be restored as they should be and not even a hair on your head will be lost. This is the first resurrection. It's called that probably because of the glory waiting, not because of the time it takes place. All people from Adam down to when Christ Himself is resurrected will be affected by this first resurrection. All this has been foretold by the prophets.

All men will be judged according to their works also. If their works in this life were good and

the desires of their hearts were good, they will be restored to what is good and be rewarded with righteousness. If their works are evil, then they will be restored to evil and be rewarded with evil.

The way has been prepared; whoever wants to walk down the path of righteousness will be saved. Son, don't risk even one more sin. Wickedness is not and never has been happiness. Remember the words of King Benjamin, 'The natural man is an enemy to God, and has been, from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever; but yield to the Holy Spirit, and shake off the "natural" man, and become a saint, through the atonement of Christ, the Lord.' Corianton, remember to be merciful to your brethren. Deal fairly with them and do good continually. If you do, you will receive mercy and a righteous judgment will be restored to you."

"I don't think it's fair to punish us just because we're sinners, do you, Father?"

"Let me explain it this way. God drove Adam and Eve out of the garden of Eden, creating the first opportunity to repent and serve God. If Adam had eaten of the tree of life, he would have lived forever, and there would have been no time period for repentance, and there could have been no plan of salvation put in place. But instead of the tree of life, Adam ate from the tree of knowledge of good and evil. Now he understands the difference between good and evil as God does. Unfortunately, this was the only tree that Adam and Eve had been distinctly told not to eat. Because they did, sin entered the world and man became fallen and so were cut off from the presence of the Lord. Suddenly they had their own will, or agency to choose to do what they wanted to. Our bodies are temporary, but our souls cannot die. When our bodies die, God did not want us to be cut off from him eternally. That is why the plan of redemption was put into place from the beginning of time. Our time on earth is a time to prepare and to accept God's plan of redemption <u>if we choose to</u>. Because we disobey, there is no other way to get back into God's presence. Some believe that because God is love and God is a loving God, there will be no final punishment for those who don't choose His way. I tell you this, son, and remember these words: Laws are necessary to protect us. If laws are broken, punishment is necessary. God allows us the opportunity to repent and claim His mercy. Without the plan of redemption, mercy would override justice. Without justice, God would cease to be God who is perfect, merciful, and just to all. God is no respecter of persons – that means he doesn't favor some over others. We are all His children and He loves us all the same. Sometimes He doesn't love our actions and what we do, but He still loves each one of us.

Son, you are called by God to preach His word unto these people. Go and declare His word with truth and seriousness that you can help bring souls to repentance that none may be lost but all may find their way back to God. Will you do that much for God? Will you go out and this time preach to the people as if their very souls depend upon it? Because they do, you know, their souls do depend on it.

After Corianton left father, Alma thought back on all that had happened during the past year or so.

- A group of followers left the Nephites with their leader Zoram to practice idol worship and form their own religion.
- Alma feared this group of Zoramites would join up with the Lamanites, so he formed a missionary team to preach the word of God to the Zoramites.
- Those who believed Alma's teaching were thrown out because the hardened Zoramites felt the converted were unworthy to live among them because they were poor. Having riches was very important to the Zoramites and established their place in the community. They also feared losing their wealth and power if the converts took over as the community and spiritual leaders.

- The converted Zoramites found safety and comfort with the converted Lamanites called Anti-Nephi-Lehis and they all lived in the land of Jershon.
- The hardened Zoramites threatened the Anti-Nephi-Lehis, but their threats were ignored as help was given to the new converts.
- The hardened Zoramites joined up with the Lamanites so they could war against the Anti-Nephi-Lehis.
- The converted Lamanites and converted Zoramites were evacuated from the land of Jershon to the land of Melek and the Nephite armies occupied the land of Jershon.

The Nephite nation now included many converted Lamanites; one particular group was called the Anti-Nephi-Lehi's (or People of Ammon). This newly expanded nation also included the recently converted Zoramites who used to be part of the Nephites living in Zarahemla. They were now happy to be back in Zarahemla among their family and friends.

Once he saw how much his fatherly words had inspired his sons, Alma could not hold back either, so all 3 sons and their father Alma went about preaching repentance to the Nephites now living in Zarahemla. Alma had a sense of urgency when he preached. The Lord had told him war with the Lamanites could no longer be avoided and so they must prepare. Soldiers began gathering up weapons and were sent to the land of Jershon to train and prepare. Each soldier knew they must be ready to defend their country and fight for the freedom of their families and friends to worship their God and to live where they chose without being slaves to the Lamanites. Nephite scouts were sent out to the borders of Antionum.

Sure enough, thousands of Lamanite warriors had gathered there to strengthen their army by adding Amalekites and Zoramites to their ranks because these groups were so outspoken about their hatred for the Nephite nation, even though they themselves were Nephites by birth. Because of their intense hatred, the Lamanite general Zerahemnah chose captains from among the Amalekites and Zoramites to lead the Lamanite armies into battle. He knew they would keep the Lamanites stirred up with their vows of "Death to all Nephites!" He could also keep a close watch on the Amalekites and Zoramites in case they changed their minds once they saw their former families, friends and neighbors being slaughtered in battle. And if they fed their hatred by killing Nephites, so much the better. They would help him bring his new nation of slaves into submission for him. As he looked out on his army, Zerahemnah saw that they were quite a mixture of people. He knew there were descendants of Laman and Lemuel, as well as the sons of Ishmael and now most recently ex-Nephites who called themselves Amalekites and Zoramites. And how could he forget the descendants of the Nephite priests of King Noah, led by their chief high priest Amulon. Yes, they were quite an assortment of warriors, but he had no doubt they would be victorious.

Meanwhile, the Nephites appointed Moroni to be their chief captain over all the Nephite soldiers. It was quite a big responsibility for a 25 year old to be in charge of the entire Nephite army, but Moroni had been praying and fasting for weeks and knew without a doubt that the Lord would guide the Nephite army to victory. The Nephite scouts came back so excited and out of breath, they couldn't do anything but point in the direction they had just come. Moroni asked one of the younger soldiers standing nearby to get the spies some water and invited them into his quarters. Finally, they were able to tell him that the entire Lamanite army was on its way and would be here within just a few hours. Fortunately, the Nephite army was ready. By the time they had put on their breastplates, arm protectors, helmets, and thick clothing, then gathered their weapons, the Lamanites were in the open fields right outside their living quarters.

Lesson 27 Study Questions

1. Why did the Lamanite general select Amalekites and Zoramites as captains instead of using his own men? (Alma 20:7-8)

2. If the 10 commandments says "Thou Shalt Not Kill", why did the Nephites feel it was ok to kill Lamanites? (Alma 20:9-13)

3. What group of people was the first target of the Lamanite army? (Alma 20:11-13; Alma 15:23; Alma 20:20a) and why? (Alma 20:12)

4. What was unusual about the Nephite army? (Alma 20:19) (Alma 20:21)

Significant Quotations

"…Seek not after riches, nor the vain things of this world; for behold, you cannot carry them with you." ~Alma 19:20

"Now whether there is more than one time appointed for men to rise, it mattereth not: for all do not die at once: and this mattereth not; all is as one day, with God; and time only is measured unto men." ~Alma 19:38

"And ye shall have good rewarded unto you again; for that which ye do send out, shall return unto you again, and be restored; therefore the word restoration, more fully condemneth the sinner, and justifieth him not at all." ~Alma 19:80

Lesson 28

People in this chapter:	
Moroni=chief captain of Nephite army	Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior
Alma=chief judge of Nephites	Helaman=1st son of Alma the Younger
Lehi2=Nephite army unit leader	Moses=Israelites; God gave 10 commandments
Zerahemnah=Lamanite general	

~ *read: Alma 20:22 – 21:31*

"…The Nephites put on their armor and were ready for battle…

When the Nephites came out to fight, the Lamanites were astonished at just how well protected the Nephite army really was. All the Lamanites had were their loin cloths and swords or cimeters and bows & arrows or sling shots. They were naked compared to the Nephites! Even though they outnumbered the Nephites, the Lamanite army was terrified. They hadn't expected anything like this out of those wimpy Nephites. The call for retreat sounded and the Lamanites fled into the wilderness. Re-grouping, they began to plan their surprise attack by traveling through the forests until they reached the river Sidon where they could cross into the land of Manti.

Just as soon as the Lamanites left, Moroni sent his scouts to spy on the Lamanite army to find out what they were up to. While the scouts were gone, Moroni sent messengers to Alma to ask the Lord which way the Nephite army should go to defend themselves against the Lamanite army. Alma prayed about it and finally was able to tell Moroni's messengers that the Lamanite army was in the wilderness and was headed to Manti so they could attack people who weren't as well protected and prepared. The messengers flew back to Moroni with Alma's statement.

Moroni left a band of soldiers to defend Jershon just in case some of the Lamanites snuck back to take the land. The rest went with him to the land of Manti. He convinced all eligible men in Manti to join him in defending their land, their families and their freedom. Moroni set up spies all around so he would know when and where the Lamanite army was getting close. He sent one group of men to the east and told them to hide in the valley and wait. He sent Lehi to head up another group and take them south of the hill Riplah. A third group of soldiers were sent to wait in the western valley. The last of his men were told to wait where they were, north of the other groups.

The Lamanites, confident now that they would win over the helpless and unsuspecting people of Manti, came from the north and passed the hill Riplah, walking right by the hidden Nephite soldiers. After passing the hill, the Lamanites marched through the valley on their way to the Sidon river. Just as they came to the river, Lehi and his men who had been hiding on the south of the hill formed a half circle around the rear of the Lamanite army. When the Lamanite warriors realized they were being followed by Nephite soldiers, they turned around and began to fight.

The Lamanites who had little protection, were overwhelmed and many fell dead because of the heavy blows from the Nephite swords. Because they too were fiercely trained warriors, some of the Lamanites were able to kill a few or seriously wound some of the Nephite soldiers now and then. The Lamanites realized they were overpowered and began to run towards the Sidon river. Lehi and his men chased after them. Once the Lamanites crossed the river and began running up

74-73 BC

the bank on the other side though, Lehi and his group stayed behind without crossing the river. They watched while Moroni and his men met the Lamanites in the valley on the other side. The tired and bleeding Lamanites were no match for this fresh band of heavily protected soldiers and began falling by the sword again.

Once again, the Lamanites ran away, this time towards the land of Manti, and once again they were met by a new band of Moroni's army. The Lamanites decided to fight it out this time. They were inspired by their Zoramite and Amalekite leaders and by their commander in chief Zerahemnah and fought ferociously with a strength and courage like never before and many Nephites died there in battle. When the Nephite soldiers saw the bitter anger and outright hatred of the Lamanites, they were about to turn and run away. Moroni realized what they were about to do and began to inspire his men by reminding them why they were fighting. Their families, their freedom, and the right to worship their God was more important than anything and they must not give up. Moroni's speech encouraged and motivated them to turn back to face the Lamanites and cry to God for their liberty from those who would enslave them. The Nephites fought with such power that the Lamanites were the ones to turn and run away, even though there were twice as many of them as there were Nephites. The Lamanite army fled once more to the Sidon River. When Zerahemnah saw the men of Lehi were still on the other bank, he knew that he was surrounded. He and his men were terrified. They were trapped and they knew it.

Moroni called for his men to stop killing. They obeyed instantly and stepped back one step so they wouldn't tempt the Lamanites to take a swing at them. Moroni told Zerahemnah, "We are not violent, bloodthirsty people. You are at our mercy, but we don't want to kill you or make slaves out of you, or tell you how and who to worship, but that's exactly why you have come after us. But you see, the Lord is on our side. You can tell that by the way He handed you over to us. This was done to prove that you can't destroy our faith in God and Christ. Our God will continue to protect us as long as we are faithful to Him. The Lord will never allow us to be destroyed unless we fall away and deny our faith. I command you, Zerahemnah, in the name of the all powerful God, that if you surrender your weapons to us and promise not to fight with us anymore, we will spare your lives. You go your way and we'll go ours. If you don't quit fighting, I will command my men to fight you until every last one of you is dead." When Zerahemnah heard this, he gave his weapons to Moroni and said, "Here are our weapons, but know this: we will not promise you something when we know we'll break that promise. Go ahead and take our weapons. Just let us go back into the wilderness; otherwise we'll keep our weapons and fight to the death, as you say, until we either all die or win over you. We don't share your belief in God. No God delivered us to you. You just outsmarted us, that's all. Your shields and protection saved you – not God." Moroni gave the Lamanite general back his sword. "We end it here and now." How dare this Nephite issue such a statement to a Lamanite General! The furious general gripped his sword tightly, and lunged forward to kill Captain Moroni. Just as he raised his sword, though, one of Moroni's soldiers knocked the sword from the general's hand. The handle broke off when the sword hit the ground. While the Nephite soldier was so close to the Lamanite general, he raised his own sword and sliced off a part of the general's scalp. The general jumped up and ran to his troops for safety from these very skillful Nephites. He wasn't expecting anything like this!

The Nephite soldier who had cut off the piece of scalp and quite possibly saved his captain's life, backed up the words of his captain by putting the scalp on the tip of his own sword and raising it high, while he declared to the Lamanites, "Even as this scalp of your chief fell to the ground, so will each and every one of you fall to the ground unless you surrender your weapons and take the oath of peace." Many of the Lamanites trembled with fear and laid their weapons down at Moroni's

feet, then repeated the covenant of peace. All those who gave up their weapons and recited the promise were allowed to leave and went into the wilderness to escape from the blood bath that surely would happen now. By now, General Zerahemnah was enraged. He talked to his men that were left and roared at them to fight even stronger against these enemies. Captain Moroni was so angry at the Lamanites' stubbornness that he commanded his people to kill the remaining hard headed Lamanites. Because the Lamanites wore only loin cloths, they were no match for the heavily armored and protected Nephites and the dead bodies began piling up. When General Zerahemnah saw that his entire army was about to be destroyed, he cried to Moroni, promising that he and his men would take the oath of peace and would never fight against them again, if they would just spare his life and the lives of his men. Moroni raised his hand and the battle ended. He and his men took the Lamanite weapons and as soon as each Lamanite took the oath of peace, he was allowed to go back into the wilderness. So many had died that day from both sides that they couldn't bury them all, so they threw them into the Sidon River and stood watching as the bodies floated out until the sea buried them. The Nephites returned home to their families to live in peace and safety. Once more the Lord had delivered them from their enemies and they praised God for it.

After the celebrations and periods of fasting and praise were over, Alma called his son Helaman to come to him once more. "Son, do you believe what I said about the records that I have been keeping?" "Yes, Father, I believe." "And do you believe in Jesus Christ who will come?" "Yes, Father, I believe everything that you told me." "Will you keep all the commandments the Lord has given through me?" "Yes, Father, I will do everything you have told me to the very best of my ability." "You are so blessed for doing this. The Lord will cause you to do well and prosper. I have something to tell you, but I don't want you to say anything to anyone about it. I want you to write this prophecy down so it will be preserved for the future so people will know what happened. 400 years after Jesus Christ appears to the Nephites, they will fall away and allow sin to overtake their lives . Wars, plagues, droughts and bloodshed will wipe out the entire Nephite nation until it becomes extinct. Those who aren't killed, will join up with the Lamanites and become one of them until there are no Nephites left on this earth."

Alma then called his other sons to join them and he blessed all his sons. He also blessed the land for the sake of all the righteous people living there. "Thus saith the Lord God: 'this land will become cursed when the people have sinned so much that they are ripe in their sins.' This is because the Lord cannot live among sin, no matter how little and He cannot abide with His people when they are filled with sin." Alma then blessed the church and all those who would remain faithful.

After he finished the blessings, Alma left the land of Zarahemla in the direction of Melek and was never heard from again. Some in the church believe that he was taken to heaven by the Holy Spirit. Others say he was buried by the hand of the Lord as Moses was. Either way, we know The Lord received him because of Alma's beliefs and faithfulness.

Unfortunately, it didn't take long before the Nephites and Lamanites were fighting again, with sin leading the way on both sides. Helaman and his brothers went out again to make sure there were thriving churches firmly established in every city throughout the Nephite nation. They appointed priests and teachers to serve at the different churches, so Helaman and the others could continue on to the next city. Some of the Nephites, however, had become proud and puffed up because they were very rich and didn't feel the laws of the church applied to them. They felt that they were self-made men and refused to recognize that all blessings come from The Lord. There was even one of them who wanted to be king over all the Nephite nation. He was a giant of a man named Amalickiah.

Lesson 28 Study Questions

1. Who was the second group of people targeted for destruction by the Lamanite army? (Alma 20:25a) and why? (Alma 20:25b)

2. Were the priests and teachers of Helaman's time divinely chosen by God? (Alma 21:26)

Significant Quotations

"Nevertheless, the Nephites were inspired by a better cause; for they were not fighting for monarchy nor power; but they were fighting for their homes, and their liberties, their wives, and their children, and their all; yea, for their rites of worship, and their church." ~Alma 20:50

"And again, the Lord has said that ye shall defend your families, even unto bloodshed." ~Alma 20:52

Lesson 29

People in this chapter:	
Amalickiah=wanted to be Nephite king	Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior
Helaman=1st son of Alma; spiritual leader	Lehonti=Lamanite leader against Amalickiah
Moroni=chief captain of Nephite army	Lehi2=Nephite army unit leader

~ *read: Alma 21:32 – 21:172*

"…Amalickiah wanted to be king over all the Nephite nation…

The rebels supported him because many of them were lower court judges and high priests and were greedily looking for more power. Amalickiah had made them campaign promises that if they would help him become king, he would appoint them rulers over the people and they foolishly, eagerly followed him. Soon others in the churches began listening and believing the flattering words of Amalickiah who obviously told them what they wanted to hear. Helaman just shook his head. How quickly the people forget. They were forgetting God and His blessings to them and they were forgetting their precious freedom.

When Captain Moroni heard about Amalickiah, he became very angry with the man. He was so mad that he violently tore his own coat and wrote on a piece of it, 'In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children,' then he stuck it on a spear. Moroni put on his armor then took the pole with his Title of Liberty attached to it and poured his heart out to God in prayer, thanking Him for the blessing of liberty which would be enjoyed in this land as long as there were faithful Christians. He held his banner high in the air for all to see what he had written and invited everyone who believed the words written on the flag to promise God that they would remain faithful. Immediately the people ran up to him, ripping their own coats as a sign and promised that they would remain true to their God, filled with the knowledge that He would always bless them with freedom. And they knew that if they broke their promise, God would take away their freedom and destroy them. Moroni went all over the Nephite lands gathering together the faithful Christians to take a stand against the Amalickiahites.

Moroni and Amalickiah - what a difference in these 2 strong men! One was intent on helping his people stand in defense of their liberty, their lands, their families, and their peace. The other was out for more power and riches for himself.

Once Amalickiah saw that his people were outnumbered and doubt was beginning to creep in among his own people, he took his group of followers to live in the land of Nephi among the Lamanites. Moroni knew that would be trouble. Once the Amalickiahites joined up with the Lamanites, they would all get stirred up against the Nephites and there would be war. Something had to be done to protect the faithful Christian Nephites and Moroni recognized that sometimes it is necessary for true followers of Christ to stand in defense of those things they hold most dear. Moroni knew he had to execute Amalickiah and return the rebels to the land of the Nephites.

The Nephite army led by Moroni came upon the Amalickiahites in the wilderness, but Amalickiah and a few of his men ran away before Moroni could get to him. The rest were rounded up and taken back to the land of Zarahemla. Once there, Moroni gave each of the rebels a choice: promise to support their freedom or be put to death. Wisely, most of them chose to help protect the Nephites' liberty. Sadly, not all of them could agree to even that much.

73-72 BC

A copy of the Title of Liberty soon flew from every tower in the land of the Nephites. The 'Title of Liberty' quickly became a reminder to them not to take their freedom lightly and always remember where it comes from. Finally there was peace and order in the church again and the people lived very long lives.

Meanwhile, Amalickiah was very busy while living among the Lamanites. "Amalickiah once again stirred up the people who had fled with him and the Lamanites. He did such a good job of creating anger in the people, the Lamanite king declared war against the Nephites. Many, however, were afraid of the Nephites because of the things they had seen and heard about their army and their leader, Moroni. These Lamanites were so scared, they refused the king and would not join the Lamanite army. The king was angry so he put Amalickiah in charge of the small remaining army and told him to force the rest of the Lamanites back into battle against the Nephites. This was exactly what Amalickiah had planned! The next step was to get rid of the king so he himself could become king of all the Lamanites. Somehow the disobedient Lamanites had heard about Amalickiah and the small army coming after them and they ran to the hill Onidah where all their weapons were stored. There they appointed Lehonti to be their leader before hiking up the next mountain called Antipas.

Amalickiah and his army camped below them in the valley. Amalickiah sent a messenger to Lehonti that he wanted to talk to him, but Lehonti stayed where he was. After all, he wasn't born yesterday! Amalickiah sent a second messenger, but Lehonti still refused. Amalickiah wasn't giving up, so he send a third messenger; again Lehonti ignored him. Amalickiah decided to go up the mountain himself, stopping just beforehe and a few of his men came to Lehonti's camp. He sent a fourth messenger asking for a meeting and this time he told Lehonti that he could bring his guards with him. Lehonti finally went to the meeting. There, Amalickiah told Lehonti if he came down into the valley at night with his army, they could surround Amalickiah's army, forcing them to surrender. Amalickiah would agree to this if Lehonti agreed to make Amalickiah second in command over the entire army (both groups combined). Seeing this as a peaceful answer to what could have been a civil war among the Lamanites, Lehonti quickly agreed.

Late that very night, Lehonti and his men crept down to the valley and circled around Amalickiah's army. When the men woke up at dawn, they saw they were surrounded and begged their leader Amalickiah to let them join up with Lehonti's men instead of being killed by them. Once again, everything was going according to Amalickiah's plan! It was all Amalickiah could do to keep from laughing. Of course he hesitantly allowed his men to join Lehonti's army.

Amalickiah went quietly to one of his own loyal servants and arranged to have that servant slowly over several weeks to give Lehonti small doses of poison so it wouldn't be noticed, until the poison finally did its work and killed Lehonti. Since the custom was that if a leader died, the 2nd in command automatically became the leader, it didn't take but just a few short weeks for Amalickiah to become commander over the entire Lamanite army – this time with all soldiers willing and ready to obey his commands. Instead of marching towards the Nephites, however, the army marched back to the city of Nephi, which was the Lamanite national capital. The king and his guards came out to greet the army, assuming his army had killed all the Nephites in battle. Amalickiah had his servants go bow before the king. When the king reached out his hand, which was a sign for the servants to stand, the closest servant stabbed his king in the heart and the king fell down dead. The palace servants were terrified and ran. Amalickiah's loyal servants cried that the king's servants had stabbed him, then ran. Amalickiah ordered his army to avenge their king and hunt down the men who had done this and kill them.

Once the palace servants realized the entire Lamanite army was after them, they ran through the wilderness all the way over to the land of Zarahemla and joined the people of Ammon who had long

ago buried their weapons and refused to ever fight anyone again. After awhile the army lost their trail and gave up. When they got to the city of Nephi, they found that Amalickiah had already taken possession of the city and had told the queen that the king was dead and why, using the same servants who killed the king as witnesses against the palace servants. He then married the queen, which was his final step in gaining the entire Lamanite kingdom. This wasn't enough for Amalickiah, however. He was soon stirring up the people against the Nephites again – he wanted it all; Nephite lands as well as Lamanite lands. The surviving Nephites would become his slaves.Since the Zoramites used to be Nephites and knew their ways, he appointed several of them to be chief captains. Off the Lamanite army went…in the direction of the land of Zarahemla.

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Meanwhile, deep in Nephite territory, Chief Captain Moroni had been preparing his people for battle by bringing them faithfully unto the Lord. He had also been building forts and walls throughout the land, enlarging his armies where they were the weakest. He was actually a peaceful man and didn't like bloodshed, but he knew war was coming, whether the Nephites prepared or not. And he knew their freedom was at stake. He taught them that there were times when you had to defend yourself and your family. But he also taught that it was a sin to draw first blood by raising your sword first. He reminded them that if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God, the Lord would take care of them, whether it meant running away or being victorious on the battle field. Helaman and his brothers also preached to as many as would listen – but their sermons called for repentance and they baptized all who repented and asked for baptism. Because the Nephite people humbled themselves throughout the land, war was held off for an additional 4 years of peace. Finally, the time for war with the Lamanites had come. The Nephites grieved because they knew they were sending many of the Lamanites into eternity, unprepared to meet God. They grieved also because they knew if they didn't fight, they and their families would be tortured and massacred by a group of people who were related to them and were still considered by the Nephites to be their brethren.

The big day came. The Nephite lookouts spotted the Lamanite army marching toward Ammonihah. The Lamanites had chosen this city, because they had destroyed it once before because of the wicked people living there and figured it would be easy to conquer again. Besides, this time the Lamanites also wore protection, but the Lamanite captains were surprised. The Nephites had done a great job reinforcing the city – better than had ever been seen before by the Nephites or the Lamanites. It seems the Nephites were prepared to do battle. The Lamanites wisely decided not to attack the city and tried to retreat, but the Nephites had changed the layout of the land, so the Lamanites could do nothing but run into the wilderness.

Next, the Lamanites marched toward the land of Noah, since that was also a well known city lacking in defense and could easily be taken. Knowing by now how the Lamanites thought, Moroni had figured out that they would be too afraid to attack Ammonihah, so they would go to the next weakest spot; the city of Noah. Moroni had asked Captain Lehi to be in charge of the city of Noah, since he had done so well against the Lamanites at the valley by the river Sidon. Once word spread throughout the Lamanite camp that Captain Lehi was in charge of the city of Noah, the Lamanites knew there was no way. They all knew what had happened at the Sidon River and they were all afraid to go up against Lehi, but they had also sworn an oath to attack the city.

Moroni had done such a good job here of securing the city that the only way in was through the main gate. There was no other way in because of the high walls and deep ditches. They could see the Nephites on top of the walls who were ready to sling rocks or shoot arrows at them. This city was a fortress, just like Ammonihah was.
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 29 Study Questions

1. ☺ Why didn't Moroni own a coat? (Alma 21:41)

2. Alma 21:43 mentions Christians as being faithful believers in the church. When were believers first called Christians in the Bible?

3. In Alma 21:46, who did Helaman give the land to that was south of the land of Desolation?

4. Why didn't a lot of the Nephites die from disease? (Alma 21:76)

5. Why was the Lamanite army afraid before they even went into battle? (Alma 21:79)

6. The Nephites fought for a cause. What did the Lamanites call this cause? (Alma 21:131) No, it wasn't a "lost cause".

7. ☺ Why did Moroni have an enlarged heart? (Alma 21:133)

8. If the Nephites fought defensively only and never started a fight, how would God take care of them? (Alma 21:137)

9. Why were the Lamanites so confident they would win? (Alma 21:151, 154-156, 166)

10. Why didn't the Lamanites capture the city of Ammonihah? (Alma 21:157)

11. What does Alma 21:160 mean when it says, "He (King Amalickiah) did not care for the blood of his people"?

Significant Quotations

"...In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children..." ~Alma 21:41

"Behold, we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; yea, we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his brethren, into many pieces…" ~Alma 21:54

"…If all men had been and were and ever would be like unto Moroni, behold, the very powers of hell would have been shaken for ever; yea, the devil would never have power over the hearts of the children of men." ~Alma 21:140

Lesson 30

People in this chapter:	
Amalickiah=wanted to be Nephite king	Pahoran=Nephite chief judge
Moroni=chief captain of Nephite army	Ammoron=brother of Amalickiah
Alma=son of Alma the Elder; spiritual leader	Jacob=Lamanite leader
Mosiah2=son of Benjamin; last Nephite king	Leh2i=Nephi army unit leader
Nephi=4th son of Lehi from Jerusalem	Ammon=son of Mosiah; missionary
Morianton=Nephite leader of city Morianton	Helaman=1st son of Alma the Younger
Teancum=Nephi army unit leader	

~ *read: Alma 21:173 – 24:73*

"…The Nephite city of Noah was a fortress just like the city of Ammonihah…

Still, the Lamanites tried and were killed for their efforts. Next, the Lamanites started digging so the walls would fall into the ditches, but the Nephites kept them back with the slings and bows & arrows. Instead of the ditches filling up with dirt, they filled up with Lamanite warriors.

And so it went, city by city, until all the chief captains had been killed. In fact, more than 1,000 Lamanites were killed, without losing a single Nephite. That doesn't mean they all escaped injury, though. About 50 Nephites were wounded, however, on their legs where there was no armor. Some of the arrow wounds were quite severe.

In the end, however, the Lamanites realized that without their chief captains, they had no chance against the Nephites, so they ran back to the land of Nephi. When Amalickiah heard about it, he was furious. He wanted every single living Nephite enslaved. He was so mad that he cursed Moroni and even God. He vowed that if it was the last thing he did, he would drink Moroni's blood because Moroni was responsible for keeping the people close to God and preparing for their safety.

The Nephites had won for now and there was peace once again in the land. The church became prosperous because of the faith of the people who were guided spiritually by the sons of Alma the Second, the sons of King Mosiah, and all those who had been ordained as priesthood. They continued preaching repentance, baptizing believers, and sending others out to preach among all the Nephite nation. How long would this blessed peace last?

"Knowing the Lamanites as he did, Moroni never stopped making preparations for war, even during this time of peace. He knew that the best offense was a good defense. He had huge mounds of dirt all around every Nephite city. He had fences made of big round timbers as tall as a man, built on top of the dirt. On top of the big rounded fences were pointed stakes. He also had lookout towers above the fences. From the lookout places, the Nephites could use their slings and stones or bows and arrow against the Lamanites, but the Nephites themselves were safely protected inside the lookout towers.

The time for battle had come. Moroni and his army drove all the Lamanites out of the east wilderness back into Lamanite territory. Moroni invited all Nephites living in the land of Zarahemla to go to the east wilderness and settle. He then reinforced the entire border between the Nephites and Lamanites. While Moroni and the army were building protection against the Lamanites, the Nephites continued following the ways of the Lord and were blessed and became very rich and

72-64 BC

successful. In fact, there was never a happier time among the Nephites except in the beginning with the days of Nephi.

Unfortunately, there was a disturbance in the 24th year of the Judges when those living in the land of Morianton claimed a part of the land of Lehi also. With swords in hand, they went after their brothers living in the land of Lehi. The people from the land of Lehi escaped and ran to Moroni's camp, asking for help. When Morianton, who was the leader of the people living in the land of Morianton heard that the people of Lehi had gone to Moroni's camp, he and his people were afraid that the whole Nephite army might come after them, so they fled far to the north. They would probably have gotten away, but Morianton was a strong man with strong emotions that flared up quickly. One day, he got angry at one of his maiden servants and almost beat her to death. She also escaped and ran to Moroni's camp, telling him everything – including their plans to hide out and live in the land to the north. Moroni feared the people of Morianton would also take over the land in the north land called Bountiful and enlarge his army, threatening the freedom of the rest of the Nephites. Moroni's army led by Teancum, caught up with the people of Morianton at the narrow neck of land by the land of Desolation. The people of Morianton refused to listen to reason and the fight was on. Morianton was killed and his army rounded up and the prisoners were taken back to Moroni. Without their leader to keep them stirred up, the people of Morianton promised to not fight their fellow Nephites anymore, so they were given back their land at Morianton, where they made peace with the people of Lehi.

But peace, once again, was not meant to live long among the Nephites. Some of the Nephites who had royal ancestors were angry with Pahoran the chief judge because they thought the law should be changed back to having a king in charge, with them on the throne, of course. Some of their friends just wanted the power and authority they would gain. These were called king-men. Many opposed them because they had enjoyed their freedom for so long. They were called free-men. Tempers rose, but the matter was settled with a vote instead of bloodshed. The voice of the people spoke through their ballots in favor of the free-men and keeping their system of judges.

Meanwhile, Amalickiah had again stirred up the Lamanites against the Nephites. He started gathering soldiers and preparing for war. He had not forgotten his vow to drink the blood of Moroni. Since most of his army had been killed in previous battles with the Nephites, there were fewer men following him now. Still, Amalickiah took what men he had and headed to the land of Zarahemla to find and kill his sworn enemy Moroni.

When the king-men heard that the Lamanites were coming with their swords, they were secretly glad and refused to use their weapons in battle. Let those free-men fight for their country if they wanted to. When Moroni found out about the stubborn king-men, he was furious. He had worked himself into exhaustion for years to keep peace in the land and these ungrateful men who felt they were better than everyone else now were refusing to lift a finger to defend their country and keep the freedoms which they had been enjoying all this time.

Moroni sent a formal request to the governor, asking him to give Moroni power to draft these king-men into the army. The governor granted Moroni his request. The king-men would fight to defend their country or be put to death. Pride kept the king-men from joining the Nephite army at first. After 4,000 of them were killed and the leaders put in prison, the rest of the king-men decided to join the Nephite army and fight to defend their own country and families. All this was happening while the Lamanite army led by Amalickiah marched into the land of Moroni. The first city they attacked was the city of Moroni which was caught off guard. The Lamanites killed many of them and the rest ran to the city of Nephihah who had recently received the people from the city of Lehi. One by one, the Nephite cities fell before the Lamanites. Finally, the Lamanite army met the

Nephite army led by Teancum. The battle went all day long until it was too dark to see and the warriors fell asleep from exhaustion. During the night, Teancum and one of his servants went into Amalickiah's camp and crept into his tent where Teancum stabbed King Amalickiah in the heart with a javelin. They quietly returned to their own camp and woke up their men and told them what they had done. The Nephite army prepared for the Lamanites to strike back.

The next morning when the Lamanites woke up and saw that the Nephites were already prepared and armed, they left the battle field and went back to the city of Mulek where they would be protected. Amalickiah's brother Ammoron was appointed king as the new ruler of the Lamanites after his brother's death. His first order was to reinforce the cities which they had taken from the Nephites and now occupied. Teancum saw that the Lamanites were determined to keep the Nephite cities which they had taken by force. Because the Lamanite army was so large, Teancum decided to stay put and build their own fort for protection. Moroni found out about the dangerous situation Teancum was in and brought some of his men to assist in re-taking the cities which the Lamanites had captured. A Nephite council was held to decide what to do. The Nephites sent a message to the Lamanite leader named Jacob, asking him to come out with his army and meet them on the plains. Jacob had no intention of fighting the Nephites when he was comfortable right there in his city. Moroni asked Teancum to take a small number of men to the sea shore while his own army crept into the wilderness during the night. When the Lamanites woke up the next morning, they went after Teancum because his army was so small and was exposed now. Teancum and his men saw the Lamanites coming after them and ran along the sea shore northward. Meanwhile, Moroni sent a part of his army into the city and took it back. As Teancum came near the city Bountiful, Lehi and his army came out. When the Lamanites saw this additional Nephite army, they panicked, because they were very tired from chasing Teancum and his men, while Lehi's army was fresh. Before they could escape, Moroni and his men came up. Even though they were tired, the Lamanites fought fiercely. Many were killed including Jacob. Moroni was wounded. Because the Lamanites were surrounded, many gave up their weapons. The rest of them were confused about what to do. Moroni told them that if they would surrender their weapons, their lives would be spared. The chief Lamanite captains immediately dropped their weapons and commanded their men to do the same. Those Lamanites who refused to surrender were tied up and marched to land Bountiful after they buried the dead soldiers. Once at Bountiful, they were ordered to dig a ditch and build a tall, strong wall around the entire city.

While Moroni was busy on the eastern shore, the Lamanites were taking over several Nephite cities on the western shore and coming close to the people of Ammon.

The Ammonites had been converted by Ammon and his brothers who were sons of King Mosiah. Once converted to the Lord, they took an oath that they would never fight again, even on threat of death. Since their conversion, they had lived among and been protected by the Nephites. When they saw the danger the Nephites were in, however, they knew they could not stand by and allow the Lamanites to kill the Nephites. Just as they were about to take up weapons, Helaman and his brothers persuaded them not to fight. He was afraid for their souls if they would break the promise they had made to God.

Because it had been many years since they had made their promise, many of them had sons who had not made the covenant to not fight. These young men who considered themselves Nephites, gathered together and made their own promise that they would fight to the death for the liberty of all Nephites. They had grown up with the luxury of freedom and were not about to allow it to be taken away from them, their families or any other Nephites. They knew the stories of the cruel and harsh Lamanites who enslaved those they captured.

Lesson 30 Study Questions

1. What was one of our constitutional rights as Americans that was not offered to the king-men? (Alma 23:23)

2. What happened to the Lamanite prisoners that Teancum captured during battle? (Alma 24:9)

3. What would the Lamanites do if they surrounded the Nephites? (Alma 24:10)

4. What did the Lamanite prisoners of war have to do on their work detail? (Alma 24:50)

Significant Quotations

"And it came to pass that Moroni, having no hopes of meeting them upon fair grounds*, therefore he resolved upon a plan that he might decoy the Lamanites out of their strongholds." ~Alma 24:26

* ☺ *(Is that why Moroni didn't go to the state fair? He had no hope of meeting them?)*

Lesson 31

People in this chapter:	
Ammon=son of Mosiah; missionary	Laman1=1st son of Lehi from Jerusalem
Helaman=1st son of Alma the Younger	Lemuel=2nd son of Lehi from Jerusalem
Moroni=chief captain Nephite army	Zoram=servant of Laban from Jerusalem
Ammoron=brother Amalickiah	Laman2=Lamanite spy for Moroni
Amalickiah=wanted to be king of all	Alma2=spiritual Nephite leader
Nephi=4th son of Lehi from Jerusalem	Antipus=a Nephite army unit captain
Sam=3rd son of Lehi from Jerusalem	

~ *read: Alma 24:74 – 26:34*

"…Although the Ammonites promised never to fight, they now must fight for Nephite lives…

The young people of Ammon would not stand by and let that happen to the peaceful people and those Nephites who had taken them in, given them a land for their inheritance, and protected them all these years.

There were 2,000 young men who took the vow to protect the lives and freedoms of the Ammonites. They picked up their weapons to defend their country, with Helaman leading the way. These were very special young men. Each and every one was very brave, strong, and trustworthy in all things. They had been taught to always keep God's commandments and follow His ways. Courage is a great quality to have, but after all, these soldiers were very young and had not been trained for battle. In fact, they had never held weapons of war before. How could they hope to survive a battle against the full-grown, battle-scarred Lamanite warriors?

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

The Lamanite captain sent word to Captain Moroni that he would like to do a prisoner exchange. Moroni was glad to hear this. Now the food that had been going to the Lamanite prisoners would feed the Nephites and he would get his soldiers back, which would enlarge his army. Besides that, the Lamanites had also taken women and children prisoner, while the Nephites took only Lamanite soldiers prisoner. Moroni took the opportunity through the Lamanite messenger to write a warning to Captain Ammoron what would happen if he didn't repent and turn to God. He also told him that the only way he would exchange prisoners is if it were a Nephite father, mother, and children for one Lamanite prisoner. If Ammoron would agree to this, then Moroni would also agree. But if he didn't agree, Moroni would arm even their women and children to join in the fight. All of the Nephites would come against him and chase him down into Lamanite country, if necessary, and hunt him until Ammoron was killed. The Nephites had enough and were beyond anger now. "We have only defended ourselves before, where as you Lamanites have done nothing but tried to murder us at every turn. If you continue in this battle, we will do our best to destroy you and your people and we will take back our lands." Signed, Moroni, leader of the Nephites.

This made Ammoron angry so he fired back another letter. "I am Ammoron, king of the Lamanites and brother of Amalickiah whom you killed. I will avenge him by coming after you – and I'm not afraid of your threats! Your ancestors Nephi, Sam and the others did our forefathers wrong. Laman, Lemuel and their descendants should have been the rulers of all the Israelites here in this

64-63 BC
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

land. Our people were robbed of their lawful right to govern the people. If you will surrender your weapons and agree to abide by our laws and leaders, I will tell my people to lay down their weapons and the war will be over. I have said it before and will say it again: we are not afraid of your threats. I will, however, agree to the prisoner exchange as you requested. Know this; if the war continues, it will continue until the Nephites bow down to us and our authority, or until you are all wiped off the face of the earth. As for this God you talk about, we know nothing about a God. If there is such a thing as God, just remember – if he made you that means he made us too. And if there is a devil and a hell, won't you be sent there since you murdered my brother? You've already said my brother Amalickiah is in hell. What about you? Never mind. It really doesn't matter. I am Ammoron, descendant of Zoram, who was brought out of Jerusalem by your fore fathers. Actually, I consider myself a Lamanite, though. This war has been because our ancestors were wronged and we mean to avenge them and take back their right to lead."

Moroni couldn't believe what he was reading! He was furious because he knew that Ammoron was well aware that ancient leadership wasn't the reason for this war. Moroni decided not to go through with the prisoner exchange unless Ammoron gave up the idea of being ruler over us. Moroni refused to give Ammoron any more power than he already had..

Moroni knew where the Lamanites keep their prisoners. Since Ammoron would not do as Moroni asked, he would follow through with what he said. Moroni would kill their soldiers until they change their minds. Moroni devised a plan. He searched among his army until he found a man named Laman who was a Lamanite by blood and had formerly been a servant of the Lamanite king who had been murdered by Amalickiah. At Moroni's request, Laman and a small group of Nephite soldiers went over to the Lamanite prison guards who were stationed in the city of Gid with the prisoners. When the guards looked at him suspiciously, Laman told them he and his friends had escaped from the Nephites while the guards were sleeping and stole their wine. When the Lamanite guards heard about the wine, they were excited and asked for some of their wine because they had been working long hours and were very tired. But Laman said he should really keep the wine until the fighting started again. This made the Lamanite guards only want the wine that much more and they tried to rationalize by telling Laman, "We are really tired. Let us have some wine now. When our rations come, we'll get some more wine and we can let that wine give us strength for the battle." Laman told them to do whatever they wanted, so they each took a sip. It was really smooth, so they drank more and more. Moroni had chosen that particular wine because it was so strong. It didn't take long before the guards fell into a drunken sleep. Laman and his men went back to Moroni and told him everything went exactly as Moroni planned.

Moroni and his men brought along some extra weapons and passed them to the prisoners, so that all the Nephites were armed – even the women and children who could use a weapon. The prisoners were quiet and could have killed the guards in their sleep, but despite Ammoron's belief, Moroni did not take any pleasure in murder. In fact, Moroni made a special effort to see that everyone did the right thing.

The next morning when the Lamanite guards woke up, not only did they find Moroni and his men surrounding them, they also discovered that the Nephite prisoners they were supposed to be guarding all had weapons too. Wisely, the Lamanite captains ordered the guards to lay down their weapons, which is exactly what they did. This is what Moroni had hoped would happen. He took them as prisoners of war, took over the city, and set free all the Nephite prisoners who quickly joined his army. He commanded the Lamanite prisoners to build walls and ditches around the city of Gid to make it more protected against the Lamanite army.

After the Lamanite prisoners had finished making the city safe against attack, Moroni marched them to the city Bountiful where he made that city even stronger and safer. In no time at all, the Nephites were able to take back their lands and authority. Not to be outdone, the Lamanites tried to poison the Nephites with wine or get them helplessly drunk, but the Nephites remembered to honor the Lord and He protected them against the Lamanite traps and tricks. The Nephites would only drink wine that had been tasted first by the Lamanite prisoners.

The time had come for the Nephites to attack the city of Morianton – but the Lamanites were ready for them. They had made the Lamanite city a stronghold that was well protected and defended. They were constantly bringing in fresh troupes and stocking the entire city with provisions of food, clothing, and weapons. It was like a fort – a Lamanite fort.

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Moroni received a message from Alma's oldest son Helaman, "I would like to tell you about the 2,000 sons of the Ammonites. [Moroni knew of the Ammonites whohad been born Lamanites, but were converted to the Lord and made a covenant to never again use weapons to shed blood.] When the Ammonites saw we were in serious trouble, they had compassion for us and were going to pick up their weapons in defense of their country. Just as they were about to arm themselves, my brothers and I persuaded them not to break their oaths they had made with God. Their young Ammonite sons, however, had not promised God that they would never fight. Instead, they made a covenant with God to protect the land, even if it meant they were killed in battle. The boys asked me to lead them into defending their country. We marched to the city of Judea to help Antipus, the leader you had appointed in that region. Antipus was thrilled to see me and my 2,000 sons – I call them my own sons, because that's just how I think of them – because the Lamanite army had just about killed off all the Nephite soldiers with Antipus. The Lamanites captured all the chief captains, but they viciously murdered the other soldiers. We can only guess that they took the chief captains into the land of Nephi, if they are even still alive.

The Lamanite army swooped down like vultures and took over the cities of Manti, Zeezrom, Cumeni, and Antiparah. When we arrived at Judea, I found Antipus and his men working as best they could to build defensive walls and ditches around the entire city. They fought the Lamanites by day and worked at night to help defend Judea. They were exhausted and worn out in both spirit and body. When Antipus and his small army saw us, they were almost overcome with hope and joy. When the Lamanites saw Antipus now had reinforcements, they backed off and left Judea. Praise the Lord! If they had looked closely at us, they would have seen an army of boys, brave of heart, but still untried on the battle field and could have defeated all of us. Fortunately, the Lord covered us with his protective arms and pushed back the Lamanite army.

We kept spies out to watch the Lamanite army to make sure they didn't pass by us to go capture the less protected Nephite cities in the north. If they tried this, we were going to follow them, so when they met the Nephite soldiers head-on at the city, we could come at them from behind. Much to our disappointment, they didn't move northward. Nor did they go against the city of Zarahemla or even cross the Sidon river to attack the city of Nephihah. They simply chose to maintain the cities which they had already captured.

A couple of months later, some of the boys' fathers brought us food. 2,000 men of Zarahemla came with the fathers. Now we were up to 10,000 well-stocked soldiers. When the Lamanites saw our army grow daily in numbers and supplies, they became very uneasy. When we saw how they were affected, we formed a plan."
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 31 Study Questions

1. What were 2 reasons that Moroni was happy to do what Ammoron asked? (Alma 25:1-2)

2. What is an epistle as mentioned in Alma 25:4?

3. What "little" detail did Ammoron add to his suggestion for a peaceful end to the war? (Alma 25:19)

Significant Quotations

"And it came to pass that they [MORONI AND HIS MEN] did…keep and protect all the prisoners whom they had taken…" ~Alma 25:54

"And they were thus cautious, that no poison should be administered among them; for if their wine would poison a Lamanite, it would also poison a Nephite; and thus they did try all their liquors." ~Alma 25:60

Lesson 32

People in this chapter:	
Helaman1=spiritual leader; led 2,000 boys	Ammoron=Lamanite king, brother of Amalickiah
Moroni=chief captain of Nephite army	Gid=Nephite chief captain of guards
Antipus=a Nephite army unit captain	Teomner=Nephite army unit leader

~ *read: Alma 26:35 – 26:161*

"…Letter from Helaman to Moroni continues as he tells of their plan…

"Captain Antipus told me and my 2,000 little sons to march to the nearby city of Antiparah like we were taking food and supplies to them, but instead of stopping, we were to march on by as if we were going to another city farther down by the sea shore. When Antipus felt he had given Helaman and his army of boys enough time to get close to the city of Antiparah, Antipus took some of his men with him, leaving the third part to protect Judea.

We walked by the city of Antiparah. Theboys knew the largest and strongest squad of Lamanite warriors were inside those city walls, just waiting for a weakness in the Nephite army to show itself. Sure enough, the Lamanite spies informed their general of the small band of boys marching with supplies, and the entire Lamanite army followed us. It didn't take long until we were actually running along the sea shore heading north, with the Lamanite army hot on our trail.

As soon as the Lamanites left the city to come after us, Antipus and his men marched behind the Lamanites. When the Lamanites realized that a small Nephite group was behind them, they stepped up their march to kill us before Antipus could catch up to them. After all, they didn't want Nephites in front of them and behind them at the same time. When Antipus saw the Lamanites were going faster after us, they also sped up. Imagine it! Three groups of armies chasing after each other along the sea shore.

When night came, I could see that my little soldiers were exhausted, so we slept for a few hours. When we woke up just before dawn, we saw that the Lamanites were already after us – so we headed into the wilderness. We ran all day long with the Lamanites right behind us. Once again by the time darkness came, we stopped just before the boys collapsed. They were strong, but they were not used to this constant tension and running. We bedded down and slept for a few hours. Just like before, the Lamanites were up and after us by the time we woke up.

We started running, but all of a sudden, we realized we couldn't see them anymore. I gathered my sons together and asked them what they wanted to do. If the Lamanites were in battle with Antipus, should we go help them? What if it was a trap? Were we ready to fight the Lamanite army by ourselves? Moroni, I can honestly tell you that I have never seen such courage even among the entire Nephite army of seasoned soldiers. These young boys told me, 'God is with us and He will protect us. Let's go! If the Lamanites agree to leave us alone, we won't kill them. But we won't allow them to kill the men of Antipus. We will defend our country and freedoms to the death if we have to – we're not afraid. Our mothers taught us that as long as we didn't doubt and remained faithful, God would protect us. We don't doubt God and we don't doubt what our mothers believed and taught us.' There was nothing else to do but turn back and fight the Lamanites who had been chasing us for 3 days. By the time we arrived, the battle had already begun. Antipus and his men had been working so hard to overtake the Lamanite army, that they were worn out and

63 BC

would have fallen to the Lamanites if we had not returned when we did. As it was, Antipus had been killed and his men started retreating back to the city of Judea. The Lamanites saw an easy kill and began marching after them. That's when we came up behind them and started killing the Lamanites who were in back. All of a sudden, the entire Lamanite army turned around and started fighting us. When the men of Antipus saw what had happened, they started fighting the back of the Lamanite army again. Once the Lamanite army realized they were surrounded, they laid down their weapons and surrendered. When the smoke cleared, I looked around – not a single one of my boys had been killed – not one! They had all fought with a strength I have never before seen in men, let alone boys. It was a miraculous, God-given strength in each son. Evidently, the Lamanites had never seen such power before either, which is why they surrendered completely before us. Since we had no place to keep prisoners, we sent them to the land of Zarahemla with a few of the men of Antipus to watch over them as guards.

The rest of Antipus' army marched back with us to Judea. Shortly after we arrived, I received a letter from the Lamanite King Ammoron. He said if I gave him the prisoners of war I had just taken, he would give back the city of Antiparah. I wrote back a note of "thanks, but no thanks" and that I thought we could take the city of Antiparah ourselves by force if necessary. The only way we would give up the prisoners was if there was an exchange of prisoners from both sides. Since King Ammoron refused to exchange the prisoners, we started once again to prepare for war. But the people in the city ran to some of the other Nephite cities that the Lamanites had recently taken over, so we were able to take back the city of Antiparah without even a fight.

Sometime later, we received about 6,000 new soldiers and supplies from Zarahemla as well as 60 new Ammonite sons who had come to join us. We were now ready to take back the city of Cumeni. Our spies told us the city was expecting a shipment of supplies any day now. That night we surrounded the city, but nothing happened, so we camped out every night for several weeks. Finally the supplies arrived and we over powered the delivery men, taking the provisions for ourselves. Even though their shipment didn't make it inside the gates, those stubborn Lamanites decided to stay locked up in the city anyway. They had taken it from Nephites and no one was going to take it away from them. When they saw their supplies going toward Judea and Zarahemla, they finally gave up hope of any help and opened the gates to us. Now we had a problem. We had so many Lamanite prisoners, that it took all of us to stand guard over them. The only other choice was to execute some of them. They were a wild bunch and constantly broke out into fights. They used stones, clubs, or whatever they could get their hands on. We ended up killing 2,000 just to keep the peace. Finally, we decided to send them to Zarahemla where there were more Nephites to guard them. We sent a small group of our soldiers to escort them to Zarahemla. The next day, however, our soldiers came back. There was no time to ask questions, however, because another unit of the Lamanite army had come to the city of Cumeni and were about to overpower the remainder of our Nephite army. It seems King Ammoron had sent a fresh supply of soldiers and supplies to the Lamanites living in Cumeni. Our returning guards came just in the nick of time. Between them and my troop of 2,060 boys, many Lamanites were killed that very day. The rest retreated back to the city of Manti. I checked over my sons and found out that many of them were wounded, so we tended to them as best we could. 200 of my boys had fainted because of loss of blood. But there was good news among all the suffering; not one of my 2,060 had been killed. The entire Nephite army there was amazed because every single one of my sons had been spared, while 1,000 of the Nephite soldiers previously under Antipus had been killed today. We all recognized the miracle that had happened was because of the faith of these boys in God. They believed that God would spare their lives if they didn't doubt in Him.

Finally after we took care of the wounded and buried the dead, I was able to question the guards who had been taking the prisoners of war to Zarahemla, but ended up helping us to save the day. The chief captain of the guards was Gid. He told me they came upon some Nephite spies who had been watching a large Lamanite unit. This unit was on the way to the city of Cumeni to destroy the Nephite army camped out there. The prisoners overheard the spies and tried to overpower the guards so they could escape and return to their unit. Most of the prisoners were killed, but a few escaped. After they saw they couldn't catch the escapees, the guards came immediately back here to Cumeni to help out, which they did and for which we were all grateful. We all praised the Lord greatly that day for His blessings and that those Nephites who had been killed would be with Him now in heaven.

Our next objective was to somehow get back our city of Manti. Unfortunately, the Lamanites there remembered the trap we had set by leading the Lamanite army out of the city of Judea. We were greatly outnumbered, so we couldn't just go in and attack them. We decided the best thing was to request and wait for more supplies and fresh soldiers to come to us from Zarahemla. Unfortunately, the Lamanites were also receiving fresh supplies and men almost daily it seemed.

They toyed with us by attacking in small groups, then retreating back to safety. Soon our food supply was gone and we were about to starve to death. Then one day a unit of 2,000 Nephite soldiers arrived with supplies. We have no idea why they only sent 2,000 to help us when the Lamanite army was so large, it couldn't even be counted. Fear began spreading through our camp. We poured out our souls to God in prayer that He would give us strength to overtake our enemies so we could keep our land, our belongings, and our families and friends. The Lord made it known to us that He would be with us and protect us. We were filled with a peace that only God can give.

And so we went up against the Lamanites at the city of Manti, knowing that God was with us. When they saw how few of us there were, they started preparing for war, knowing they could easily take us since there were so many of them.

I told Gid to take a small group of men and hide out on the right side of the wilderness. I also told Teomner to take a small group and hide out on the left side. We stayed where we were. When the Lamanites came out to destroy us, I told my boys to hide in the wilderness. Like history repeating itself, the Lamanites came running after us. We led the Lamanites right past Gid and Teomner's men. Once the Lamanites passed them, Gid and Teomner came out of hiding and cut off the Lamanite spies so they couldn't return to the city. Once they took care of the spies, Gid and Teomner killed the remaining guards that had been left to protect the city.

My sons and I started heading towards Zarahemla. When the Lamanites realized this, they were afraid of a trap, so they retreated back into the wilderness the same way they had come. When night came, they pitched their tents, since they figured we were tired and wouldn't be able to get much farther anyway. They also assumed we were the entire Nephite army in this area and didn't bother to post guards. Instead of sleeping, we marched back to Manti by a different way and got there ahead of the Lamanites. When the Lamanite army did arrive the next morning, and saw we were ready for them, they were so afraid that they ran back into the wilderness. Once more, the Nephites were in control of the city of Manti and we did it without shedding one drop of blood.

One by one, we took back the cities that the Lamanites had stolen from us. The Nephite families returned to their homes. All except those who had been carried off as prisoners by the Lamanites, that is. Our protecting armies may be small, but we trust in God and know that it is He who has given us these great victories. We may never know why the government does not choose to strengthen our army. For all we know, you are in even more trouble and the rest of the Nephite army has already been sent to help you. If so, that's one thing, but if not…

Lesson 32 Study Questions

1. Who taught the sons of Helaman about God? (Alma 26:56)
2. If none of Helaman's sons got killed, why didn't he end up with 2,000 soldiers? (Alma 26:75)
3. ☺ Who were the skinniest people ever mentioned in the Book of Mormon? (Alma 26:79)
4. How did the sons of Helaman follow their leader? (Alma 26:95)

Significant Quotations

"Therefore what say ye, my sons, will ye go against them to battle? And now I say unto you my beloved brother, Moroni, that never had I seen so great courage, nay, not amongst all the Nephites. For as I had ever called them my sons, (for they were all of them very young,) even so they said unto me, Father, behold, our God is with us, and he will not suffer that we shall fall; then let us go go, lest they should overpower the army of Antipus." ~ Alma 26:53-55

"Now they never had fought, yet they did not fear death: and they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers, than they did upon their lives; yea, they had been taught by their mothers, that if they did not doubt, that God would deliver them." ~ Alma 56

"And they rehearsed unto me the words of their mothers, saying, We do not doubt our mothers knew." ~ Alma 26:57

"Now this was the faith of these of whom I have spoken; they are young, and their minds are firm; and they do put their trust in God continually." ~Alma 26:104

Lesson 33

People in this chapter:	
Helaman1=spiritual leader; led 2,000 boys	Teancum=captain of Moroni's army
Moroni=chief captain of Nephite army	King Pachus=leader of king-men
Alma2=spiritual leader	Ammoron=Lamanite king, Amalickiah's brother
Pahoran=chief judge/governor Zarahemla	Amalickiah=Lamanite; enemy of Moroni
Lehi2=captain in Moroni's army	

~ *read: Alma 26:162 – 29:52*

"…Letter from Helaman to Moroni continues as he asks why the government won't help…

We are concerned about the government who doesn't send more men to help us. We know there is a large supply of Nephite soldiers available.

We have our lands back since the Lamanites retreated back to the land of Nephi. The 2,060 sons of the people of

Ammon are still with me in the city of Manti. They are all still alive – every last one of them, even though many were wounded. It has been a long time since they have seen their families or received any spiritual training from them, but they remember to keep all God's laws and commandments every day. I am very proud of them and I know God is well pleased. Moroni, may God keep you in His presence." Signed -
Helaman, the son of Alma

Moroni was thrilled when he received his letter from Helaman telling about the victory of his 2,000+ sons. He sent a letter to Pahoran, the chief judge and governor of Zarahemla, asking him to send additional help to Helaman so they could keep control of the land they had recently taken back from the Lamanites. Moroni was so encouraged by Helaman's letter, that he began making plans to re-take more Nephite lands from the Lamanites.

While Moroni was making his plans, the Lamanites slaughtered the people from Nephihah. Those few Nephites who were able to escape joined Moroni's army. Moroni grieved for those innocent Nephites who had been killed, but he was also angry at his own government, so he wrote another letter to Pahoran and the others in charge.

"Dear Pahoran, The Nephite government has let us down and our soldiers are suffering for it. Because the government has neglected us, many innocent Nephites had been murdered and we are demanding to know why we are being ignored and forgotten. For all we know, our government itself is corrupt and greedy with power. How do we know you all aren't traitors? Or have you neglected us because you are safe and secure? The war doesn't affect you, so you don't need to waste food and supplies on us? You sit comfortably in our nation's capital while those unfortunate enough to live on the Nephite/Lamanite border are wounded, bleeding, and dying. God has warned us that our house should be cleaned inside first, then outside. Unless you all repent and start doing something like sending men and food to our armies so we can keep the lost lands that we have recovered, we will have to bring our troops back to Zarahemla to clean up our government from the inside out. This, of course, will leave the borders with only a few loyal guards to keep the Lamanites away. If I have to come there, I will clean house and even if I find only a spark of freedom lovers among you, I promise I will stir up that spark and lead those who will fight for their freedom against you all who

63-60 BC

are only there for power and authority. Mark my words - we are not afraid to die for our country. The sword of justice is hanging over you. The time is now to decide what you will do. Will you defend your country? I am Moroni, your chief captain. I'm not looking for power but will bring power down if I have to. I'm not looking for glory except giving glory to God. I'm fighting only for the freedom and welfare of my country." signed- Moroni.

Shortly after sending his strong but sincere letter, Moroni received a reply from Pahoran.

"Dear Moroni, even though you may believe otherwise, I am very sad and I do grieve in my soul because of the troubles you have been having. Yes, there are many here who were glad to hear you were having problems. They rebelled against me and the other freemen because we don't believe in kings, but a government of the people, by the people, and for the people. Because they were excellent speakers, they were able to lure many of the people into joining their cause. They have succeeded in controlling all the supplies & have frightened the freemen with threats if they join you. The king-men have taken over the city of Zarahemla. They have already chosen a king who recently wrote to the Lamanite king and have joined forces with him. Can you believe it? This Nephite king has agreed to rule the city for the Lamanites so they can concentrate on the rest of the Nephite nation. By doing this, the Nephite king assumes he will stay on as king over his own people when the Lamanites take over everything. I barely escaped to the land of Gideon with as many free-men like myself as I could find. I have carefully spread the word where we are and more are coming to us every day to defend their country, their freedom and right the wrongs that have been done to us.

You really chewed me out in your letter, but don't worry - I'm not mad. In fact, I'm actually pleased by your sincerity, loyalty, and honesty. I'm not looking for power either. All I want is to get back my judgment seat so I can help keep the rights and liberty of my people. I too believe with all my heart that God wants us to be free. If we have to fight evil, then that's what we'll do, even though we don't want to. If we trust and listen to God, we know that He will show us the way. Moroni, come as quickly as you can with a few men. Leave the rest with captains Lehi and Teancum to continue the fight for liberty in that part of the country. I have already sent them a few supplies to help them out. As soon as you get here, we will go after the king-men and take back the city of Zarahemla so we can regain control of the supplies and send more food to Lehi, Teancum, and their men. Your letter came as an answer to my prayers. I wasn't sure what to do. Uplift Lehi and Teancum. Tell them not to give up - help is on the way. The Lord will take care of them and all who believe." - signed- Pahoran.

When Moroni received his letter, he was excited. He was so glad to know Pahoran wasn't a traitor, but was a faithful believer of God. He shook his head over the people who had been blinded by power. They weren't just chasing out Pahoran. They were also chasing out their own freedoms and their God, but they couldn't see it.

Moroni did exactly as his commander-in-chief requested. He took a few men with him to Gideon and sent the rest to Lehi and Teancum. He carried the flag of liberty high wherever he went. Thousands took up their swords and joined him. By the time he met up with Pahoran, their combined armies were larger than the army of King Pachus, leader of the king-men in Zarahemla. Moroni and Pahoran lead their forces into Zarahemla and into battle. King Pachus was killed and the men who had committed treason were taken prisoner. Order was restored and Pahoran once again was chief judge of Zarahemla.

Moroni sent supplies along with 6,000 fresh soldiers to Helaman to help out in that part of the country. He also sent 6,000 men and supplies to support Lehi and Teancum. Leaving a large troop of soldiers in Zarahemla for protection, Moroni and Pahoran led another large unit of men towards Nephihah to take back that city from the Lamanites. Along the way, they came upon a group of Lamanite soldiers. Any Lamanites not killed in the fight were given the opportunity to take a vow that they would never again fight. There were 4,000 who chose to make this promise. They went to live with others who had also promised never to fight again – former Lamanites known as the people of Ammon, or Anti-Nephi Lehi's.

Moroni's men along with Pahoran and his men continued to Nephihah. When they arrived there, they pitched their tents on the flat lands surrounding the city. Captain Moroni was hoping the Lamanites would come out to fight, but the Lamanites stayed inside the city walls. When night came, Moroni climbed up on top of the city wall to find out where the Lamanite army was. He spotted them on the east side, asleep. Moroni had his men made ropes and ladders so they could all go over the wall, letting themselves down quietly on the west side of the city so the Lamanites wouldn't hear them.

The next morning when the Lamanites woke up, they saw the Nephite army already inside the walls and they ran out of the city through the gate in the wall. The Nephite army was armed and ready for action. They killed or captured most of the Lamanites, while a few escaped to the land of Moroni. Not one Nephite was killed in the early morning surprise attack. Wisely, every Lamanite prisoner asked to join with the people of Ammon, so each one made the promise to never fight again.

The community known as the people of Ammon was growing. It was a good thing many of them became farmers and ranchers to help feed everyone! Everybody benefited. The Nephites didn't have to worry about feeding and guarding prisoners, the people of Ammon had help in their work, and the prisoners gained their lives and freedom. By taking the city of Nephihah, Moroni not only helped to reduce the Lamanite army, but he also freed many of the Nephites who had been taken prisoner, so he enlarged his own army.

Next, Moroni and his men marched to the land of Lehi. When the Lamanites saw Moroni coming, they ran. Moroni's army chased them from city to city until the Lamanites ran into the Nephite army led by Lehi & Teancum who joined in the chase. The Lamanites ran along the seashore until they came to the land of Moroni where they combined with the other Lamanites who had escaped earlier, including King Ammoron.

By the time night came, both armies were exhausted from all the marching, so they pitched their tents. They were all too tired to even think about what to do next – all except Teancum, that is. Seeing King Ammoron again stirred up Teancum's bitter anger so much that he couldn't even sleep, tired as he was. Teancum blamed King Ammoron and his brother Amalickiah for causing this war. While everyone else was asleep, Teancum snuck into the enemy's camp. He tip-toed from pallet to pallet until he found the king and fatally stabbed the king in the chest with his javelin. The king cried out before he died and his men caught Teancum and killed him.

The next morning, Lehi and Moroni were overcome with grief for their friend who had fought so bravely. He was a true patriot and had suffered many times for his courage and beliefs. Moroni led the Nephites against the Lamanites, killing many in their path, allowing only a few to retreat. Those few wisely chose not to fight against the powerful Nephite army, but to run far away instead.

Once again, Moroni strengthened any weak spots in the land, in case the Lamanite army decided to return. Satisfied they had done all they could, Moroni, Helaman and their men returned home.

Lesson 33 Study Questions

1. What happened to the king-men who were captured by Moroni and Pahoran? (Alma 29:9-10)

2. Why were they punished this way? (Alma 29:11)

3. If the Lamanites were warriors, why didn't they want to fight the Nephites outside of Nephihah? (Alma 29:22)

4. Who was Moroni's closest spy that he used against the Lamanites? (Alma 29:23)

Significant Quotations

"And they are strict to remember the Lord their God, from day to day; yea, they do observe to keep his statutes, and his judgments, and his commandments continually; and their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come." ~Alma 26:167

"Can you think to sit upon your thrones, in a state of thoughtless stupor, while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you?" ~Alma 27:20
[EDITOR'S NOTE: WHAT WOULD MORONI THINK OF US TODAY?]

Lesson 34

People in this chapter:	
Moroni=chief captain of Nephite army	Paanchi=son of Pahoran
Helaman1=son of Alma2; led 2,000 boys	Pacumeni=son of Pahoran
Moronihah=son of Moroni	Kishkumen=hit man for the Lamanites
Pahoran=chief judge	Coriantumr=born Nephite, became Lamanite
Shiblon=son of Alma2	Tubaloth=a Lamanite king
Nephi1=4th son of Lehi from Jersalem	Leh2i=Nephite army unit captain
Alma2=spiritual leader	Gadianton=leader of Nephite rebels
Hagoth=Nephite boat builder	Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior
Helaman2=son of Helaman	Nephi2=son of Helaman2
Corianton=3rd son of Alma2	Lehi3=son of Helaman2
Pahoran2=son of Pahorant	

~ *read: Alma 29:53 – Helaman 2:62*

"…Moroni, Helaman and their men did all they could and returned home…

Moroni turned command of his army over to his son Moronihah so he could retire and spend his life in peace. Pahoran took over again as chief judge. Helaman and his brothers answered the call to reorganize the church and once more to preach the word of God. The people prayed continually unto their God giving thanks in all things. And the people of Nephi began to prosper again as the Lord blessed them.

After Helaman went to be with the Lord, his younger brother Shiblon became responsible for the sacred records and holy objects handed down since the time of Nephi the First. Shiblon was a good and holy man, following the ways of his father, Alma II.

Shortly after Moroni died, there seemed to be a time of exploration for the Nephites. A large group of 5,400 men along with their wives and children left Zarahemla to go exploring northward. Soon after they left on foot, a man called Hagoth built several large ships on the west side of the narrow neck of land. Several of these ships carried curious Nephites who also decided to go northward, this time by sea. Only one ship returned. The rest were never heard from again.

Just before Shiblon died, he passed along the sacred items to his nephew Helaman II because Shiblon's brother Corianton had been on one of Hagoth's ships and had never returned to fulfill his duty as keeper of the sacred records.

Helaman must have loved to write almost as much as he loved the words of God. While he had the sacred records, he made several copies and sent them throughout the land so more people could know about them. The only parts he didn't copy were the parts his grandfather Alma II had said were not to go out.

Even as the sacred words were going out to all the Nephites, there were some rebels who decided to go live with the Lamanites and stir them up against the more godly Nephites. Once again, the Lamanite army came with their swords. They attacked the Nephite army led by Moroni's son Moronihah. This time it was over quickly. The Lamanite army was driven back to their own lands and once more the Nephites enjoyed peace in their land, hoping it would last forever.

Before he received a proper burial, three of Pahoran's many sons began fighting about which of

them would take his place as chief judge. Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni each felt they were the right man for the job. The problem was, it divided the Nephites politically into 3 different groups. By a majority vote, Pahoran II became chief judge and governor of the Nephites. Pacumeni went along with the majority and accepted his older brother as their leader. Paanchi and his followers, however, were too upset that and refused to go along with the majority. As Paanchi was about to lead a rebellion, the leaders found out and threw him in jail. He was tried and sentenced to death for starting the rebellion and trying to do away with the liberty of the Nephite people which had been recently fought so hard for.

When Paanchi's followers saw they were going to lose their leader, they rebelled anyway by sending a hit man Kishkumen to kill Pahoran II. When the servants of Pahoran saw he had been murdered, they took off after Kishkumen, but he was too fast for them and escaped. Kishkumen went to the people who had hired him and they all made a promise that they would never tell anyone that it was Kishkumen who had murdered Pahoran II. The servants saw what had happened, but Kishkumen had been wearing a disguise at the time, so they didn't know who had really killed the chief judge. This rebel group continued living and working among the other Nephites, so no one really knew who they were. Some clues were followed and a few of the group were discovered. Those few who had been found out were tried and put to death.

The next vote of the people put the only remaining son of Pahoran who wanted leadership into the judgment seat. Pacumeni became chief judge and governor of the Nephites.

Nothing lasts forever, however, including peace. The Lamanites returned, ready to do battle with the Nephites. This time Coriantumr led the Lamanites. He was a descendant of Zarahemla, so he had been born a Nephite, but he had the head and heart of a Lamanite. He was very big and strong and seemed a natural born leader, which is why King Tubaloth had chosen him to be the general of the Lamanite army.

Because of the recent problems over who should be chief judge, the Nephites weren't thinking about the Lamanites. The attack on the city of Zarahemla ended almost as quickly as it had started. Once the Lamanite army took out the unprepared guards, the city was easily theirs for the taking. When Governor Pacumeni saw what was happening, he tried to escape. Unfortunately, Coriantumr caught and killed Pacumeni by throwing him up against a wall. Coriantumr was certain he had met and defeated the main part of the Nephite army. Encouraged by just how easy this Nephite city had been taken, he next set his sights on the northern city called Bountiful.

The Nephite Commander Moronihah had stationed his main armies around the border, thinking that's where the Lamanites would attack first. He never imagined the Lamanites would attack in the middle of the Nephite nation instead. Once he realized the Lamanites were marching through the center of the land instead of the borders, he sent Lehi with his army to stop them.

When the Lamanites saw they couldn't overpower Lehi's army, they retreated back to the land of Zarahemla – right into the army of Moronihah. This time the tables were turned and it was the Lamanites who were quickly defeated, especially when their General Coriantumr was killed. When the Lamanites realized they were completely surrounded by the powerful Nephite army who was now prepared for battle, they surrendered. All the Lamanite prisoners were peacefully escorted back to their lands.

Once again, the Nephites were left with the question of who should preside over them in the judgment seat. By majority vote, Helaman, the son of Helaman and grandson of Alma II was elected to become chief judge and governor of the Nephites.

Kishkumen the hit man who had killed Pahoran II was still living with the other Nephite rebels. The leader of this rebel group was called Gadianton. He convinced Kishkumen and the others that if

they would get him elected as chief judge, he would see to it they would have places of power over all the Nephites. That was all Kishkumen needed to hear. He snuck out at night and was heading toward Helaman when he came across one of Helaman's servants. The servant gave the sign of the secret society of the rebels and Kishkumen greeted the servant as a fellow rebel. During their talk, Kishkumen told the servant what he planned to do. The servant agreed to take him straight to Helaman. As they walked together, Kishkumen didn't have a clue that he was sharing the rebel's plans with one of Helaman's spies. Once he had learned everything, the spy stabbed Kishkumen to death and ran to tell Helaman all that he had seen, done, and heard regarding the secret society and their plans. Helaman sent out men to find this group and bring them to trial and execution by law. When Gadianton realized that Kishkumen hadn't returned, however, he led his group out of the land of Zarahemla through a secret passage into the wilderness. Even though Helaman's men looked everywhere, they couldn't find a trace of Gadianton's men.

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Several years went by and the people began to bicker and fight amongst themselves. Many of them chose to leave Zarahemla and travel northward to a new land. They walked for a long, long time and finally came upon a place with large waters and many rivers. Some settled in areas called desolate because there were no trees. The people before them had cut down every living tree. So instead, the Nephites used cement for making their houses. Many of the Anti-Nephi Lehi's joined these Nephites in the land northward.

Back in Zarahemla, Helaman II turned out to be a very good leader for the Nephites. He judged by following the laws of the land and more importantly the laws of God. Once more there was peace and prosperity throughout the land. Tens of thousands joined the church through faith, repentance and baptism. It took only a few years for pride to creep into the hearts of the church people. Soon they began to belittle and harass their fellow Christians. The more humble and steadfast Christians prayed and fasted often, growing stronger in their faith of Christ until their souls were filled with joy and compassion.

When Helaman passed away, his older son Nephi was elected to take his place as chief judge and governor. He ruled with Godly judgment as his father had done, but soon the split in the church came to blows. After a lot of fighting and bloodshed, the rebellious ones were finally either killed or driven out of Zarahemla, where they joined up with the Lamanites. They tried to stir up the Lamanites against the more godly Nephites, but the Lamanites in charge didn't want any part of helping these rebels. A couple of years later, more Nephites joined the rebels and finally convinced the Lamanites to go after the Nephites in battle. The rebel Nephites and Lamanites spent an entire year preparing for war. Once again, the Lamanites succeeded in taking over the land of Zarahemla and all the surrounding lands, including the land northward, which was close to the land Bountiful. Moronihah's army immediately fortified land Bountiful and all lands northward. The rebel Nephites and the Lamanite army now controlled all the land southward.

Commander Moronihah and his friends Nephi and Lehi who were the sons of Helaman II, preached and prophesied to the people. They told the Nephites what would happen if they didn't repent. Those who truly did repent of their sins and followed the Lord began to prosper. They realized they had become as bad as the Lamanites and the Lord no longer protected them with his miraculous power. General Moronihah and his armies agreed to help those who repented get back to their homes until the repentant Nephites had regained nearly half of the lands and property. They finally gave up trying to get back the other half of their lands because the Lamanite army was too big to fight against. Moronihah stationed his armies as guards in the lands they had been able to take back.
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

"DID YOU KNOW?"

Nephites Traveling in the West going Northward

Alma 30:5-13

These verses speak of 2 separate migrations from the land of Zarahemla: one apparently by land and the other by sea. Later, the organizer of the sea venture, Hagoth, returned to Zarahemla to lead a second group of people away. Could these colonists have been the ancestors of some of the people of the South Pacific islands?

A missionary once asked some of the older Pacific islanders where they came from. In Maori, they said, "We came from the place where the sweet potato grows wild, where it is not planted, does not have to be cultivated." There is only one place in all the world where the sweet potato grows wild, and that is at the narrow neck of land where Hagoth built his ships. The islanders say they came from several degrees of distance. One degree of distance, a greater degree of distance, and then a far greater degree of distance. *Wairua* in the Maori language means "2 waters" (*wai* meaning water, and *rua* meaning two.) In the Hawaiian language, *Wailua* means "2 waters"; in the Samoan language *Vailua* means "2 waters". Maori scholars say they came from a far distant place, where the spirits are joined. Hagoth might say they came from the joining of 2 waters with a narrow neck of land in between.

WHAT IS AN ISTHMUS?

Isthmus**:** a narrow strip of land connecting two larger land areas. There are 6 isthmi in the world today. 2 are in Central America.

Isthmus of Panama *formerly* **Isthmus of Dar·i·en**

The Isthmus of Panama connects North America and South America, forming the Republic of Panama. It is 480 miles long, and is between 37 miles and 110 miles wide.

Isthmus of Tehuantepec

This narrowest section of Mexico is 137 miles wide at the narrowest point. It represents the shortest distance between the Gulf of Mexico and the Pacific Ocean. The name Tehuantepec comes from the Town of Santo Domingo Tehuantepec and comes from Nahuatl tecuani-tepec ("jaguar hill"). According to the Zarahemla Research Foundation, the Book of Mormon lands are divided into 2 major areas, the Land Southward and the Land Northward. These lands are separated by a Narrow Neck of Land recognized today as the Isthmus of Tehuantepec.

Lesson 34 Study Questions

1. Is there a difference between a "narrow neck of land" and a "narrow passage"? (Alma 30:6 vs. Moroni 1:61)

2. How did Helaman know that the Gadiantons would be mentioned later when he wrote this in the 42nd year of the judges and the Gadiantons didn't reappear until the 67th year of the judges? (Helaman 1:37,51,52; 2:138,142)

3. When the secret vows were made such as in Helaman 2:145-146, whose name did they swear by? (Helaman 1:11)

4. ☺ How do we know the Nephites had locksmiths? (Helaman 1:44)

5. What does the answer in question #4 really mean? (definition, not in scriptures)

6. Who wrote the book of Helaman and who did he blame for wiping out the entire Nephite nation? (Helaman 1:52)

7. What was unusual about General Moronihah? (Helaman 2:47-48)

Significant Quotations

"And so great was the prosperity of the church, and so many the blessings which were poured out upon the people, that even the high priests and the teachers were themselves astonished beyond measure." ~ Helaman 2:23

"And it came to pass that one other ship also did sail forth; and whither she did go we know not." ~Alma 30:12
[EDITOR'S NOTE: EVEN IN BOOK OF MORMON TIMES, SHIPS WERE FEMALE.]

Lesson 35

People in this chapter:	
Moronihah=son of Moroni; army captain	Aminadab=Lamanite soldier guard
Nephi2=son of Helaman2; preacher	Alma2=son of Alma; Nephite missionary
Cezoram=Nephite chief judge	Amulek=friend of Alma2; missionary
Lehi3=son of Helaman2; preacher	Zeezrom=attorney; preacher
Helaman2=spiritual leader; led 2,000 boys	Mulek=son of King Zedekiah from old Israel
Christ=Jesus our Messiah and the Son of God	Kishkumen=hit man for Lamanites
Ammon=son of King Mosiah; missionary	Gadianton=leader of Nephite rebels/robbers

~ *read: Helaman 2:63 – 3:32*

"…Moronihah stationed his armies to guard the land they had taken back…

That same year, Nephi gave up the judgment seat to a man named Cezoram. Once again the majority of the people had become wicked and their laws had become corrupted. Nephi had grown tired of all the evil and decided to give up the judgment seat to preach repentance along with his brother Lehi. Both brothers remembered the words of their father Helaman II when he called them to preach repentance to the people. He had wanted them to be righteous, so he named them after their ancestors who had come from Jerusalem. He also knew their names or family alone could not save their souls. Only Christ could do that. They began preaching in the city Bountiful, then went to Gid, and Mulek and so on until they went through all the Nephi occupied lands.

They left the land of the Nephites and went into the land of Zarahemla to preach to the Lamanites and those rebellious Nephites. Nephi and Lehi preached with such great power and authority that many of the Nephite rebels confessed their sins, repented, were baptized, and returned to the land of the Nephites to see if they could fix the damage they had done to their friends and neighbors. When Nephi and Lehi preached to the Lamanites, 8,000 who were in Zarahemla repented and were baptized.

From Zarahemla, the two missionaries went to the land of Nephi. Unfortunately, an army of Lamanites and Nephite rebels found them and threw them in prison without any food or water. After several days, the Lamanites decided to kill them. How ironic. That's exactly what the Lamanites wanted to do when they threw Ammon and his brothers into this very same prison.

When the group went to get the men, however, they saw that Nephi & Lehi were surrounded by a very tall ring of fire. The army couldn't get to the missionaries without getting burned. Nephi & Lehi were just fine, of course, so they told the guards, "Don't be afraid! God has shown you this miracle to tell you not to touch us, let alone try to kill us." When they said this, there was an earthquake under the jail and the prison walls shook as if they were going to fall down. All of a sudden, a cloud of darkness fell over all the soldiers who were in the prison and they were very, very afraid. A voice above the cloud of darkness spoke softly to the army, "Repent and do not try to destroy my servants whom I sent to tell you good news." Even though the voice was soft and not booming like thunder, the earth below the prison shook again and the walls trembled so much, it was a wonder they were still standing. Again, the voice spoke, "Repent for the kingdom of heaven is coming. Do not try to destroy my servants anymore." For a third time, the ground and walls

31-23 BC

shook. The voice spoke to them a third time. The things that were said were so miraculous, the words could not be repeated by men. This time when the ground and walls shook, it seemed as if the earth itself would split in two. The Lamanites couldn't move, because the cloud of darkness over them put such fear into them.

One of the soldiers named Aminadab had been born a Nephite and had been baptized into the church of God when he was younger. Aminadab looked through the cloud of darkness and saw the glowing faces of Nephi & Lehi. As they looked up to heaven, they seemed to be speaking to someone. Pointing his finger, Aminadab cried, "Look!" and power was given to the other soldiers so they could turn and see the faces of Nephi & Lehi also. The other soldiers asked Aminadab what was going on. He told them the missionaries were talking to the angels of God. Someone asked, "What can we do to make this cloud of darkness go away?" Aminadab told them they had to repent to the voice who had spoken to them a few minutes ago. It was the voice of God and they must have faith in Christ." They were all familiar with Christ because Alma, Amulek, and Zeezrom had taught them about Him long ago. The hardened soldiers immediately began to cry unto the voice. After a time, they looked around, and realized that the cloud was gone and they too were circled by a tall ring of fire and Nephi & Lehi were with them. Wait a minute! They were actually with Nephi & Lehi inside a tall column of flames! The fire wasn't burning them or even the prison walls, but it was certainly real! The soldiers were overcome with happiness and the glory of God. The Holy Spirit of God came down from heaven and entered their hearts and filled them as if with fire so they could speak marvelous words. Once again the voice whispered to them saying, "Peace be unto you because of your faith in my beloved Son who has been with me since the beginning of time." When they looked up to see where the voice came from, they saw heaven open and angels came down and ministered to them. There were 300 men there that day. They were told to leave and never doubt what had happened to them that day. They went throughout the lands ministering to the people and telling the people what they had seen and heard. Most of the Lamanites who heard them were convinced and laid down the weapons, hatred, and traditions they had been taught for generations. They gave the Nephites back their lands. That's what the power of just two can do…if they have the Lord with them.

Things were beginning to turn around now. The Lamanites had become a righteous people, more righteous and faithful in fact, than the Nephites. Many of the Nephites had become unbelievably wicked. They rejected God's word as it came to them through preaching and prophesying. Those who remained faithful in the church, however, rejoiced when they heard the Lamanites had been converted and a church had been established in the land of the Lamanites. Many of the Lamanites came to Zarahemla to share their testimonies. Many Lamanites preached with great power and authority and caused many Nephites to again become humble followers of God and Christ His Son. Nephi & Lehi and many of the Lamanites went to the northern lands to successfully preach repentance to the Nephites.

Soon there was peace over all the lands everywhere. The Nephites felt free to go wherever they wanted, including Lamanite territory. Likewise, the Lamanites freely roamed throughout Nephite lands. There were no borders. They lived peacefully together wherever they chose, just as God had intended all mankind to do. The southern lands became known as the land of Lehi and the northern lands were called the land of Mulek. Mulek was the only prince who had escaped Jerusalem when his father King Zedekiah had been killed along with all his family.

Soon the people everywhere began to prosper and become rich, both in silver, gold, and all kinds of precious metals, as well as rich in food supplies and animals.

Something happened the next year, however. The chief judge Cezoram was mysteriously murdered. His son was voted to take his place as chief judge, but he too was murdered by a person or persons unknown. Robbing and killing to get the other person's riches happened more and more. The unsolved crimes were all the work of one group which had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. They were known as the Gadianton Robbers. Many of this group lived among the Nephites, but even more lived among the Lamanites. When the Lamanites discovered the robbers living among them, they tried every means to destroy them. satan, however, chose to work on the Nephites. He stirred up many of them they actually joined the band of robbers. They took the vows to always protect one another, no matter what. They created secret signs and passwords so they could tell who their fellow members were. If someone were to tell, he would be tried and punished – not according to the laws of the land, but according to the laws of the Gadiantons.

Alma the Younger had warned his son Helaman about these secret oaths and commanded that these things not be allowed because they would bring down the destruction of the entire race of people. These secret rituals had nothing to do with the sacred records and holy items brought from Jerusalem and handed down through the years. satan himself put those thoughts, vows, rituals, and works of darkness in the mind of Gadianton as he had to so many others throughout time so that his wicked ways could continue throughout all the world.

Many of the Nephites grew away from the Lord and into wickedness, while the Lamanites increased greatly in their knowledge and walks with God. The Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites because of the hardness of their hearts, while the Lord poured out His Spirit on the Lamanites because of their willingness to believe in Him and follow His ways. The Lamanites began to hunt down the robbers among them and preached the word of God to them. By doing this, they basically destroyed the Gadianton Robbers band living among the Lamanites.

On the other hand, the more wicked of the Nephites seemed to support the robbers. This support spread throughout the land until it tempted and led astray the more righteous until they too joined this secret society. Soon, the Gadianton Robbers were in charge of the government. As a nation, they turned their backs on the poor, the gentle innocents, and humble followers of God. It was a sorry time for the Nephite nation.

With a heavy heart, Nephi returned to Zarahemla his homeland from the northern lands where he had been preaching and prophesying along with his brother Lehi. The northern people refused to listen to him, let alone open their hearts to what he was saying to see if his words were true. What greeted Nephi upon his return was even worse. He couldn't believe the wickedness of the people in his own city. They had more run of the town. They had charge of the government too. There was no justice. The righteous were attacked while the wicked went unpunished because of who and what they were – and simply because they could. Nephi was just sick about it. He went to the tower in his garden to pray to the Lord about the situation of his people. Someone walking down the road passed by the garden and saw Nephi crying in the tower. He told everyone he could about what he had seen. The people from all over came running to find out what was going on. When Nephi had finished and stood up, he saw all the people gathered in his garden. "What are you doing here? I came here to pour out my heart to the Lord because I'm torn up about the wickedness here. How could you let the devil get such a hold on you? You must repent! You have hardened your hearts against God! <u>You</u> are the ones who caused God to get angry and turn against you. It's your own fault. If you don't repent, He will scatter you from the city and you will be food for the wild beasts. You will be destroyed from the face of the earth. It's your choice. There were some judges in the crowd who happened to be a part of the secret society, and they were angry at Nephi.

Lesson 35 Study Questions

1. What was the purpose of this secret society? (Helaman 2:165; 3:22)

DID YOU KNOW? Mulek was from the tribe of Judah (Helaman 2:129; 3:56)

Significant Quotations

"O remember, remember, my sons, the words which King Benjamin spake unto his people; yea, remember that there is no other way nor means whereby man can be saved, only through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ, who shall come; yea, remember that he cometh to redeem the world." ~ Helaman 2:71

"And it came to pass when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder; neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but behold, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul." ~ Helaman 2:94

"And behold the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they were filled as if with fire; and they could speak forth marvelous words."
~ Helaman 2:111

Lesson 36

People in this chapter:	
Nephi2=son of Helaman2; preacher	Lehi3=son of Helaman2; preacher
Seezoram=chief judge after chief judge Cezoram	Samuel=Lamanite prophet to Nephites
Seantum=brother of Seezrom	Jesus=Christ our Messiah and Savior

~ *read: Helaman 3:32 – 5:126*

"…Nephi said don't follow satan, but it's your choice. This made the judges mad…

Nephi spoke plainly against their secret society, but the judges who were members of the secret society were afraid what the people would do if they harmed Nephi, so they tried to stir up the people against Nephi. Some of the people began to listen to Nephi's warnings to repent. They listened as Nephi prophesied about the murder of their chief judge, Seezoram. Five of the men there ran to the judgment seat to check on the chief judge. They didn't believe they would actually find anyone murdered, but they wanted to see for themselves. Sure enough, they found the chief judge exactly as Nephi had said – lying dead in a pool of his own blood. These five now believed all the things Nephi had been telling them. In fact, they were so amazed, they fainted. Later, other people came by and saw the men who had fainted and the chief judge who had been murdered and figured these men were the murderers and God had struck them down for it. They tied up the five men and threw them into prison. The judges who belonged to the secret society asked about the five men who had gone to check on the chief judge. The people said they didn't know anything about those five men, but there were five men held in prison for the murder of the chief judge. The judges had the five brought before them and asked the five what had happened. The five men told the judges all that they had seen.

The judges told all the people gathered, "Nephi must have gotten someone to kill the judge, then pretend to prophesy to us about it in order to make himself look big and convert us. Well, it won't work. Release the five innocent men and grab Nephi and tie him up, then bring him to us." The judges questioned Nephi, but he gave them another prophesy in response. He told them, "Go to Seantum's house. He is the brother of the murdered chief judge. Ask him if he killed his brother Seezoram. He will deny it, of course, but look at his coat. You will find blood stains on it. Ask him again if he killed his brother and you will be able to look at him and tell he is guilty. He will confess to you that he did kill his brother. He will also tell you that I, Nephi, had nothing to do with it. After talking to him, you will know that I am completely innocent of the crime and that the Lord has sent me to preach to you." Of course everything happened just the way Nephi said it would. Later, when Nephi was alone, the Lord told him that he was pleased because of his faith and his works. He told Nephi that Nephi would have the power to strike the earth with droughts and plagues, depending on how wicked the people were. He also commanded Nephi to preach repentance and told Nephi what would happen if the people did not repent. Nephi, of course, didn't even go home to rest or freshen up. He immediately began telling the people to repent and warned them they would be completely destroyed if they chose not to repent. Unfortunately, the hearts of the people remained hardened and they turned their backs on the Lord – and on Nephi.

Wars and fights began springing up throughout the Nephite nation. The trouble makers who started all the fighting belonged to the secret society of Gadianton robbers. By now, Nephi had had

enough. He prayed to the Lord to spare the people so they would not all die by the sword, but instead to please let there be a famine so they would have a chance to remember what the Lord had said and repent before it was too late. Sure enough, the fighting came to an end when the rain stopped and the crops dried up. Thousands starved to death before the people remembered the words of Nephi. They begged him to go to the Lord for them so the drought would end. When Nephi realized the people were sincere and were really sorry for what they had done, he cried to the Lord, asking for forgiveness on their behalf. He told the Lord that the people had completely wiped out the Gadianton robbers. Their secret plans would tempt the world no more. And the Lord allowed the rain to cleanse and restore the earth once more. The people recognized where their blessings came from and gave God the glory. The Nephites began to prosper once again. Most of the Nephites and Lamanites now belonged to the church. Both Nephi and his brother Lehi led the people to new spiritual heights and peace began to spread through all the land.

Just a couple of years later, however, the Nephites who had rebelled and gone to live with the Lamanites started stirring up the rebellious Lamanites again. They would rob and murder the Nephites, then retreat back into secret places in the mountains. They recruited other rebels and the group increased daily. They found out all the secret plans of Gadianton, so a new band of Gadianton robbers was created. They went throughout the entire country killing and stealing wherever and whenever they chose. The righteous people fought back by sending an army of strong men to find these robbers and destroy them. Many of the robbers were killed, but there were too many to get them all. The robbers became more daring – they captured many of the righteous Nephites, especially the women and children and brought them back to the wilderness with them. The frustrated Nephites left behind began to forget the Lord and turn away from Him, to grow stronger in their own pride. Soon they were just as wicked as the robbers.

There was a Lamanite living in the land of Zarahemla who felt a strong urging to preach repentance to the Nephites. His name was Samuel. The wicked Nephites, however, didn't want to hear the word "repent" and threw him out of their city. Just as he was heading back to his own land, the Lord spoke to Samuel and told him to go back and this time prophesy to the Nephites living in Zarahemla. The Lord told him not to worry, that He would give Samuel the words to say when it was time. The people wouldn't even let Samuel through the city gates. Samuel knew the Lord had a message for this group of people, though, so he climbed up on the tall, fortified city walls and prophesied to the people at the top of his lungs. Sure enough, as he opened his mouth to speak, the Lord gave him the words to say.

"Your days of probation are over. Complete destruction is coming and nothing can save you if you don't repent and believe on the Lord. Jesus Christ will soon come to earth and will suffer many things and be murdered for the sake of the people. An angel of God told me this, and when I heard it, I was overflowing with joy that Jesus Christ himself would allow these things to happen so that we might live with Him eternally. The angel also told me to share this good news with you, but you weren't interested and threw me out of the city. The Lord says unless you repent, He will withdraw His Spirit from you and will turn the Lamanites against you. In 400 years, descendants of your enemies will witness your complete destruction. You will be struck down by the sword, famine and plagues until every single one of you is wiped off the face of the earth. The only thing that will save this people is if you turn your hearts to the Lord today. If it weren't for the righteous people living in this city right now, the Lord would send down fire from heaven and destroy the great cities throughout this country. A curse will come upon this land.* The robberies will become so bad, you

**Mormon 1:19*

will need to bury your riches so they don't get stolen. Only the righteous who bury their treasures will be able to get them back – they will slip right out of your grasp. Even if you don't bury your riches, you won't be able to save them for yourself. You are cursed because of your riches. In fact, your riches are even cursed because your heart is set upon them and not God. You don't remember to thank the Lord for your blessings, which include your wealth. You are worse than the old ones from the land of our fathers. You kill the prophets because they say the things you need to hear instead of what you want to hear." .

"Behold, I say unto you that five years from now, Jesus Christ himself will come to the earth and save all those who believe on His name. The night before He is born, there will be great lights in the sky. They will be so bright that when night comes, it will still be light outside. You will see the sun set and rise the next morning, but it will be as bright as noon all through the night. Also, there will be a new star in the sky like you've never seen before. Repent now that you may be forgiven of your sins and have everlasting life. The Lord through an angel has commanded that I tell you these things. I know you don't want to listen to me because I'm a Lamanite, but the words I speak are straight from the Lord God on high. He wants you to know about His Son Jesus Christ coming to earth – both the time and the reason that Christ is coming."

"I will even give you another sign. As sure as Jesus Christ is born, He must also die so that the plan of salvation may be complete. His death will bring about the resurrection and rescue of all who believe on Him, that they may able to come into God's presence. Those who don't repent will be thrown into the eternal fire and they will experience a spiritual death because they will be separated forever from anything righteous. The sign is this: on the day Christ is killed, the sun, moon & stars will refuse to shine or give light of any kind. For three whole days, there will be no light in this land until he rises from the dead. At the exact time he dies, there will be thunder and lightning and earthquakes here for many hours. Where the earth is now 1 solid piece, after the earthquakes, there will be cracks and crevices both on the land and beneath. Many mountains will crumble into the valleys. Many valleys will be pushed up to form tall mountains. Cities will be destroyed, graves will even open up and many of the saints will appear to people. Even more amazing things will happen so there will be no reason for anyone to doubt if what I say has really happened. God wants all to believe, repent, and be saved, so none may have to receive the righteous judgment and eternal punishment. There will be no place where you can hide from God's judgment. You people of Nephi have been chosen by God. He disciplines you because He loves you. Repent and come back into the fold of God." *FFFTT FFFTT FFFTT Nephite arrows came zinging straight at Samuel's heart as he spoke.*

But the Holy Spirit was with Samuel the Lamanite, so the arrows and stones the crowd threw never touched him. Many of the ones who had thrown things at him were so amazed that he couldn't be hit, they finally believed the things he had been telling them and ran to find Nephi, the Nephite prophet so they could tell him they had repented and ask to be baptized.

Nephi and Lehi were busy preaching, prophesying, baptizing and working miracles among the people. They also knew the time was short before Christ would come to earth and they told the people who believed some of the things that would happen before this blessed birth took place.

Most of the Nephites who heard Samuel did not believe him. When they saw nothing they threw was hitting him, they complained to the soldiers to take him away and tie him up because the power of the devil was in him. Just as the soldiers stepped forward to grab him, he jumped down from the wall where he had been preaching and got away. With a heavy heart, Samuel went back to the Lamanites, where he preached and prophesied to his own people. Several years passed and many of the signs and miracles prophesied about began to be seen. Soon angels were seen telling some of the wise men about the exciting news that was to happen.

Lesson 36 Study Questions

1. What did Nephi use to level mountains? Had he invented dynamite? How did he acquire this skill? (Helaman 3:122; 115-117)

2. How did Nephi get out of going to prison? (Helaman 3:129)

3. What 2 things were prophesied would happen in Zarahemla the day Christ was born in Bethlehem? CAUTION! READ CAREFULLY! (Helaman 5:56, 63)

4. What are tidings as mentioned in Helaman 5:126?

Significant Quotations

"But it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi, and many of their brethren, who knew concerning the true points of doctrine, having many revelations daily, therefore they did preach unto the people, insomuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year." ~ Helaman 4:29

"And thus according to his word, the earth goeth back, and it appeareth unto man that the sun standeth still: yea, and behold, this is so; for sure it is the earth that moveth, and not the sun." ~ Helaman 4:62 [GALILEO SHOULD HAVE ASKED THE NEPHITES ABOUT THIS TOPIC!]

Lesson 37

People in this chapter:	
Son of God=Jesus Christ our Messiah	Lachoneus=chief judge/governor of Nephites
Lehi1=Jewish prophet from Jerusalem	Samuel=Lamanite prophet foretold Jesus' birth
Sariah=wife of Lehi from Jerusalem	Nephi2=son of Helaman2; preacher
Laman1=1st son of Lehi from Jerusalem	Nephi3=son of Nephi2; preacher
Lemuel=2nd son of Lehi from Jerusalem	Giddianhi=leader of Gadianton robbers
Sam=3rd son of Lehi from Jerusalem	Gidgiddoni=spiritual leader/commander of army
Nephi1=4th son of Lehi from Jerusalem	Zemnarihah=next leader of Gadianton robbers

~ *read: Helaman 5:127 – 3 Nephi 2:71*

"…Angels were seen telling about the exciting news that was about to happen…

. Despite all this, the hearts of the majority of the Nephites and Lamanites became even more hardened. They didn't believe the signs and miracles saying they were lucky guesses and coincidence, but certainly not prophesies come true. They didn't believe the Son of God would come down to earth and live among the people. "So, where is he? Why would he appear only in Jerusalem and not in their land too? Why should we listen to the stupid traditions of our ancestors about something we can't even witness with our own eyes? These prophets are trying to keep us like slaves so that we have to listen to them and depend on them for everything. They are trying to keep us ignorant so we'll give up our lives and live the way they want us to." The devil had them eating right out of his hand.

It had been 600 years since Lehi had left Jerusalem with his wife Sariah and his sons Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and Nephi. Lachoneus was now the chief judge and governor. The people were growing more restless, saying, "the time for the prophesies of Samuel the Lamanite has come and gone and nothing has happened. You believers have lived your lives and shown your faith in vain." It made the believers sad to think the signs might not come true, but they still watched every day for that time when the darkness would not come at night, so a day and a night and a day would all be light as if it were 1 long day.

The non-believers decided the time had come and if this sign about no darkness prophesied by Samuel didn't come true by the date *they set*, all the believers would be killed so they wouldn't have to listen or think about these prophesies anymore. When Nephi's son Nephi saw how wicked his people had become, he was very disappointed. He went off to be alone and pray. He asked God to be mindful of the faithful ones who were about to be killed. The Lord told him not to worry. Tonight was the very night when there would be no darkness. The time for the sign was now! Christ Jesus would be born tomorrow to complete all the prophesies from all the holy prophets from the beginning of time.

That evening as the sun was setting, a strange thing happened - it didn't get dark at all! It wasn't even like dusk or twilight, but it was just as bright as mid-day outside. There was no denying it now – the signs were true. All the non-believers fell down as if they were dead because they had heard the words all right – they had just not believed them. They also realized what they had almost done to the faithful ones who did believe in the signs. They were also afraid because of their sins and because they hadn't believed the words of God's holy men. They stayed up all night

watching, waiting, hoping darkness was just late in coming on. They even saw the new star that was told would appear for the first time in the sky. They watched until they saw the sun rise the next morning and knew it was the next day. Everyone knew that today was the day the Lord would be born on the other side of the land of Israel.

The devil did his very best and a few of the people listened to the lies that he whispered in their ears, but most of the people believed in the miracles and were converted to the Lord. Nephi II went through the land baptizing all those who repented. Soon there was peace in the land again. Even those who felt they no longer had to follow the Law of Moses since Christ had been born, saw their mistakes and converted.

Meanwhile, the Gadianton robbers were still going strong. They continued to rob and murder whoever, whenever and wherever they chose. They even increased in number when some of the Nephites began to rebel and ran to the mountains to join this famous band of thieves. This left the faithful Nephites heartbroken, because they knew many of the ones who had left. The faithful Lamanites were also upset because some of the young people who left were Lamanites that had listened to the lies and were easily convinced to join the Gadiantons.

By the next generation, many of the Nephites and Lamanites forgot about the signs and miracles they had seen and heard. They became hardened and blinded to the ways of God, and only nine years had passed since they had been given the sign about the birth of Christ.

In just a few short years, the Gadianton robbers had caused so much death and destruction, the remaining Nephites and Lamanites decided to unite and fight against the Gadianton robbers. Once again the call for liberty caused the faithful to pick up their weapons of war for protection. An interesting thing happened to all the faithful Lamanites who joined the Nephites; their curse was taken away and their skin became white just like the Nephites.

Lachoneus governor of the Nephites, received a letter from the Gadianton leader:

"I must admire your dedication for what you feel is right. You all are doing so well, it's almost as if the hand of God is helping you. It's just too bad that you foolishly believe you can win when you are so terribly outnumbered. My men are just waiting for one word from me to destroy you all. I am thinking only of your welfare when I write this. I wish you all would surrender instead of dying by our swords. Join us and become our brothers, living like we do – not our slaves, but partners in everything. If you agree to this, and swear to it with an oath, you will not be destroyed. But if you do not do this, I swear to you next month I will send my armies to come down on you and they will kill every single one of you. I am Giddianhi, governor of the secret society of Gadianton. Our society has done good works since ancient times. I am writing to you Lachoneus, in the hope that you will give up your land and belongings without any blood being shed so my people can re-claim their rights and government which you took from them. Make no mistake – I will right what has been done wrong to my people."

Lachoneus couldn't believe his eyes when he read the letter. That was pretty bold to demand all the Nephite land be just handed over to the Gadiantons. Threatening the people didn't set well either, especially when he mentioned they were righting wrongs that had been done to the robbers when the Gadiantons were the ones who had done wrong in the first place. Lachoneus was an honest and brave man and this letter didn't scare him. He was also a wise and holy man and told his people to pray to God for strength they would need later on and he also reminded them to repent of their sins. He then spread the word to bring all the women, children, animals, and worldly goods including food & seeds, to the center of Zarahemla. There they would build a fort around everything and everyone so all would be safe and protected. A 24-hour guard was stationed around the fort. The chief commander of the Nephite/Lamanite army at this time was Gidgiddoni. He was

also a great spiritual leader, prophet and chief judge. The people asked Gidgiddoni to pray that God would lead them up into the mountains so they could kill the Gadianton robbers in their land instead of bringing the fight here. Gidgiddoni refused saying, "if we went up into the mountains, the Lord would deliver us to the robbers instead of the other way around. No, we will wait until they come to us here in our land, then the Lord will deliver them into our hands."

The people gathered by the thousands to Zarahemla. Before they settled in, though, they repented of their sins as Lachoneus had instructed. They all lived together as one big group. They prayed that God would help them succeed when the time came. Gidgiddoni showed them how to make weapons and armor.

Soon the armies of robbers came down from their secret places in the mountains. They were armed and ready to do battle. They started by taking over the cities which had been deserted by the Nephites. It seems, however, there were no wild beasts or animals to be found in the land. Someone had taken all the animals and grains from Nephite territory, leaving the Gadiantons with nothing to eat. They would have to risk open war if they wanted the Nephites' supplies and the Nephites had enough provisions to last through a seven-year standoff.

Up to this point, the Gadianton robbers had been raiding a few unsuspecting and unprepared Nephites at a time. Now, however, they would have to fight out in the open if they wanted any of the Nephites' food. They couldn't grow their own food because they were afraid the Nephites would take revenge and kill them in the fields. Giddianhi, leader of the Gadianton robbers, prepared the starving men for battle. They wore loin cloths of lamb skin, covered themselves in blood, shaved their heads, and put on helmets – they wanted to strike terror in the hearts of the Nephites!

When the Nephites saw the Gadianton robbers coming towards them, they fell down and prayed to God for protection. When the robber warriors saw the Nephites falling down, they started whooping and hollering because they assumed the Nephites were falling down from fright.

When the warriors got close, the Nephites met them with strength given to them by God. The battle that took place was the worse that had ever been fought on this soil. Despite the threats and warnings the warriors made, the Nephites started winning. The warriors saw this and began retreating. Gidgiddoni, leader of the Nephite army called the army to run after the retreating robber warriors. Gidgiddoni spread the word to take no prisoners. All robber warriors were to be killed where they were found. The chase was on! They followed the warriors to the borders of the wilderness. Giddianhi, leader of the warriors was so tired that he began to slow down. It didn't take long before the Nephite soldiers caught up with him and killed General Giddianhi. Since the warriors no longer had a leader, the Nephite soldiers returned safely to their fort.

Two short years later the Gadianton robber warriors led by a new leader Zemnarihah returned to the Nephite fort and surrounded it. The warriors didn't attack the fort, but decided to change it into a prison by not allowing the Nephite people to leave and return to their lands. Little did the warriors know, this couldn't have worked out better for the Nephites than if they had planned it! The Nephites still had plenty of supplies left and the robbers had no stock pile of food or supplies except what meat they got from the wild animals they had killed earlier in the wilderness. Even the wild animals had become scarce though, and the robbers were getting weak from hunger. Every day the Nephites went outside the fort and fought with the warriors, killing tens of thousands at a time. Zemnarihah finally realized his plan wasn't working the way he had hoped and called for retreat to the northern lands.

Lesson 37 Study Questions

1. What happened to Helaman's son Nephi? (3 Nephi 1:2-3)

2. What were the 3 ways the Nephites kept track of time? (3 Nephi 1:43-45)

3. What are bucklers as mentioned in 3 Nephi 2:38?

4. ☺ Who was Sally that was mentioned in 3 Nephi 2:39? Was she a warrior?

5. What were the 2 choices the Gadiantons found acceptable to make a living? (3 Nephi 2:46)

6. What choice was unacceptable to the Gadiantons and why? (3 Nephi 2:47)

7. ☺ How do we know the Gadianton robbers did sewing? (3 Nephi 2:64)

8. How many Gadianton robbers were killed every day by the Nephites while the Gadiantons surrounded the fort? (3 Nephi 2:69)

9. ☺ What did the Gadianton leader Zemnarihah draw and why did the people back away from it? (3 Nephi 2:70)

Significant Quotations

"And there were a great many thousand people who were called Nephites, who did gather themselves together. And they did dwell in one land, and in one body..."
~ 3 Nephi 2:33, 35

"And the Nephites being in one body, and having so great a number, and having reserved for themselves provisions that they might subsist for the space of 7 years."
~ 3 Nephi 2:44 [HOW PREPARED ARE WE?]

Lesson 38

People in this chapter:	
Gidgiddoni=Nephite army captain	Jacob=Nephite king of secret group
Lachoneus=Nephite chief judge	Nephi3=son of Nephi2 the preacher; preacher
Lachoneus2=son of Lachoneus; governor	Timothy=son of Nephi2 the preacher; preacher
Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior	Samuel=Lamanite prophet; foretold Christ's death

~ *read: 3 Nephi 2:72 – 4:34*

"…The leader of Gadianton robbers saw his plan wasn't working so he called for retreat…

Knowing the warriors had nothing left to do but retreat, the Nephite Captain Gidgiddoni sent some of his soldiers out late one night to block off the warriors' pathway so they couldn't retreat. The next morning when the robbers began marching toward the northern land, they quickly realized they were trapped with Nephite soldiers in front of them and Nephite soldiers behind them. Some of the robber warriors who had chosen a southern route quickly found out the same thing. The Nephite soldiers seemed to be everywhere! Thousands of Gadianton robber warriors surrendered to the Nephites. Those who refused to surrender were killed. The warrior leader Zemnarihah was hanged from the top of the highest tree. Afterwards, the Nephites cut the hanging tree down and began singing praises to God for His protection. They wanted nothing to come between them and their God. That day they renewed their vows to continue to faithfully serve the Lord their God. What about the warriors who had surrendered and been taken prisoners? The Nephites preached to them while they were in prison. Those who repented and promised to never kill again were released from jail. Those who didn't promise not to kill, but instead threatened the Nephites, were executed as the law demands. Surely this would bring an end to the Gadianton robbers and their secret doings. The Nephites decided to return home to their own lands. They still had provisions left, so they took their food as well as their gold, silver, and belongings. The prisoners who had previously been Gadianton robbers before they had repented were given land so they could work it and provide for themselves. Many of the prisoners had been born Lamanites, so they were given the choice to stay in Lamanite country with their own land if they wanted. The Nephite prisoners were given land in Nephite country if that is what they chose. New laws of justice and equality were created to help keep the peace which was settling over the land like a fine blanket. Thanks to a little help from Captain Gidgiddoni and Chief Judge Lachoneus, order had been restored. Repairs began in the cities while whole new cities started popping up. Pretty soon roads and highways were laid, making it easy to go from place to place.

Unfortunately, it didn't take long before pride raised its snobbish head. People began to brag about how rich they were. Soon people were discriminated against, simply for being poor. There were two separate classes of society – the "haves" and the "have nots". The privileged rich were able to have the best of everything, including formal learning, but the poor had no chance for schooling. There was so much unfairness throughout the land that it finally affected even the church. Churches everywhere disbanded except a few converted Lamanites who remained faithful to keeping the commandments of God. Once the devil got a foot hold, it didn't take long to have the people under his control. Both the lands northward and the lands southward were in a terrible state of wickedness. They didn't sin out of ignorance, however, because they knew God's laws. Instead, they purposely rebelled against God.

19-34 AD

All this was happening while Lachoneus 2, son of Lachoneus was governor over the land. At the same time, there were holy men who boldly began preaching and testifying of the sins of the people, of the desire of the Lord to redeem His people, and of the death, suffering and resurrection of Christ. Many of the people, which included the chief judges, former high priests, and lawyers, didn't want to hear this and grew furious over the words of these holy men.

The law clearly stated that no single lawyer, judge or high priest had the power to condemn anyone to death without the governor's signature. Ignoring this law, however, many of the judges secretly had the holy men killed. The governor found out about their deaths only after the men had already died. Friends or family members of the holy men complained to governor Lachoneus II who lived in Zarahemla because the judges themselves weren't keeping the law. Soon the unlawful judges were called before Lachoneus. All their families and friends, including the former high priests and lawyers united to destroy the holy men and save the unlawful judges from punishment by forming a secret group with secret vows. They decided the best way to save the unlawful judges was to kill the governor and put a king in charge of the land. They weren't successful in crowning a king over all the land, but they did murder the governor and chief judge Lachoneus II. This single act tore apart the entire government structure. With no government in place, the people divided themselves into tribes of families and friends, which made each tribe fairly large. Each tribe appointed its own leader, taking care of only their own tribe and setting up their own laws for their tribe.

The secret group of unlawful judges, former high priests and lawyers, along with their families and friends got together and appointed a man named Jacob to be their king. While he wasn't king over all the land, he was king over this secret group. Jacob was chosen because he had been one of the loudest speakers against the holy men.

The tribal people were united in one sense only – they all hated the secret group of Jacobites because the Jacobites had destroyed the government. Recognizing the hatred of the tribal people for his small group, Jacob decided to take his band of people to the northern lands. He assured his people that others would come and join them in time. Once they grew in numbers, they could come back and fight the tribal people for the land. The small secret group left quickly before anyone could stop them.

With the secret group of Jacobites gone, the tribal people agreed that they wouldn't fight or go against the other tribes, but that was about all they had in common. Each tribe still had their own laws and way of governing themselves. Despite this unusual type of peace, the hearts of the people were still hardened against God. They stoned the holy men and threw them out from their land.

Meanwhile, Nephi had been having experiences of a different kind. He had been visited by angels and had heard the voice of God speaking to him. He had been an eye witness to holy visions and now he was an eye witness to the wickedness of his people. He grieved for his people, so he began to boldly preach of repentance and faith on Jesus Christ. He also ministered to the people with great power and authority from God. The people ignored what he was saying, mostly because they couldn't argue with him, since he was right. What really made them mad was that he had greater power than they did. In Jesus' name he cast out devils and unclean spirits; he even raised his brother Timothy from the dead after these people had stoned him to death.

After a year or so of Nephi's continual preaching and testifying, a handful began to listen and were converted to the Lord through repentance and baptism. They too began to testify to all who would listen. Many who had been healed also testified of God's Spirit being with them. Soon Nephi ordained men to assist him in preaching and baptizing. Within a short time, many more repented and were baptized.

Soon the people remembered the words of Samuel the great Lamanite prophet regarding the death of Jesus Christ and the signs that would be seen. They knew it was time. One of the signs would be three days of total darkness everywhere across this land. Why hadn't they seen three days and nights without sunlight? Soon many of the people began to doubt. Fights broke out among the people as to whether or not these things would actually happen or not.

Then a huge thunderstorm came up. The thunder was so strong and the earth shook so hard from it that it felt like an earthquake and it seemed like the ground was actually breaking apart from all the quaking. Then the lightning started in more fierce than had ever been seen before. The city of Zarahemla caught fire and burnt to the ground from the lightning strikes. The city of Moroni broke apart and sank into the sea, drowning all the people living there. A mountain pushed up through the ground covering up what had once been the city of Moronihah a flat city located on the plains. The destruction southward was unbelievable, but it was very true. The destruction northward was even greater. The whole landscape of the countryside changed during this storm which brought damaging tornadoes and earthquakes with its destructive thunder and lightning.

Life as the Nephites and Lamanites knew it had changed forever in the space of just three hours. Highways were broken apart. Level roads were torn up. Smooth, flat lands became rough and rugged country. Many large cities sank into the sea or burned up completely. Some of the buildings shook so badly they fell down like toy blocks. Many of the people died, leaving the land empty and worthless. A few cities survived, but they were badly damaged and most of their people died from buildings and boulders falling, to tremendous fires which raged out of control, to tornadoes, to the ground pushing up to form hills and mountains. There was no part in the promised land that wasn't affected by this storm of storms.

The storm finally ended and darkness settled over the land. It was such a thick darkness, you could actually feel it. For the first time in the history of mankind, there was complete and utter blackness. Candles, torches, or fires wouldn't ignite – even if you had extremely dry kindling and firewood. Something or someone had sucked out the light from this side of the world. There was no sunlight, moonlight, twinkling stars or glimmers of destructive fires anywhere to be seen. That's how heavy this blanket of darkness was upon the land. This blackness continued for three days and nights. Even though you couldn't see a thing, not even your own hand in front of your face, you could still hear perfectly well. All around people were crying, howling, mourning and groaning because of the scary darkness and the awful destruction that they had seen right before the darkness came. Some of the people who were crying said, "Oh, we wish we had repented. If we had, we could have saved our families and friends from the terrible destruction in the wonderful city of Zarahemla." Another group was crying, "Oh, if we had only repented and not killed the prophets, then our women and children would have been spared and not buried alive when the city of Moronihah collapsed."Suddenly, a voice was heard throughout the land: "Wo…wo…wo…unto this people. Wo unto the inhabitants of the whole earth – <u>unless</u> you repent! The devil and his angels are laughing because of all my people who died. They died because of their sinful ways. <u>I</u> burned the great city and people of Zarahemla with fire. <u>I</u> sank the great city and people of Moroni into the sea. <u>I</u> covered up the great cities and people of Moronihah and Gilgal with the ground. <u>I</u> sank the cities and people of Onihah, Mocum, & Jerusalem, then caused lakes to form where those cities had been. <u>I</u> created hills and valleys where once the cities and people of Gadiandi, Gadiomnah, Jacob, and Gimgimno once stood.

Lesson 38 Study Questions

1. Weren't these righteous people already baptized? (3 Nephi 3:69-70; 4:41)

2. On what day did the great storm begin? (3 Nephi 4:6)

3. What does "wo" mean in 3 Nephi 4:26?

4. What does "behold" mean in 3 Nephi 4:28

5. How long did the darkness last in old Jerusalem? (Matthew 27:49)

6. What was happening in the old country of Israel while the terrible storm was changing the land of the Nephites and Lamanites forever? (Matthew 27:54-55)

Significant Quotations

"Now the cause of this iniquity of the people, was this: satan had great power, unto the stirring up of the people to do all manner of iniquity, and to the puffing them up with pride, tempting them to seek for power, and authority, and riches, and the vain things of the world." ~ 3 Nephi 3:17

"…So great was his [Nephi's] faith on the Lord Jesus Christ, that angels did minister unto him daily." ~ 3 Nephi 3:59

Lesson 39

People in this chapter:	
Jacob=king of secret unlawful group	Nephi2=son of Nephi; preacher
Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior	

~ *read: 3 Nephi 4:35 – 5:60*

"…A voice told of the changes in the land and how it happened…

I burned the great city of Jacobugath and all the people of king Jacob because of their terrible sins and wickedness which was worse than any other because of their secret murders and combinations. They destroyed the peace of my people and the government of the land. I caused the cities of Laman, Josh, Gad, and Kishkumen and their people to be burned because of their wickedness in stoning the prophets and missionaries who came to stop them from their sinful ways. I did all this to wipe away their sins, and the blood of the prophets and saints from before my face. There was not a single righteous person who died today – not one.

You who were spared are more righteous than those who died. Will you now return to me and repent of your sins and be converted that I may heal you? I'm telling you that if you will come to me, you will have eternal life. My arms of mercy are held out to you. I will accept and bless all those who come. I am Jesus Christ, the son of God. I created the heavens and earth and all things in heaven and earth. I have been with God from the beginning. I am a part of the Father as the Father is a part of me. I lived among my own people and they rejected me. This fulfills scriptures which told about my coming. All those who have received me or will receive me become sons and daughters of God. I am the light of this world. I am the Alpha and Omega*, the beginning and the end. You are to offer me no more blood sacrifices and burnt offerings. There is no more need for these things and I will no longer accept them. Instead, you will offer me a heart that is sorry for having sinned and a spirit that is repentant. If you do, I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost, just as I did with the Lamanites because of their faith. All must come to me with faith like a little child has, believing completely in me. I came into this world to save every single person from their sins. I laid down my life for you. And I was resurrected for you. Repent today and come to me and you will be saved."

As soon as the voice finished speaking, there was complete silence for several hours. Even though everyone throughout the land heard the words, they were so amazed, they couldn't say a single word - they even forgot they had been howling in grief for their friends and families!

After several hours of silence, the voice began again through the darkness. Again the people listened closely. "Oh, you people who are of the house of Israel. How often I have gathered you together as a hen will gather her chicks under her wings. How often I have looked after you and cared for you and you never even seemed to notice. Repent and return to me and serve me. But if you don't, your cities and lands will be destroyed and left in ruins until the covenant I made with your ancestors comes to pass." After the voice stopped this time, the people began to cry and howl again for their dead families and friends. They didn't stop for three days and nights while they were in total darkness.

*Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet-the beginning and end.

34 AD

On the morning of the 4th day, the sun came out brilliantly to warm the earth and the people. The land was quiet and still. The people rejoiced and gave praises of thanksgiving to Jesus Christ their Redeemer. They had been spared from the terrible things that had destroyed the unrighteous and unrepentant people.

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

The Nephites gathered at the temple located in the land Bountiful to discuss what had happened in their land and also to talk about the death of Jesus Christ in the far away land of Jerusalem. While the people were talking, they heard a voice that sounded like it came from heaven. It wasn't a loud or mean voice, but it seemed to pierce their very souls and caused them to shake, but for some reason, they couldn't quite understand what the voice was saying. They looked around at each other to see if everyone else had heard the voice too. In a few minutes, they heard the voice again, but still didn't understand what it was saying. A third time the voice spoke. This time, they looked towards heaven where the sound was coming from. Then they understood what the voice said. It told them, "Behold, my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, hear ye him." Suddenly they saw a man coming down from heaven. He was wearing a white robe and stood among them. Everyone was staring at him, but they were too stunned to say anything. They thought it was an angel of God standing right in front of them! Then he stretched his hands out and spoke, "Behold, I am Jesus Christ who the prophets said would come into the world. I am the light and life of the world. I have glorified the Father by taking upon myself the sins of the world." When the people heard this, they fell down to worship him because they remembered that it had been prophesied that Christ would show himself to them after he ascended to heaven from Israel. He told them to get up and put their hands into his side so they could feel where the spear had been run through him. They also let him feel the nail prints in his hands and feet so they would know without a doubt that he was the God of Israel and the God of the whole earth who had been killed for the sins of the world. And every single person there stepped forward one by one and touched him in his side and hands and feet. They became witnesses that day that it really was Jesus Christ who the prophets said would come. When they had all touched him, they cried out, "Hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Most High God!" And they fell down at Jesus' feet and worshipped him.

Jesus looking through the crowd, found Nephi, pointed his finger at him, and said, "Nephi, come forth". And Nephi stepped away from the crowd and walked right up to Jesus, then immediately bowed down and kissed the Lord's feet. Jesus asked him to stand up, then said to Nephi, "Today I am giving you power and authority to baptize these people after I am gone." Then the Lord called 11 other men by name and gave each one the same power and authority to baptize the people. While they were standing away from the crowd, the Lord talked to the 12.

He told them exactly how to baptize and what to say so there would be no questioning or guessing as to what He meant. "Any who repents of his or her sins and asks for baptism will go down in the water with the one having authority and be baptized in My name. The minister will say the person's name then these words, 'Having authority given me of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.' Then the minister will place that person completely under the water, then bring them back out of the water again. You will do this and say these words because if you do something in my name, it is the same as doing something in the Father's name or even the Holy Spirit's name. You see we are three different parts of the same God. We have different features. We are one in spirit and purpose, but have our own identities or characteristics as Father, Son, and Spirit.
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

As I said, I don't want any arguing about my gospel or my teachings. There should be no doubt as to the meaning. Those who like to stir things up are definitely not on my side, but they belong to the devil who is the father of arguments.

The Father, The Holy Spirit and I all testify and give you our word that what we say is true. The Father commands all people to repent and believe in me. Those who do believe and are baptized will be a part of God's kingdom in heaven. Those who don't are damned. If you believe my words, God will visit you with a burning desire inside you to do His will that is so strong, it is like fire. The Holy Spirit will also be with you to comfort, strengthen, and guide you – you will never have to be alone again. You will have to repent and come with the faith of a little child and be baptized in My name. It is the only way you will receive The Father, the Holy Spirit, and Me. It is the only way you will receive your place in heaven. This is my law. Whoever builds their life on My ways and laws, also builds on My foundation and the very gates of hell itself will never win against that person. The message is simple. Whoever tells anything more or less than this simple statement I have given comes from the devil. The gates of hell are standing open to receive him or her. I want you to go now to these people and tell them what I have said. You must tell all people everywhere about what I have said here to you today."Then Christ stretched his hand out to the crowd of people who were gathered and He said to them, "You are highly favored if you listen to these 12 men whom I have chosen to minister to you. I have given them power to baptize you with water. After they have baptized you, I will baptize you with fire and the Holy Spirit. You will be very highly favored by God if you believe in Me and are baptized, now that you have seen me and know who I am. Those who will listen to your testimonies and believe will be even more blessed because of their faith. Those who become humble and are baptized will also be visited with fire and the Holy Spirit and will receive forgiveness of their past sins.

I will bless those who come unto me, including those who have been bullied and abused, whether physically or verbally. Each will inherit a special place in heaven. I will bless and comfort those who have lost who or what is most precious to them. I will bless those who endure injury with patience and courage without bitterness and hatred. You will find peace and happiness with your situation in life. I will bless those who actively seek to become holy and sanctified. I will send the Holy Spirit to guide them on their quest. I will bless and have compassion on those who show forgiveness against others who have wronged them. There is no place in God's kingdom for holding grudges. I will bless those who have surrendered their whole lives to me. You can't live the way of the world and keep your mind pure for God. Focus every waking moment on Me. Everything you think and do should show that God is right there with you – because He is! I will bless all those who try to create harmony and make peace. It's not always easy to help people cooperate who compete or fight with each other constantly. God loves a peaceful spirit, free from trouble and worry. His children know that He is in control of life. I will bless those who are cruelly and unfairly treated simply because they follow Me and My ways. Their abuse just drives those victims right into the safety of God's arms. I will bless those who are criticized and attacked by others for their beliefs and actions. The world will do and say anything to get God's children in trouble. They will lie every chance they can to get at God's people. It won't matter though, because followers of Christ will have a joy and peace down to their souls. The Christians won't even notice the mud thrown at them by the world because it won't stick. Their spiritual eyes and ears are fixed upon the rejoicing in heaven of all true followers – past, present and future. This world won't last, but God's kingdom will. Think of it this way. You are like salt. If you lose interest and just give up in becoming Christ-like, just as salt might lose its flavoring, how will the earth be seasoned with the knowledge of Christ? Salt without any flavoring will be thrown out in the trash because it's worthless.

Lesson 39 Study Questions

1. Why does God want our hearts broken? What is a contrite spirit? (3 Nephi 4:49

2. What does Hosanna mean? (3 Nephi 5:17)

3. Why did Nephi kiss the feet of Jesus? This had never been done before in the Book of Mormon. (3 Nephi 5:19)

4. Why did Nephi and others need <u>power</u> in order to baptize? Was it that difficult? (3 Nephi 5:21)

5. Why do our ministers say different words when baptizing someone today?
   "Having <u>been commissioned</u> of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, Amen." (D&C 17:21c)
   - instead of the very specific words of Christ in the Book of Mormon -
   "And now behold, these are the words which ye shall say, calling them by name, saying: Having <u>authority given me</u> of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen." (3 Nephi 5:25)

6. Do 3 Nephi 5:27 and I John 5:7 mean that God the Father and Christ Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit are all the same?

Significant Quotation

"And now whoso readeth, let him understand; he that hath the scriptures, let him search them, and see and behold if all these deaths and destructions by fire, and by smoke, and by tempests, and by whirlwinds, and by the opening of the earth to receive them, and all these things, are not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy prophets.." ~ 3 Nephi 4:69

"And again I say unto you, Ye must repent, and become as a little child, and be baptized in my name, or ye can in no wise receive these things." ~ 3 Nephi 5:39

"And again I say unto you, Ye must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God." ~3 Nephi 5:40

Lesson 40

People in this chapter:
Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior

~ *read: 3 Nephi 5:61 – 8:17*

"…Christ continues his talk…

Another way to look at it is that you are like light for the people of the world. A city that is all lit up and sits on the top of a hill can't be hidden. Are you supposed to light a candle and then hide it under a basket? No. You put it on a candlestick so everyone around you can see it. Let the light of Christ shine in all you say and do so people will see how to live and will come to Christ. When you share your light with others, their light shines too and soon everyone will follow Christ."

Jesus gave these examples to show that he was fulfilling prophecy, not doing away with it or tearing apart the Jewish beliefs. Not one little piece of prophetic law will be left out. Christ will fulfill every single piece of prophecy about the coming Messiah. You have all the information that you need to repent and come to Christ with a truly repentant heart, willing to change your life to follow His ways. If you do these things, you will be a part of God's kingdom in heaven. If you don't follow through or give up following Christ, there's no way you can go to heaven. One of God's oldest laws is "Thou Shalt Not Kill" or you will be in danger of God's judgment. Christ explained the significance of that law when he said that the very act of murder begins with an angry, murderous spirit. Remember, God know your thoughts and intentions. Jesus warned against name calling. Raca, for example is a very insulting word meaning stupid, inferior or foolish. Murder begins in the heart and offensive name calling is a sign that there is hatred prowling around, just waiting to strike. The same hatred that causes one person to spew insults is the same hatred that causes the act of murder. The attitude is the same and that's what makes the person guilty before God's judgment. If you have a grudge against someone, go to that person and work out your differences before it's too late, then come to God and ask for forgiveness. God cannot forgive you if you still have resentment in your heart. Clear that out of your heart and mind first. If you need to pay for something you owed or replace something you borrowed, then do it. No matter what, keep your life clean and holy.

An important rule to remember is to never swear, either by someone ['on my mother's grave'] or by something ['by all that's holy']. Don't swear by the Lord ['I swear to God']. Either say 'yes' or 'no' and let your word be good enough. Don't say things just to be saying them ['I'll pray for you' or 'God bless you']. Be just as perfect as you can be – in all things. Another old law says 'an eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth'. That's saying what you can do legally, but it's not going to get you anywhere. I say, 'Don't hit back at all. If someone hits you, just let it go. If someone drags you to court and sues you for the shirt off your back, wrap up your best coat and make a gift of it. If someone takes advantage of you unfairly, use that time to practice true servanthood. Live generously, not just barely getting by with what is legal. Whatever you do, try to perform good tasks unseen. It is enough that God in heaven sees and knows your deeds. Let Him reward you, not other men. Remember, God knows exactly what you need before you even ask him, but pray to Him often. It is best to pray quietly so you stay honest and sincere, instead of putting on a show for others to hear. An example of a sincere prayer is this:

34 AD

'Dear Heavenly Father, holy is your name. You alone know what is best, so may Your will be done both here on earth and in heaven. Please forgive us for the times we don't give you our all, just like we forgive other people who don't do a job for us that we were expecting. Please help us be strong enough not to be tempted by the devil. We recognize that everything is Yours. May we also recognize that You are all powerful in all things and give you the honor you deserve. May it truly be so.'"

Christ went on to teach the people not to be in constant mourning and sadness. Don't make a big deal out of fasting to God. Other people don't have to know that you are doing without food in order to become closer to God. Once again, God knows your thoughts, even before you do. "Don't put all your energy into your future here on earth, because you never know what's going to happen. Instead, plan for heaven where you will be safe eternally. Listen to your heart and conscience - they will help you determine where you should be focusing. Your eyes are the windows of your body and spirit. If you look for what is good in life, your whole being will be full of light and good. If you're greedy, selfish and just looking out for number one (yourself), your whole being will be filled with darkness. Nobody can serve both God and the devil at the same time. You have to choose – it's completely up to you."

When Jesus had finished talking to the people, He turned to the 12 disciples whom He had just chosen. He cautioned them to remember the things He had just taught because they were now responsible for the spiritual well being of the people. Don't worry about your physical needs because God will take care of you. Does worry change anything? No. We can't even add an inch to our own height by thinking about it or worrying about it. When you're working for the Lord, you don't need to worry about having decent clothes to wear. If God provides beautiful clothes for the fields in the form of waves of flowers, don't you think He can provide you with something to wear? Don't you think He loves you more than any other creation? Remember Solomon with all his rich robes and jewelry? Wildflowers out in the fields are more richly decorated than Solomon or any earthly king that has ever lived. If God loves the grassland enough to clothe them with beautiful colors, how much more will He take care of you, if you will only have faith in Him. God knows all of your needs. Focus and concentrate on the kingdom of God and He will give you everything you need. As long as you're doing the Lord's work, don't worry about tomorrow – tomorrow will take care of itself. The things you worry about the most, might not even happen.

After He instructed the disciples, Jesus turned again to the crowd of people. "Be careful not to judge other people. The measuring stick you use to judge others will be the same measuring stick that you will be judged by. Don't be a hypocrite by criticizing other people when you're doing things that are even worse. Deal with your own faults first before you try to 'fix' others. Don't act flippant or silly with things that are holy and sacred. Don't bargain with God. Ask Him directly for whatever you need. Which of you would give a rock to your hungry child and tell him to eat it and be satisfied? If that child then asked for something else, would you serve up a snake? No, because you love that child and wants what's best for them. That's just a small example of God's love for you. Because God loves you, you should also love His other children. Treat others like you want to be treated. You know this already – it's one of the laws you live by. Stay on the path that leads to God and never stray off from it. Listen to what God wants you to do and follow His way. He sees the whole picture and knows the best way for you to go. Watch out for the people you hang around with and the things you do. As much fun as they seem to have, they can get you into trouble, just by being seen with them. They will lead you away from God. It might be so slowly that you don't even realize it until it's too late to turn around. Those people might even think they're doing good, but by the time you figure out how far you really are from God, the damage has already

been done and you find yourself alone in the world. When Judgment Day comes, God will say, 'Who are you? I don't even know you. You certainly are no follower of Mine and you have no place here in heaven.' It's like building your house on a solid foundation. If a storm comes along, that house is safe and secure. However, if you build that same house on top of sand, the first storm will completely destroy it. Build your life on God's way and your spirit will stay strong. If you follow the ways of the world, though, you'll never survive. Just reading God's Word isn't enough – you have to base your whole life on following Him. Your actions, even when there's no one around, show the real person you are. Just remember, you can't hide from God. He sees everything."

Jesus knew there was no way to write down the things He had just told the people, so he reminded them again to remember what he had said – it was very important to remember His teachings. He also realized that some of the people didn't quite understand the part when He said that the law of Moses had been done away with, so He patiently explained it to them again in very plain and simple language. When Christ came, the new covenant, or a fullness of the law of Christ was introduced. The 'old things' had passed on; a 'new thing' called the gospel had been introduced. Those prophecies and covenants which were given through the prophets but which were <u>not</u> fulfilled by the death and resurrection of Jesus were not done away with, but are still in force today. For example, all the promises concerning the eventual gathering of Israel, being restored to the land of promise, and the events concerning the Millennium are some of these promises that are still active. Jesus shared with the people that He was the law and the light. That meant He was the author of the gospel law. He also brought <u>the</u> light to those who sat in darkness. He told the 12 gathered around Him that day that they too were to be <u>a</u> light to this people here on this continent.

This is very important and was repeated several times: There is only one shepherd and there will come a time when there will only be one fold. All will be gathered in. Jesus even quoted the prophet Isaiah, 'God has rolled up his sleeves. All the nations can see his holy, muscled arm. Everyone, from one end of the earth to the other, sees him at work, doing his salvation work.'"

When Christ was finished talking to the people, he told them to go home and think about what they had heard. They were also to prepare for another session tomorrow. There was much to absorb, but this was important for them to learn. In the meantime, Christ was going to the lost tribes of Israel to visit with them. The people could not leave, though. In fact, the only movement were the tears flowing down the cheeks of the people. They did not want Him to leave. They wanted to sit under His ministry a while longer. Christ was overcome with compassion for these people. He recognized their faith in Him was strong, so Christ asked if there were any in the crowd who would like to be healed. Immediately as though they were one body, the people came forward, either themselves, or helping those who could not step forward on their own. And Christ healed each and every one as they came to Him. When the last person was healed, every single man, woman, and child bowed down at Jesus' feet and worshipped Him. Those who could get close enough kissed His feet and bathed His feet with their tears.

Jesus then stood in the middle of the crowd and saw one more specific group before Him that had not been addressed. He raised His voice loudly so all could hear. Jesus asked for the little children to be brought to him. The parents immediately brought their children close to Jesus and the children all sat on the ground while Jesus stood in the middle of the circle they had made. Jesus then asked the adults to kneel down, and they did, of course. As soon as the people had all knelt down, Jesus told God that He was sad because the Israelites were so wicked. Then He too knelt down and prayed to God for these people here. Those who heard Him pray said the words were beautiful.

Lesson 40 Study Questions

1. What is a jot and what is a tittle as mentioned in 3 Nephi 5:65?

2. Why do the Inspired Version (Matthew 6:14) and the King James Version (Matthew 6:13) of the Bible read differently from the Book of Mormon (3 Nephi 5:105)? If a change was going to be made, wouldn't it have been made when the Book of Mormon was written or translated and not later when the Inspired Version was printed?

3. What is a strait gate as mentioned in 3 Nephi 6:26? Why is it hard to find?

4. Who was Christ talking about when he said to the people in Jerusalem "other sheep I have which are not of this fold"? (3 Nephi 7:16) (also John 10:16)

5. Who was Christ talking about when he said to the people in Zarahemla "I have other sheep which are not of this land"? (3 Nephi 7:24-26) (Jeremiah 31:10)

6. Why aren't the Gentiles allowed to hear the voice of or see Jesus Christ? (3 Nephi 7:21-22)

7. Can the Gentiles also receive blessings reserved for the House of Israel? (3 Nephi 7:30-31)

8. Who are Gentiles as mentioned in Nephi Lesson 7, especially verses 21, 28 -38?

9. What does "ponder" mean in 3 Nephi 8:3?

Significant Quotation

"And because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles, and also the judgments of the Father upon my people, who are of the house of Israel, verily, verily, I say unto you, that after all this, and I have caused my people who are of the house of Israel, to be smitten, and to be afflicted, and to be slain, and to be cast out from among them, and to become hated by them, and to become a hiss and a byword among them."
~3 Nephi 7:33

Lesson 41

People in this chapter:	
Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior	Kumenonhi=one of 12 disciples
Nephi3=son of Nephi2; one of 12 disciples	Jeremiah=one of 12 disciples
Timothy=son of Nephi2; one of 12 disciples	Shemnon=one of 12 disciples
Jonas=son of Nephi3; one of 12 disciples	Jonas2=another of 12 disciples
Mathoni=one of 12 disciples	Zedekiah2=one of 12 disciples
Mathonihah=brother of Mathoni; one of 12	Isaiah2=one of 12 disciples
Kumen=one of 12 disciples	

~ *read: 3 Nephi 8:18 – 9:44*

"…Christ prayed such beautiful words…

The prayer was so great and marvelous it couldn't even be repeated, let alone written down. The people were absolutely overflowing with joy because Jesus was praying to God – on their behalf! Just imagine it…Jesus was praying for these plain, ordinary, sometimes bad people! They were stunned. When Jesus finished praying, He stood up and asked the crowd to also stand. Then He told them, "Blessed are ye because of your faith. And now behold My joy is full." Jesus himself was so overcome with happiness that He cried right there on the spot. He didn't care that the people saw Him. He wasn't ashamed of the tears because they were tears of joy. Then he took each child, one by one, and blessed them and prayed to God for each little one there. Then he cried again. Finally, when He was able to speak again, He told the people, "Behold your little ones." When the people looked, they saw the heavens open and angels surrounded by fire came down and made a circle around the children. The angels came and took care of each and every child, and every single one of the 2,500 people gathered there that day saw and heard what happened and each knew what they had witnessed was true.

Next, Jesus asked Nephi and the other 11 disciples to bring Him some bread and wine. While the 12 were gone, Jesus asked the people to all sit down. When the disciples came back with the bread and wine, Jesus broke the bread into pieces, then blessed it. He gave the bread to His disciples and told each of them to eat. After the disciples ate their pieces of the bread and were full, Jesus told them to give the bread pieces to the crowd. Once the crowd of people was full, Jesus turned to His disciples and said one of them would soon be ordained, and that person would receive the power and authority to break the bread and bless it just as Jesus had done, so it could be shared with all those who believed and were baptized in Christ's name even after Jesus left them. He told them, "Always be aware when you eat the bread & drink the wine, that these are symbols to help you remember the sacrifice I made for each of you. The bread is a symbolic reminder of My broken body and the wine is a symbolic reminder of My spilled blood. By eating the bread and drinking the wine, you are giving a testimony to God that you will always remember Me and what I have done for you. As long as you remember Me, the Holy Spirit of the Lord will be with you."

Then Jesus told His disciples that they should drink some of the wine that He had blessed. Each of the 12 silently drank of the wine, thinking about the blood that Christ had allowed to be spilled for them. When each was full, they shared the wine with the crowd until they too were full.

34 AD

"Blessed are you for doing this because it is fulfilling My commandments. You are witnessing to God that you are willing to do whatsoever I command you to do. You are to share this ceremony with all who repent and are baptized in My name. If you do these things as I have taught you, you are blessed because you are built upon My rock. Anyone who does more or less than I have done here today is built on a sandy foundation. When the rains come and the winds blow, they will fall down and the gates of hell are already open to receive them.

Watch and pray always looking out for the devil who is constantly trying to tempt you and lead you away from Me. Don't let him capture you. You should pray in My church among my people, just as I have prayed here among you today. I am the light. I have set an example for you."

After He said these words to His disciples, Jesus turned to the crowd. "You must always watch and pray so that you don't give in to temptation. You see, the devil wants you for himself. It's very important that you stay close to the Father. Pray to God in My name and whatever you ask, believing that you really will receive it, God will give it to you <u>if</u> it is what is right. Families should always pray together. When you meet in groups, don't stop anyone from coming in. If you have a problem with someone you don't want to be a part of your group, pray to God for that person. I am the light of the world. You should be holding up My light so all the world will know Me. As I have prayed here today and have invited all to come and be a part of this group, you should do the same with the world. Let them see you pray unto the Father for them. Tell them about Me so they will want to be a part of My church also. Be careful that you don't break your word with God by wandering away from the Father, Me, and My church. The devil is out there doing everything he can to tempt you to break Our closeness with you. Please don't let him win."

Looking at His disciples, Jesus said, "I will give you one more commandment, then I must go to My Father and do other work that He has commanded me to do. This last commandment I give you is: don't let anyone take the bread & wine that you know is unworthy or unfit. This ceremony is a very holy time and each person should participate only when they are trying to sincerely keep God's laws. However, if you wait until you are completely free from sin, you won't ever be able to eat the bread & drink the wine. This special ritual is a source of spiritual power. By not eating the bread or drinking the wine, you are cut off from that power. Whoever eats the bread and drinks the wine during this ceremony and is not right with God or any other person, causes the spiritual power they would normally receive to be stopped. If you know for certain that someone is not right with God or another person, you must not let him eat the symbol representing My broken body or drink the symbol representing My spilled blood. Don't throw him or her out of your group, but take care of that person and pray to God for that person in My name. Then, if he or she repents and is baptized in My name, accept them and let them eat the bread and drink the wine. If they don't repent, they will not be counted as one of My people. I know My flock and know exactly how many there are. I don't want someone coming in and destroying their souls by leading them away from Me. However, don't toss them out. Keep on working with them. You never know when they might repent and come to Me with a changed heart so I can heal them. In that case, you could be the source of bringing them to Me for full salvation. Remember what I have told you today. I want you to remain close to the Father. I have told you these things because of the arguments you all have been having among yourselves. You will be so much more blessed if you don't fuss or fight. I'm leaving you now to return to the Father."

As soon as Jesus said these things, he touched each one of His disciples and spoke to them as he laid his hands on them. The crowd of people couldn't hear what was being said, but the disciples told them later that Jesus gave each one power to receive and give others the Holy Spirit.

After Jesus spoke with the last disciple, a thick cloud came down and covered the crowd so the people couldn't see Jesus anymore – but the disciples still could. They told the people later that Jesus went up into heaven, just as He said He would do. The people didn't want to leave, but they finally went to their homes. Word spread fast among those who hadn't been there to see Jesus. Before dark, just about everyone had heard that Jesus appeared to a group of people and that he ministered to them…and that He was supposed to return the very next day! News like that continued spreading all night long. Needless to say, some people traveled all night to join the huge crowd the next day at the spot where Christ had appeared the day before. Were the rumors true? Would He really come back?

The next day, as the crowd gathered together, so did the 12 disciples, which included Nephi, his brother Timothy, Nephi's son Jonas, Mathoni, his brother Mathonihah, Kumen, Kumenonhi, Jeremiah, Shemnon, Jonas, Zedekiah, and Isaiah. The disciples realized the crowd was so big that they decided to split it up into 12 groups so each one could teach a group and everyone could hear what was being said. The disciples asked everyone to kneel down and pray to the Father in the name of Jesus. The people felt closer to God than they probably ever had, but Nephi wanted more for his people. He wanted the gift of the Holy Spirit for them, so he got up and the crowd followed him as he walked into a nearby lake and everyone in the crowd that day watched as Nephi was baptized. Then, he baptized each of the other 11 disciples that Jesus had chosen the day before. Once they came out of the water, each was filled with the Holy Spirit of God. And these 12 men were circled around by fire that came down from heaven. Once again the angels came from heaven and ministered to the 12 who were inside the circle of fire – and every single person in the crowd saw what had just happened.

Suddenly, Jesus appeared inside the circle of fire and talked gently to the 12 for a while. He then directed everyone, both in the crowd and the twelve gathered closely together to all kneel down. Jesus invited the twelve to pray. These men prayed, calling Jesus their Lord and their God. While they were praying, Jesus walked away from the group and He Himself bowed down and gave thanks to God for giving the twelve the gift of the Holy Spirit because of their great faith. Finally, Jesus returned to them and they were still praying…and Jesus smiled upon them.

When He smiled, the light coming from Him was so bright and brilliantly white that it caused the disciples to shine brightly too – even their clothes reflected the bright white. It was brighter than anyone had ever seen before. Brighter than they could have imagined! Christ said to the disciples, "Pray on!" Again, Jesus went a few yards away from the group. And again, he prayed to the Father, thanking Him for purifying the twelve. Then Jesus prayed for those who would hear the words of the twelve and believe. He prayed that they too would be purified. He returned to the twelve men where once again all twelve became a brilliant white just as Jesus was. Finally, Jesus asked everyone to stand up. He told them how pleased He was with their faith, then he began to break bread again and pass it around for the disciples to eat. When all the disciples had eaten, He commanded them to break up the rest of the bread and give it to the people in the crowd. Then Jesus gave His disciples wine to drink. Once they had had enough to drink, Jesus commanded them to distribute the wine to the people. Bear in mind that no one had brought bread & wine to the gathering that day, but everyone recognized that Jesus had still provided bread & wine for them. Christ said to the people, "Those who eat this bread are eating a symbol of my body. This symbol goes clear down to your soul. The same goes for the wine. Whoever drinks this wine is drinking a symbol of my blood, and that symbol touches your very soul. Because you do this, your soul will never go hungry or thirsty, but shall always be full."

Lesson 41 Study Questions

1. What does “observe” mean in 3 Nephi 8:33?

2. How does 3 Nephi 8:70 compare to Moroni Lesson 2?

3. What was unusual about Nephi’s relationship with his brother Timothy? – even before Christ appeared to the Nephites? (3 Nephi 9:4)

4. What was unusual about the prayers of the disciples when Jesus left them to thank God for sharing the Holy Spirit with them? (3 Nephi 9:24)

Significant Quotations

“And they arose from the earth, and he said unto them, Blessed are ye because of your faith. And now behold my joy is full.” ~ 3 Nephi 8:22

“And now I go unto the Father, because it is expedient that I should go unto the Father, for your sakes.” ~3 Nephi 8:69

“And it came to pass that Jesus…said, “So great faith have I never seen among all the Jews; wherefore I could not shew unto them so great miracles, because of their unbelief..” ~ 3 Nephi 9:35

Lesson 42

People in this chapter:	
Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior	Lehi1=Jewish prophet from Jerusalem
Jacob1=became Israel; son of Isaac in old land	John=one of 12 apostles from old Israel
Isaiah1=Jewish prophet in old Israel	Nephi4=son of Nephi3 the disciple
Nephi3=son of Nephi2; one of 12 disciples	Amos1=son of Nephi4; writer on plates
Samuel=Lamanite prophet to the Nephites	Amos2=son of Amos1; writer on plates
Malachi=Jewish prophet in old Israel	

~ *read: 3 Nephi 9:45 - 4 Nephi 1:30*

"…Christ instructed them about eating bread and wine to remember Him…

After the people had eaten the bread and drank the wine, the Holy Spirit filled them and they all cried out, giving glory to Jesus the Christ. Jesus spoke and said, "I give to you this land for your inheritance. You have the writings of Isaiah – read them! If those who are non-believers don't repent after all the blessings which they have received, then you, oh House of Israel, will go among them and destroy them. This land will be known as a new Jerusalem and I will be here with you, and all prophecies will be fulfilled. When my words and actions here today come through the Gentiles to your descendants who have fallen away from belief in Me, and the believing Gentiles are baptized and numbered with my people, you may know that the gathering has begun. This fulfills the covenant of my Father to redeem and save my people. It will be too bad for the Gentiles who don't repent. They will become completely helpless. I will pour my anger out on them, as no one has ever seen before. But if the Gentiles repent, listen to My words, and don't harden their hearts, they can help the house of Jacob and the house of Israel to build the New Jerusalem. Then I will be among them and the work of the Father will begin among all the people, including the lost tribes of Israel to gather back to the land of their inheritance.

Study the scriptures, especially the writings of Isaiah and see if the things I say aren't true. I have wanted you Nephites to write even more on these plates that your ancestors didn't write. Nephi, bring me the records you have been keeping." When Nephi brought Jesus the sacred metal plates, Jesus studied them, then said, "I commanded Samuel the Lamanite to testify unto the Nephites that when I died, many saints would rise from the dead and would appear to many of the people and minister to them in a loving way. Didn't this happen?" The twelve disciples answered, "Yes, Lord. Samuel did prophesy what would happen and it all did happen, exactly as he said." Jesus questioned them, "Then why wasn't the part about the many saints coming back alive and taking care of the people written down?" Nephi realized then that the incident had not been written down. Jesus commanded that it should be recorded on the sacred plates – and this time, it was done! He also commanded the people to search, study, meditate on, heed, hear, treasure, ponder and learn the scriptures that had been given to them. Jesus also commanded they write down what God had given to Malachi, a prophet from the old country who lived almost 200 years after their forefather Lehi left Jerusalem. He foretold of the return of Christ and what he will look like* and what He will do. And He talked about the Day of Judgment. Jesus stayed with the people for three days, teaching them, breaking bread with them, healing the sick & injured, and even brought a man back from the dead, but the most amazing thing was His

34-37 AD

*FOR MORE INFO OF WHAT CHRIST WILL LOOK LIKE, REVIEW "DID YOU KNOW?" BEFORE CHAPTER QUESTIONS.

teaching and talking to the children. After being with Jesus, the children spoke the most wonderful things – the people were absolutely in awe because of what they heard the children say. Unfortunately, no one was allowed to write down what the children said – it was meant for those people only.

The twelve disciples of Jesus baptized many people and shared the gift of the Holy Spirit with the newly baptized. The disciples also taught and ministered to the people. It was a grand and glorious time. These people had all things in common and were fair with others in all their dealings

Even though they were busy preaching, teaching and baptizing, the twelve disciples got together for prayer and fasting. Suddenly Jesus appeared to them and asked them what they would like. They asked Jesus what they should call His church. It seems the people had begun to argue about it. Jesus asked them why the people were arguing about what to call themselves. Have they not read the scriptures which tell exactly what to name a church that follows the teachings and beliefs of Christ? He reminded them that anyone who takes the name of Christ and is faithful to the end will be saved. Since anything the disciples did was always done in the name of Jesus, then the church should be called by the name of Jesus Christ. If it wasn't named after Jesus, then it wouldn't be Jesus' church. Since this church was built on the gospel of Jesus, it should be known as the church of Christ. If a church is built on the ideas of man or of the devil, it won't stand up, but will crumble at the end. By then, however, it will be too late to come to Christ."

Jesus went on to tell the twelve, "You must go out now and do the things you have seen me do so the people can all have a full knowledge of the Father and be saved. You have seen Me and know how to act. Do the things I did. You know what is the right thing to do. I need to return to the Father now, but remember - anything you ask in My name will be given to you. Pray to the Father. Ask Him when you have a need. Knock at His door, so to speak. And I assure you He will answer that knock and give you what you will need. I am so very pleased by you people. Because of your help and the peoples' open minds, not one soul of this entire generation has been lost – not one! Unfortunately, four generations from now, the people will become lost. They are like the kind who sold me for silver & gold. They will worry more about their wealth than what is important – their souls. Remember to walk through life by the strait gate. It is narrow, but leads to eternal life and requires a lifelong commitment." At this point, Jesus asked each disciple one by one what they would like to happen after Jesus returns to God. All but 3 of them spoke up right away. It seems most of them had only one thought on their minds. They asked that when they got to the age where they could no longer minister to the people, they would prefer a quick end so they could be in heaven with Christ. Christ smiled at them and said, "Blessed are you because this is what you want. When each of you becomes 72 years old, you will die peacefully and quietly so you can be with Me in heaven and find eternal rest." Jesus turned to the three disciples who had kept their thoughts to themselves and not said anything. He asked them again, "What do you want once I am gone?" The 3 disciples hesitated. They were sad because they didn't know exactly how to say what they wanted. They knew what they wanted – they just didn't know how to ask. Jesus already knew what was in their hearts and told them, "It's all right. I know what you want. It's the same thing John the Beloved (one of my disciples in Jerusalem) also wanted – to stay on the earth so you can continue bringing people to Me. You will be blessed and filled to overflowing with joy. You will live to see the end of the world when I return in all My glory with all the powers of heaven surrounding Me. At that moment, you will be changed in the blink of an eye to an eternal being. While you are here on earth though, you will not know any physical pain and you yourselves will never have to suffer death."When Jesus was finished talking to His disciples, He touched with His finger, each of the 9 who had spoken up first…then He left.

Suddenly, the heavens opened and the three disciples who wanted to remain on the earth went up into heaven, where they saw & heard things they couldn't begin to describe. In fact, they were forbidden to even talk about the things they had seen and heard there. When they returned to the earth, they began ministering again to the people, bringing as many into the church as they could through preaching, baptizing, and giving them the gift of the Holy Spirit. Even as people were lining up to join the church, through their efforts, these three disciples were thrown in prison by those who didn't believe in the church. Prisons, however, could not hold these men of God. The prison walls broke in half and fell down. The non-believers dug huge pits and threw the prisoners down in the ground, but the three disciples shouted out the word of God and He lifted them out of the pits. Three times they were thrown into a fiery furnace and three times the Lord protected them so that not a single prisoner got burned. Two times they were thrown in a cave of wild animals, but they just petted and played with the animals and not a one of them got so much as a scratch to show for it either time. The Lord indeed protected these holy men as He continues to protect them today as they minister to gentiles and Jews alike. Because the three Nephites had been changed with immortal bodies, satan has no power over them. They can't be tempted, nor are they bound by the powers of this earth. Things that hold us back like time, space and gravity don't slow these men down.

When this record of the Nephites and Lamanites comes to the world, it will be a sign of the following things, so make sure you are right with God, because if you aren't right, you need to get that way while you still have a chance.

1. Israel will receive the land of its inheritance
2. The words of all the prophets will be fulfilled
3. TheLord will bring down justice on the wicked

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Soon, every single person in the land – both Nephites and Lamanites – was converted to the Lord and joined the church of Christ. What a great time to be alive! There were no fights anywhere and everyone was fair, friendly, and pleasant to be around. Everyone shared whenever there was a need. The disciples performed many miracles in Jesus' name – they healed the sick, raised the dead, restored the lame, and cured many physical problems. It was like heaven on earth and the Lord blessed them greatly. They rebuilt many great cities which had been destroyed when Christ was crucified in Jerusalem. The people grew stronger and larger in numbers every day. They were a fair and delightsome people, as God intended all to be. They continued living by the commandments given to them by Jesus Christ. They fasted & prayed and met together often to worship the Lord. The original disciples whom Jesus had chosen to carry on His work began to die at the age of 72, until all nine had gone to their eternal reward in heaven. As the next generation came on, other disciples took their place and were ordained.

Some time after, Nephi (keeper of records and son of the disciple Nephi) died. The records passed to his son Amos, and his grandson also Amos. 200 years after Christ had left, the people had been so blessed by God that they had become rich. They were very proud of their fancy clothing and jewelry. They were so proud in fact, that they no longer wanted to share their things with everyone else. Soon they divided into different classes of people. Some were still true believers in God. Most built churches so they could see and be seen and the churches would help them get ahead even more. These people chose which parts of the gospel they wanted to believe and whatever didn't suit their needs anymore was thrown out They took every opportunity to torment and humiliate the true believers.
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

"DID YOU KNOW?"

3 Nephi 11:5 says Christ is "like fuller's soap".

The art of "fulling", (cleansing, and bleaching) cloth was important because clothing was so expensive and the fibers needed to be cleansed of their natural oil or gums before dyeing. In some places, the fuller was also the dyer.

It was the custom for a fuller to work outside a town with water nearby where clothes could be cleaned by walking on them as they were lying on a large underwater stone. (The fuller was sometimes called a 'trampler'.)

At Jerusalem, the spot outside the east wall where garments were spread to dry in the sun was called the 'fuller's field'. Christ's garments at the transfiguration were described as brighter than it was possible for any fuller to whiten them. Soap was made by burning the soda plant. Natron (sodium nitrate) was sometimes imported from Egypt where it was mixed with white clay and was used as soap.

DID YOU KNOW?

2 Nephi 11:22 "Behold, they will crucify Him, and after He is laid in a sepulcher for the space of three days, He shall rise from the dead, with healing in His wings…"

The Prayer Shawl, (also spelled tallis, tallit, talis) is a religious symbol, and a garment which envelops the Jew both physically and spiritually, in prayer and celebration, in joy and sorrow. In biblical days, it was worn at all times - not just at prayer. It became a part of the Jewish man's personality. The dead were even wrapped in it when they were buried.The wearing of the "tallit" (pronounced tal-eet) was commanded by God in Deuteronomy 22 :12 and Numbers 15:37-40; "Speak unto the children of Israel, and bid them that they make them fringes in the borders of their garments throughout their generations, and it shall be unto you for a fringe, that ye may look upon it, and remember all the commandments of the Lord." The word 'TALITH' contains two Hebrew words; TAL meaning tent and ITH meaning little, or in other words, LITTLE TENT. Each man had his own little tent. Six million Jews could not fit into the tent of meeting that was set up in the Old Testament. Therefore, what was given to them was their own private sanctuary where they could meet with God. Each man would pull it up over his head, forming a tent, where he would begin to chant and sing the Hebrew songs, and call upon God. It was private, and set apart from anyone else, allowing them to totally focus upon God. This was their prayer closet. One of the best known miracles of healing that Jesus performed was when a woman who had suffered from a bleeding problem for twelve years came up behind him and touched the hem of his garment (Matthew 9:20). The woman was, in fact, reaching for the tassels on Jesus' prayer shawl. In Hebrew, these tassels, which are attached to the corners of the prayer shawl, are called tzitzit. Why would she stoop to touch the fringe? Why not his arm, or his feet? In Numbers 15:38 the word translated 'border' or 'corner' is a Hebrew word which can also be translated 'wings' as it is 76 times throughout the Bible. Psalm 91 tells us we can "abide under the shadow of the Almighty" and "under His wings." When a prayer shawl is placed over the head, 'wings' of the garment are formed when the arms are held out. For this reason, the corners of the prayer shawl are often called wings. With this understanding in mind, an ancient Jew under his prayer shawl could be said to be dwelling in the secret place of the Most High and under His wings (Psalm 91:1-4). The lady with the problem knew that because Jesus was the promised Messiah, there would be healing in His wings (fringes). She expressed her faith by touching the corner of His prayer shawl and was instantly healed. Evidently many other people in the crowd that day believed the same thing. They too sought His healing powers, "that they might only touch the hem of his garment: and as many as touched were made perfectly whole," Matthew 14:36.

3 Nephi 11:23 states: "But unto you that fear my name, shall the Son of righteousness arise with healing in his wings" The Old Testament commanded the Israelites to wear the tzit-tzit, which are fringes or tassels, at the 4 borders (Hebrew tzit-tzit means corners or wings) of their garments. This is to be a reminder to keep the commandments of God. The Jews believe the Sun of Righteousness would be the Messiah, who would have the power to heal whoever touched the tzit-tzit (fringes) on his garment. The book of Mark tells us that wherever Jesus went, all who merely touched the wings (corner of his garment) were made whole.

To quote Malachi 4:2 "But unto you that fear my name shall the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings."

This may explain why we don't see pictures of Jesus wearing wings made of feathers.

Lesson 42 Study Questions

1. What prophesy did Jesus give to the Nephites & Lamanites that didn't happen until after the Book of Mormon was published in 1830? (3 Nephi 9:67-68)

2. What other prophesy did Jesus give that didn't happen until after the Book of Mormon came forth? (3 Nephi 9:69)

3. What prophesy did Jesus give that hasn't happened yet? (3 Nephi 9:69)

4. What Greek word is found several times in the Book of Mormon? (3 Nephi 9:69-b)

5. Who is the servant mentioned in 3 Nephi 9:95-97?

6. How does 3 Nephi 10:1-2 compare to Doctrine & Covenants 49:5a?

7. How did Jesus describe the words of Isaiah? (3 Nephi 10:27)

8. What does the following mean: "And now it came to pass that when Jesus had expounded all the scriptures in one…" (3 Nephi 11:1)

9. What were the Nephites called who were baptized after the teachings of Jesus? (3 Nephi 12:13)

10. What does it mean to be sanctified? (3 Nephi 12:33)

11. Why do we need to receive the Holy Spirit after we have been baptized? (3 Nephi 12:33)

12. How will the Nephites and Lamanites be judged? (3 Nephi 13:1-4)

13. Who will judge the Nephites and Lamanites at the last day? (3 Nephi 13:4)

14. How long is a generation? (3 Nephi 13:7-9)

15. How long did the 12 disciples of Christ live? (2-part answer: 3 Nephi 13:13-14 & 3 Nephi 13:18)

Significant Quotations

"And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children."
~ 3 Nephi 10:21

"And whosoever will hearken unto my words, and repenteth, and is baptized, the same shall be saved." ~ 3 Nephi 10:31

"Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye say, Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings." ~ 3 Nephi 11:11 (Also found in the Bible at Malachi 3:8)

"And surely there could not be a happier people among all the people who had been created by the hand of God." ~ 4 Nephi 1:19

"There were no Lamanites, nor any manner of ites; but they were in one, the children of Christ, and heirs to the kingdom of God." ~ 4 Nephi 1:20

Lesson 43

People in this chapter:	
Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior	Nephi1=4th son of Lehi a prophet from Jerusalem
Gadianton=created secret society/robbers	Abinadi=Nephite prophet from King Noah's time
Ammoron=son of Amos; a writer	Samuel=Lamanite prophet; foretold of Christ
Mormon2=a young Nephite; son of Mormon1	Aaron=Lamanite king; led Lamanite army
Mormon1=a Nephite	

~ *read: 4 Nephi 1:31 – Mormon 1:89*

"…The proud and puffed up people tormented and humiliate the true believers…

After a while, a third church was started which denied Christ completely. They also hated the true church that Christ had established because of the miracles that were performed at those churches. They threw the disciples in prison, but once again the prisons broke in two and the disciples continued doing miracles in the name of Jesus. The hearts of the majority of the people were hardened and once again they tried to get rid of the disciples by throwing them into fiery furnaces and into caves of wild beasts. As always, God protected his holy men and none were harmed in any way. The faithful true believers in Christ chose to call themselves Nephites, while those who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites. They didn't just stop believing in God, they actively rebelled against Him. They even taught their children to hate the children of God, just like the Lamanites were taught long ago to hate the Nephites. What naturally followed were secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton being practiced again. It didn't take long for the Nephites to become very proud of what they had because they were rich too. They became just like the Lamanites. The disciples were sick in their hearts because of the sins of the world. The disciples were soon the only righteous people left in the entire area.

Shortly after Ammoron hid the holy items as the Lord told him to, Ammoron recognized something special in a young, 10-year old boy named Mormon who was the son of Mormon. He observed that the child was serious and smart and seemed very grown up for his tender age. Ammoron talked to Mormon and told him when he became 24 years old, he should go to the land of Antum and find the hill called Shim. He was to dig up the sacred records that Ammoron had already hidden there and take out only the plates of Nephi. The rest of the sacred treasures he was to leave buried where he had found them. Mormon was to write on these holy plates everything that was happening to his people, the Nephites, because young Mormon was descended directly from Nephi who came from Jerusalem to this country and he should rightfully be the next recorder of Nephite history.

When Mormon was about 11 years old, he and his father traveled south with other Nephites to the land called Zarahemla. Mormon had never seen so many buildings or people! Not long after arriving in Zarahemla, war broke out between the Nephites and the Lamanites along the border by the waters of Sidon. The Nephite army had more than 30,000 men and was formed from 4 different tribes: the Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, & Zoramites. The Lamanite army was a combination of three different tribes: the Lamanites, Lemuelites, & Ishmaelites. That year, there were quite a few battles between the Nephites and the Lamanites, but the Nephites always seemed to win. The Lamanites gave up and for about 4 years there was quiet throughout the land.

37-362 AD

The Nephites were so evil and wicked by this time, that the Lord would not allow His disciples to minister to the people and took them away. Miracles and healings stopped because there was no one righteous left who could do these things. The Lord did not give any blessings or gifts to the Nephites or Lamanites and the Holy Spirit left them because of their unbelief.

When Mormon was 15 years old, the Lord Himself visited Mormon who seemed to be the only open minded person left in the land. From this visit, Mormon came to know that the true nature of Jesus was kindness and pure goodness. He wanted to preach to the people and tell them what he knew about Jesus, but Mormon was not allowed to because the people had knowingly rebelled against God. It wasn't from not knowing right from wrong. They had purposely turned their backs on the Lord and gone their own way with hardness in their hearts. Their time to repent had passed.

Because the people were so hardened against the Lord, God put a curse on the land. The Gadianton robbers, part of the Lamanites, had been sneaking into the Nephite territory and were stealing from the Nephites. Soon there were so many thieves, the Nephites started burying their important stuff – money, things made of gold, silver and rich metals, jewelry, and anything expensive that they didn't want stolen. Because the land was cursed, all their riches slipped right through their fingers. They were being robbed and they couldn't do anything about it. The people had strayed from God. There were sorcerers, witchcraft, and magic users among the Nephites as well as the Lamanites. The power satan had over these people was overwhelming. The warnings and prophecies of Abinadi and Samuel the Lamanite were coming true!

Suddenly, war broke out again. Even though Mormon was only 16, he was very large for his age and the Nephites asked him to lead their army and he agreed. The Lamanite army was so large and strong looking that the Nephite army got scared and ran back to the northern lands. The Nephites came to the city of Angola and got ready to defend the city by fighting the Lamanite army there. The Lamanite army proved too strong for them and drove the Nephites out of the city. They drove them clear out of the land of David into the land of Joshua on the western coast. This land was filled with robbers and Lamanites already. Did the Nephites turn to the Lord? No. They still refused to repent from all the bad things they were doing.Less than 300 years earlier, their families had walked and talked with Jesus Christ. Now they were only concerned about themselves and how much they had. Oh, how proud they were of what they had done. When the Lamanite army caught up with the Nephites, the fighting began. The Lamanite army led by King Aaron had 44,000 Lamanite soldiers. The Nephite army led by the teenager Mormon had 42,000 soldiers. After the bloody battle was over, Mormon and the Nephites won when the Lamanite army ran away. After their victory, the Nephites began to repent and cry out loud. When Mormon realized they were crying and repenting, he became excited because he knew the Lord would now be merciful to this group of repentant people. These Nephites were sorry, not because of what they had done in turning away from the Lord, but because they saw the prophecies of Samuel coming true when they couldn't hang on to their riches. They couldn't hide anything, because it was always found and stolen. They couldn't keep it in their houses, because the thieves, murderers, witchcraft believers, and magic users took everything the Nephites had. Everybody was crying and howling at what they had lost, not because they were asking God for forgiveness. Some even cursed God and wanted to die. Mormon knew these people were too far gone. The words of Samuel the Lamanite prophet came to his mind: "Behold, your days of probation are past; ye have procrastinated the day of your salvation until it is everlastingly too late." The Nephites soon got tired of living with all the crime and left. The Lamanites chased them until they caught up with them in the city of Jashon. Jashon was close to where Ammoron had buried the sacred records and holy items that God had told him to hide so they would be kept safe. Mormon had remembered what Ammoron had told him when

he was a little boy and had already dug up the plates of Nephi and smoothed over the dirt so no one would find the other things still buried. Mormon had been keeping a record of his people ever since he had turned 24. He wrote everything about his people and held nothing back. It was all there, engraved on the plates of Nephi – the wickedness and terrible sins of the Nephites. It was hard to list everything because it seemed to go on and on. The evil things these people did never stopped. At times he was overcome with sadness for them. He knew in his heart that he would be found on God's side, but all these people in this entire country would be lost forever.

It didn't take long for the Nephites to get fed up again and leave. Once again, the Lamanites came after them. This time they were chased northward to the city of Shem. The Nephites tried to band together, but it was no use – the Lamanites wouldn't leave them alone. Mormon tried hard to convince the Nephites to stand up against the Lamanites and fight for their families and homes. He talked the men into standing up to the Lamanites. It was 30,000 Nephites against 50,000 Lamanites. Evidently, they were so powerful looking that the Lamanites ran off. The Nephites ran after them and somehow managed to beat them, even though the Lord was no longer with them at this point and they were equal in strength with the Lamanites. Since the Nephites had won, they decided to go back to the land of their inheritance.

The next year, they made a treaty with the Lamanites, which included the Gadianton robbers, and divided up the land. The Lamanites gave the Nephites the land northward, down to the narrow passage of land which was the dividing line. The Nephites, in turn, gave the Lamanites all the land southward from the narrow passage. That lasted about ten years until the Lamanites attacked them again. Mormon had been preparing the Nephites for battle. During those ten years of relative peace, the Lord told Mormon to preach repentance and baptism to the people so the church could be built up again. Not one single person paid any attention to Mormon when it came to talking about God. They couldn't see that the Lord had spared them for a reason. He wanted to give them one last chance to repent, but their hearts were too hardened against God.

The Lamanite King sent Mormon a letter warning the Nephites that they were coming fully armed and were declaring war against the Nephites. Mormon led the Nephites to a city in the land of Desolation which was near the narrow pass, by the border leading into Lamanite country. They armed themselves and prepared to fight the Lamanites before they got to the Nephite lands.

The scouts reported that the Lamanites were heading toward the city of Desolation and the battle would be here anytime now. Both sides fought fiercely, but again the Nephites won and the Lamanites returned to their homes. The following year, the Lamanites came at them again; and again they won, killing quite a few and throwing their dead bodies into the sea nearby. Because of their victories, the Nephites were mighty proud of what they had done. They swore by the heavens and by the throne of God to take revenge for their fellow soldiers who had been killed by the enemy. Mormon was so disgusted with these men that he refused to lead them anymore. They were more evil than the wicked Lamanites they were fighting. He had loved his fellow Nephites because he was filled with God's love and many times Mormon had poured out his soul in prayer for these people. Three times Mormon had led them victoriously into battle and saved them from their enemy, but they refused to repent of their sins. The final straw came when they swore by the heavens and by God's throne. God told Mormon that revenge was for Him (God) to take care of, not the people. Instead of leading the battle, Mormon was to witness the fight and record it so people in the future, Jews and Gentiles alike would know what had happened to these people and would know that they must come to God and repent, or else they would be destroyed and face an eternity without God.

Lesson 43 Study Questions

1. How does Mormon 1:34-38 compare to I Corinthians 5 and II Corinthians 7:8-10?

2. Is there more than 1 reason to be sorry for something you have done? Why were the people in Mormon 1:34,37 sorry?

3. Why were the Nephites forbidden to swear? (Mormon 1:74,75)

Bonus Question: What happened to the plates of brass? (4 Nephi 1:57-58; Mormon 2:25; Mormon 3:7-8)

Significant Quotations

"…Behold, the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying, Vengeance is mine, and I will repay…" ~ Mormon 1:80

"And I would that I could persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment seat of Christ." ~Mormon 1:89

Lesson 44

People in this chapter:	
Mormon2=a young leader of Nephites	Shem=Nephite army unit leader
Moroni=son of Mormon; army unit leader	Josh=Nephite army unit leader
Gidgiddonah=Nephite army unit leader	Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior
Lama=Nephite army unit leader	Abraham=Jewish leader from old country
Gilgal=Nephite army unit leader	Jacob=son of Isaac; later called Israel
Limhah=Nephite army unit leader	Isaac=son of Abraham from old country
Jeneum=Nephite army unit leader	Adam=1st man God created
Cumenihah=Nephite army unit leader	Ether=writer of Jaredites on metal plates
Moronihah=Nephite army unit leader	Jared=leader of group from Tower of Babel
Antionum=Nephite army unit leader	Limhi=son of wicked Nephite King Noah
Shiblom=Nephite army unit leader	Mosiah2=son of Mosiah1; last Nephite king

~ *read: Mormon 2:1 – Ether 1:4*

"…Mormon was to record the fight so future people would repent or face an eternity without God…

It finally happened. Mormon's tribe of Nephites left the land of Desolation to go up against the Lamanites, but instead, they were driven back to where they had started. The Nephites had fought long and hard and about collapsed from exhaustion. While they were resting, a fresh battalion of Lamanites came after them. It was no contest. The fierce Lamanite warriors easily took the city of Desolation, killing most of the Nephites and enslaving many of the rest of them, while only a few Nephites escaped with their lives to hide out in the city of Teancum which was by the seashore, close to the city of Desolation. Months later, the Lamanites decided to take the city of Teancum back and went after the Nephites. This time, however, the Lamanites were driven back and the Nephites were in charge of Desolation again. When the Nephites realized they were able to force the Lamanites out, they became proud and puffed up by what they had done. Thousands of Nephites and thousands of Lamanites had been killed in these wars fought over who got what land.

A short time later, the Lamanites went after the Nephites again. By now, every Nephite and Lamanite heart on the battlefield was so hardened, it was obvious they enjoyed killing just to watch the blood. It was impossible to describe the horribly bloody battle which took place. Never before in the history of the Jewish people, had there been such a wicked group of people. The Lamanites won that battle, mostly because there were so many more of them. They took over the city of Teancum and once again they gathered as many of the women and children as they could and offered them as sacrifices to their gods. The Nephite men were furious about what had been done to their women and children. They went after the Lamanites with such hate-filled revenge, that they were able to drive the Lamanites completely out of the Nephite lands. It took almost 13 years for the Lamanites to re-group and get their army ready again. They went after the Nephites with all their might. By this time, there were so many Lamanite warriors that no one could even guess how many there were. From that time on, it seemed like the Nephites didn't have a chance. The Lamanites swooped down on the city of Desolation and beat the Nephites in a vicious battle. Those Nephites still alive escaped to the city of Boaz where they boldly stood up against the Lamanites. It took two separate attacks before the Lamanites beat the Nephites, killing many of the soldiers and

sacrificing the women and children as before. Once more the Nephites ran – this time to the city of Jordan. Mormon watched all this and just before the Lamanites could completely conquer the land, he went to the hill called Shim and dug up the plates and sacred items that Ammoron had hidden up as the Lord had told him to. Feeling sorry for his fellow tribesmen, Mormon took back his vow to not help the Nephites and took over command of the Nephite army again. The grateful Nephites were convinced Mormon could deliver them from all their problems. Mormon knew what was in store, however. Because his people would not repent of their sins or call upon the Lord, it was only a matter of time before the Nephites would feel the full extent of God's judgment upon them.

Somehow, the Nephites managed to drive back the Lamanites when they attacked again and again. Finally the Lamanites broke through and killed most of the Nephites. A few escaped, however, including Mormon who briefly recorded what he had witnessed regarding these wicked, vicious tribes.

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Mormon wrote a letter to the Lamanite king asking for time to gather all the Nephite people together on hill Cumorah to take a last stand against the Lamanites. Perhaps the Lamanite king was ready to get this over with. The Lamanite king agreed to what Mormon had asked. Mormon gathered all the Nephites and they marched to the land of Cumorah that was a land of many waters, rivers, and springs and pitched their tents. By this time, Mormon was getting old and didn't want the writings and holy treasures to fall into the enemies' hands because he knew they would destroy it all. Mormon buried all the sacred items & plates in the Hill Cumorah except a few writing plates which he gave to his son Moroni.

Soon the Nephite people could see the great Lamanite army marching toward them. Every single Nephite man, woman, and child standing there was terrified. The army of Lamanites was monstrously huge and ferocious looking and was coming right for them. When the battle was over, all 10,000 of Mormon's tribe had been killed except 24 who were so badly wounded, the Lamanites thought they were dead and passed them by. A few others escaped into the south countries and a few more deserted to the Lamanites. Other than those few, only the 24 men remained. Mormon and his son Moroni were among those 24 who were still barely alive on the battlefield.

The next morning, the 24 Nephites climbed to the top of Hill Cumorah and saw Mormon's 10,000 tribesmen – all dead. They could also see the 10,000 dead tribesmen who had been led by Moroni; and the 10,000 dead who had been led by Gidgiddonah; and the 10,000 led by Lama; and the 10,000 led by Gilgal; and the 10,000 led by Limhah; and the 10,000 led by Jeneum; and the 10,000 led by Cumenihah; and the 10,000 led by Moronihah; and the 10,000 led by Antionum; and the 10,000 led by Shiblom; and the 10,000 led by Shem; and the 10,000 led by Josh. They could also see ten more tribes of Nephites of 10,000 each – all laying dead on the same battlefield. Nephite bodies were everywhere, as far as the eye could see. It was almost more than Mormon could take. He cried out to the dead, asking them why, why, why? Why didn't they repent? Why did they reject Jesus who stood waiting with open arms to receive them? Why did they attack the Lamanites in the first place?

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Mormon knew his time was limited and told his son to write what happened after the great battle at Cumorah. Those Nephites who had escaped to go southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until finally all of the escapees were all destroyed. Mormon also was found by the Lamanite warriors and was killed. Moroni realized he was the last Nephite left alive. It was up to him to finish his father's writing about the total destruction of the Nephites. He just hoped he

could finish and hide the plates he had been writing on before the Lamanites found him. Not only was time a factor, he was running out of room. The plates were almost full and he had no way to make more metal plates.

Now that the Nephites were all gone, the Lamanites turned on each other, causing the war to continue. There was no one left in the land who knew the Lord. Before they were all destroyed, the Nephites were so bad, the Lord would not even allow the 3 Nephites who had remained on the earth to be with the wicked Nephites. Moroni did not know what happened to the three. He just knew they were no longer among the Nephites. Before his father was killed, the 3 Nephites had visited and ministered to Mormon and Moroni. He hoped the three would come back soon. He was all alone.

Moroni wrote about the plates themselves. He prophesied that many would try to get at the plates, but the writing on them was much more valuable than the precious metals they were written on. He spoke of the Lord's blessing on the person who would bring the knowledge found in the writings to the world. Moroni also gave a warning for anyone who would criticize the writings because they would be in danger of hell's fires for attacking it. He talked about the faithful followers of this land who were so close to the Lord that they could move mountains, cause earthquakes, and make prison walls fall down. Not fiery furnaces or wild beasts or poisonous snakes could harm those saints because they believed so strongly in the power of God. They even prayed for those who caused the metal plates to be found. When will these sacred writings be found? 1)Whenever miracles stop happening because the people no longer believe and become too proud of themselves; 2)The power of God is denied; 3)churches become corrupted because of pride; 4)wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes around the world; 5)pollution, both of the land and by the murdering, robbing, lying, tricking, idol worshippers, and very evil people; 6)it will be said, "there is no sin, so you can do whatever and it won't matter; 7)churches will spring up inviting people to come and be forgiven of their sins by paying money; 8)people will love their money and all they have more than they love the poor & needy, the sick and the troubled; 9)people will be ashamed to take the name of Christ; 10)people will form secret clubs to help them get rich.

What about those who don't believe in Christ? When they come to the Day of Judgment and stand before Christ, they will have to recognize Him as the Holy Lamb of God. Do they think they will get to live with God when their very souls are tortured with guilt because they had abused and broken God's laws when they were alive? Moroni said those people would be more miserable living with a holy and fair God than they would be living in hell. Those who say there are no more revelations, prophecies, gifts, healings, nor speaking in tongues with the interpretation of tongues; they have not read the scriptures. The God of Abraham, Jacob & Isaac is a God of miracles. He formed heaven & earth from nothing. He created mankind from the dust of the earth. He is the same yesterday, today, and forever. Sin came into the world through Adam, but Jesus Christ came to save everyone if they will accept Him so they can come back into the presence of God. Christ Himself did many miracles. Even His apostles performed miracles. Anyone who believes in Christ and asks God for something in Christ's name that he or she really needs, it will be given to them. Do all things as a worthy child of God and endure to the very end.

Moroni continued trimming down the long stories left in his care which were taken from the 24 plates named for Ether, the man who recorded his family's history beginning with Jared. These 24 plates were found by the people of Limhi during the days of King Mosiah. Moroni shortened the writings by leaving out the accounts of the Creation, Adam, and events up to the time the Tower of Babel was built because the Jews (and Nephites, of course) already had writings that told about those events.

Lesson 44 Study Questions

1. Who were the "remnant of the seed of Jacob" as mentioned in Mormon 2:54?

2. How did the Nephites hope to gain the advantage over the Lamanites as mentioned in Mormon 3:5? What kind of weapons did the Lamanites have? (Mormon 3:11)

3. How many Nephites died in the final battle? (Mormon 3:14-16)

4. Why was the Book of Mormon written? (Mormon 3:31)

5. What does the Book of Mormon mean when it says the Nephites were all "destroyed'? (Mormon 4:2)

6. Didn't Jesus promise the 3 Nephites that they could stay on the earth until the end of time? Doesn't Mormon 4:12 say something different?

7. Why did God stop performing miracles for so long? (Mormon 4:83)

8. What language was the Book of Mormon originally written in? (Mormon 4:98-100)

9. What language did the Nephites speak? (Mormon 4:99)

10. Moroni abridged the 24 plates written by Ether. What does "abridged" mean? (Ether 1:2-5)

Significant Quotations

"Know ye not that ye are in the hands of God?" ~ Mormon 2:52

"Know ye that ye must come unto repentance, or ye cannot be saved." ~ Mormon 3:25

Lesson 45

People in this chapter:	
Moroni=son of Mormon; a Nephite	Gilgah=son of Jared
Lehi1=Jewish prophet from Jerusalem	Mahah=son of Jared
Jared=led his family from Tower of Babel	Orihah=son of Jared
Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior	Pagog=son of Brother of Jared
Noah=old Jewish prophet who created ark	Kib=son of Orihah; Jaredite king
Jacom=son of Jared	Corihor=son of Kib; Jaredite king

~ *read: Ether 1:5 – 3:43*

"…Moroni shortened the records by omitting the events leading up to the Tower of Babel…

Instead, Moroni wrote a shorter version about the Jaredites - another group of Jews who left Jerusalem long before Lehi and his family did, and settled just north of where the Nephites and Lamanites lived.

Jared and his brother lived during the time the great tower at Babel was being built. When the Lord caused each tower worker to speak in a different language, Jared asked his brother to pray to the Lord not to change their language, or their friends', or their families' language so they could all understand each other. The Lord had compassion on this small group of people and He allowed them to keep their own language. Jared asked his brother again to pray to God to find out if they should leave the area, and if so, where they should go because they would like a land of inheritance for their own. This place of Babel had become wicked and too confusing because of the people. God told the brother of Jared that whoever claimed this land of promise He would guide them to must serve God and only Him, or they would be wiped off the face of the earth.

The Lord told the brother of Jared to have the men gather their flocks and pack up every kind of seed they could find. They set traps and caught birds, fish, and swarms of honey bees. When they had finished, they were to go to the Valley Nimrod in the north where the Lord would be their guide and they would find a choice piece of land for themselves. From this small group, the Lord would raise up a great nation of people. Why did the Lord do all of this for Jared and his family and friends? Because Jared asked his brother to pray to the Lord about all of these things. Once they arrived at Nimrod, the Lord, surrounded by a cloud, talked to the brother of Jared and told them to go into the wilderness where no one had ever gone. The Lord stayed ahead of them and gave them directions on how to get through the wilderness. They came upon many waters while they were still traveling in the wilderness and had to build barges in order to get across all the different bodies of water.

Finally they came to a very large sea. They pitched their tents on the beach for four years. At the end of the four years, the Lord appeared in a cloud and talked to the brother of Jared, chastised him for three solid hours because they had forgotten to pray. The brother of Jared felt very bad about his sin of neglecting God and prayed for forgiveness for himself and the others with him. The Lord quickly forgave them, but warned them not to sin like that anymore. He would not allow His Spirit to be with men if they are fully sinful; instead, the people would be cut off from the Lord.

The Lord told the brother of Jared that it was time to build eight more barges similar to the

2200 BC

ones they had been building when they crossed over other waters. The men worked hard building the barges just the way the Lord had told them to. The boats were small and light weight, like a bird landing on top of the water. They were waterproofed on the bottom, sides, and top kind of like a dish on top of another dish with the two ends pinched into a point. When the door was shut, it was completely sealed so they would be dry. Each boat was about as long as a tree.

A couple of things bothered the brother of Jared, though, and he finally prayed about them. When he asked God how they were going to breathe since the boat was airtight as well as being waterproof, God told the brother of Jared to make a hole in the top so they could get fresh air whenever they wanted. He reminded them to stop up the hole when it rained or the waves came up over the top so they wouldn't get wet. He also told them to cut a hole in the bottom and keep it corked because sometimes the boats would be tossed around so much that they would be turned upside down. When the boat was upside down and they wanted fresh air, all they had to do was uncork the hole that used to be on bottom but was now at the top of the boat. That took care of that problem, but the brother of Jared also wanted to know how they would steer the boat since it was dark inside and they couldn't see anything. The Lord reminded him, "you can't have any windows because they would get smashed; you can't make a fire because there would be times you will be under the water and the smoke would get too bad with the top closed. "What would you suggest I do?" asked the Lord. The brother of Jared thought about it then went up into a mountain and melted ore to make 16 white see-through stones. He asked God to touch the stones with His finger so the stones would glow inside the boats. One by one, the Lord touched the stones with His finger. Because of his faith, the brother of Jared was able to see the Lord's finger and it scared him so badly, he fell down. "Why did you fall down?" asked the Lord. "I saw your finger and was afraid you would strike me down – I didn't know you were flesh and blood." answered the brother of Jared. "You have seen my finger as flesh and blood because of your faith in me. In the future, I will come to earth with flesh and blood as a man. To date there has never been a man with as much faith as you have – none have seen so much as my finger. Did you see anything else?" "No" answered the brother of Jared. "Please show yourself to me." The Lord asked him, "Do you believe the words which I will say?" "Yes, Lord, I know you speak only the truth and cannot lie because you are a God of truth." The brother of Jared was no longer living on faith; he was now living on knowledge of who God was. As soon as he said those words, the Lord showed himself to the brother of Jared. "Because of your knowledge of me, I will show myself to you. I am Jesus Christ. I will give eternal life to all mankind who believe on me. Just as I have appeared to you, one day I will appear to my people in the flesh also." The Lord ministered to the brother of Jared while they were standing face to face. Before He left, the Lord warned the brother of Jared not to let anyone know what he was about to see and hear. He could record these things, but he must then seal them shut. The sealed writings would be revealed later, but no one would be able to interpret them. He gave the brother of Jared two special stones to keep with the writings and these interpreting stones must also be sealed up. The Lord then showed the brother of Jared the history of the earth from beginning to end. One day the records will be revealed to the Gentiles once they repent of their sins and come clean before the Lord. When the Gentiles have faith in God as the brother of Jared did, then God will show them the things that the brother of Jared saw and they will have the Holy Spirit to visit with them. Remember, all good things come from God. Repent, believe in the gospel of Christ, and be baptized in His name. Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved. You will be blessed if you are faithful to the end because you will live in God's kingdom prepared for you before the beginning of time. Be careful though, don't try to translate the sealed portion of my writings; they will be translated when the time is right. Whoever is allowed to translate the unsealed portion

can show the plates to those who help bring these records to the world. Three who help bring forth this record will be shown these plates by the power of God so they will have a testimony that these plates are real and they are true.

After the Lord touched the 16 stones, the brother of Jared came down from the mountain and put them in each end of the boats. The women prepared all kinds of food for themselves and their animals on their journey. Everything was now ready and the day to climb aboard finally came. They were in God's hands now. The Lord caused a strong wind to carry them toward the promised land. Many times their tiny boats were underwater because of the huge waves pushing them onward and because of the terrible storms caused by the strong winds. They had nothing to fear, however, because they were safe and dry like the people in Noah's ark. When the boats went down deep for so long, the people prayed to God and He brought them back on top of the water again. The wind never stopped driving them onward to their new home. They all sang praises to the Lord day and night. Finally, after 344 days on the ocean, they arrived at the promised land. The first thing they did on dry land was to bow down and humble themselves before the Lord. They actually cried tears of joy because God was so good to them. They began to settle in and plant gardens. By now Jared had 4 sons – Jacom, Gilgah, Mahah, & Orihah. The brother of Jared also had sons and daughters. There were about 22 friends of Jared and his brother who had come along with their families. The group was growing larger every day. The people were taught to walk humbly before God – and they were also taught from on high.

Jared and his brother were getting old and realized they wouldn't live much longer, so they gathered the people together so they could be counted and also to find out what the group wanted from their leaders. The Brother of Jared alone had 22 sons and daughters, while Jared had 4 sons and 8 daughters. The people wanted either Jared or his brother to choose one of their own sons as king. This saddened the two leaders. The Brother of Jared told them, "Don't you see? You will lose your freedom. Mark my words: some of you will be imprisoned if you do this." Jared finally told his brother, "if that's what they really want, then let them have their king." The people chose the Brother of Jared's oldest son Pagag to be their first king. Pagag, however, refused. The people went to the Brother of Jared to see if he would force Pagag to be the king, but the Brother of Jared refused to force the leadership role on his son. He warned the people not to try to force anyone to take on such a responsibility. If they didn't want to be king, then they shouldn't have to be. The people moved on to the next oldest brother, but he too refused. On and on it went until each one of the Brother of Jared's sons had been asked to be king and each one turned it down. The people then selected the oldest son of Jared, but he too refused. They went down the line with all of the sons of Jared refusing until they came to the last one. Orihah was asked to be the king and Orihah said yes and Orihah was anointed as king of the Jaredites. The people began to do well and they became very rich. Both Jared and the Brother of Jared passed away. Orihah was a good king. He taught the people about God and reminded them all the Lord had done for them as a people. Orihah judged the people fairly and honestly. He lived a long life and had 23 sons and 8 daughters. When Orihah was an old man, he had another son named Kib who became king after his father died. Kib's son Corihor was 32 years old when he rebelled against his father, the king. Corihor left his family and took his wife to live in the land of Nehor where they had several children. He was able to attract many people to him. Once he was able to gather up an army, he went to the land of Moron where his father the Jaredite king lived and captured him. It hadn't taken very long for the Brother of Jared's prophecy to come true – having a king had caused some to be held as captives. This land called Moron which was the Jaredite capital and was near the land that the Nephites would many hundreds of years later call Desolation.

Lesson 45 Study Questions

1. What does “confound” mean in Ether 1:8 and how were the people confounded?

2. What was the brother of Jared like? (Ether 1:8)

3. What language did Jared and his people speak? (Ether 1:9; Genesis 11:8; Genesis 6:5)

4. What did Moroni tell us that God promises to the people of this land? What do we have to do? (Ether 1:35)

5. What is wrong with having a king for a leader? (I Samuel 8:7 Inspired Version)

6. How does I Samuel 8:9 compare to Ether 3:28?

Significant Quotations

“…Remember that my Spirit will not always strive with man; wherefore if ye will sin until ye are fully ripe, ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.“ ~ Ether 1:41

“And he had faith no longer, for he knew…wherefore, having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil; therefore he saw Jesus, and he did minister unto him.” ~ Ether 1:85

Lesson 46

People in this chapter:	
Kib=son of Orihah	Cain=son of Adam from earth's creation
Shule=son of Kib	Adam=1st man God created
Corihor=son of Kib	Eve=1st woman God created
Noah=son of Corihor	Abel=son of Adam from earth's creation
Cohor=son of Noah	Nimrah=son of Akish
Nimrod=son of Cohor	Emer=son of Omer
Omer=son of Shule	Coriantum=son of Emer
Jared=son of Omer	Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior
Esrom=son of Omer	Com=son of Coriantum
Coriantumr=son of Omer	Heth=son of Com
Akish=son of unknown Kimnor	

~ *read: Ether 3:44 – 4:30*

"…This land was called Moron, the Jaredite capital ; the Nephites would call it Desolation…

While Kib the former king was still held a captive and was now getting very old, his wife gave him a son named Shule. Shule was angry with his brother Corihor for kidnapping and holding their father as prisoner. Shule grew to become a very strong , smart man. He gathered his own group of men, then he went to the hill called Ephraim where there was iron and other metals in the ground and melted those metals to make steel swords. Shule and his men armed with their swords returned to the city of Nehor and fought his brother Corihor who had taken over since imprisoning their father. Because they were armed, Shule and his men easily won. They took back the kingdom and turned the throne back over to Shule's father King Kib.

Because Shule had fought so hard for the rightful king, his father turned the kingdom over to Shule, so Shule became the king of the Jaredites. Shule judged fairly and honestly and allowed his people to scatter all over the land because there were so many by now. Both Shule and his brother Corihor had many sons and daughters by this time. Corihor repented of his actions and Shule gave Corihor the power to rule in Corihor's own land of Nehor.

One of Corihor's sons was named Noah. Like his father when he was young, Noah was also a rebel. He, his brother Cohor and many of their friends didn't like King Shule or Corihor as leaders, because they judged honestly and couldn't be bribed. They fought against King Shule and won. Noah declared himself king over all the land now and set up his own throne in his own kingdom. King Noah captured his uncle Shule as a prisoner of war. Shortly before Shule was to be executed, his sons snuck into their cousin Noah's house late one night and killed Noah, then broke down the prison door and helped their father escape. Shule was king once again in the land of Moron while Noah's son named Cohor, ruled in their own kingdom after his father was killed. The people of Moron grew rich and strong under the leadership of King Shule. This made the people of Cohor angry, so they went after the people of Shule. The people of Shule won when they killed Cohor, leaving the other side without a leader. When Cohor's son Nimrod voluntarily gave their kingdom to Shule, King Shule was impressed. Nimrod was highly favored of King Shule.

While Shule was king, the Lord sent many prophets to the people. They prophesied their sinful

ways and statue worship was bringing a curse on the land and they would all be destroyed if they didn't stop and repent. The people of Shule's kingdom, however, didn't want to hear this so they just laughed and made fun of the prophets. King Shule passed a law letting the prophets go anywhere they wanted to and punished those who did anything against the prophets. This caused the people to listen to the prophets and believe and repent of their sins. Because they repented of their sinful ways, the Lord spared them, so they became rich and strong again throughout the land. Shule remembered the great things the Lord had done for his fore fathers when He brought them across the great water to this promised land. He continued to judge the people and rule fairly all his days and there were no more wars as long as Shule lived.

One of his sons, Omer ruled after Shule passed on. Omer had a son named Jared. Jared rebelled against his father and went to live in the land called Heth with his wife and children. Jared had a way with words and charmed many of the people in his father's kingdom to come join him. He continued until he had half of the people in his kingdom. With his half of the kingdom, he went to fight against his father. He captured Omer and forced his father into slave labor and Omer served half of his life as his son's servant. Omer had more sons and daughters, among them being Esrom and Coriantumr who were angry because of what their brother Jared had done. They were so angry, they gathered an army and attacked at night, killing all of their brother's soldiers. They were about to kill Jared too, but Jared begged for his life and said he would give up his throne to his father, so they spared his life. Jared was sorrowful and sick at heart because he really wanted a kingdom and all the power, glory and riches that go with it. Jared's daughter saw how miserable he was and came up with a plan to help him get the kingdom back. She went to see her father and asked him why he was so sad. After all, hadn't he read the sacred records their ancestors had brought with them across the great water? Didn't this record tell about the ancient ones using secret plans to get kingdoms and great glory? She urged him to send for Akish, son of Kimnor. She would be glad to dance before him and since she was pretty, Akish would want her for his wife. When he comes to talk to her father about marriage, Jared should tell him that he would give her to Akish as a wife if he brings the king's head to Jared. It sounded like a good plan to him, so Jared invited Akish to come visit him. While Akish was there, Jared's daughter danced before him. Akish was very pleased and asked Jared for his daughter's hand in marriage. Jared told him he would give his daughter to Akish only if Akish would bring to Jared King Omer's head. Now King Omer was actually a friend of Akish. What was he to do? Without hesitation, Akish invited all his family and friends over to Jared's house and asked them to all swear that they would be loyal to him no matter what he asked of them. They all swore by the God of heaven and by the heavens themselves and by the earth and by their own heads that anyone of them would lose their heads if they didn't do whatever Akish asked them to do. They agreed that anybody who told someone else what Akish was about to say would also die. Akish shared with them the ancient oaths which had been handed down since Cain (Adam and Eve's son) made his oath with satan just before he murdered his brother Abel. The devil planned it all out. He purposely led Akish to keep his family and friends in the dark about what they were promising so that Jared, his daughter, and Akish could gain power, murder, rob, lie, and commit all kinds of evil. After all, it was the daughter of Jared who planted the thought in her father's mind to look up the old secret combinations in order to gain his father's kingdom and wealth. Jared was the one who put the idea in Akish's head so he could gain a wife. It was Akish who shared the secret oaths with his family and friends and purposely misled them, making them give blind promises to do whatever Akish wanted. And so it happened that they formed a secret agreement just like the ancient ones which were evil in the sight of the Lord.

Because of the secret society they had formed, Akish, his family and friends succeeded in overthrowing Omer from the throne. The Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should leave the kingdom, so Omer and his family who had remained loyal to him left, traveling many days until they passed a hill called Shim where the Nephites would all be destroyed many hundreds of years later. They continued eastward until they came to a place by the seashore called Ablom. There they pitched their tents.

Meanwhile, Jared was anointed king and gave his daughter as a wife to Akish. Akish wanted more, though, so he called upon those who had taken the secret promises and told them to bring him the head of his new father-in-law Jared. Because of this secret society, evil had spread through the land and had corrupted all the people, so they just stood by and did nothing while their king was killed before their very eyes. While sitting on his throne and talking to his subjects, the family and friends of Akish beheaded Jared, their king. He had wanted to rule as king, but it didn't last very long. King Akish soon became jealous of his son, so he put him in prison and allowed him no food or water so he slowly starved to death. The brother of the prince who died was furious with his father Akish because of what had been done to his brother. The prince who survived was called Nimrah. Nimrah gathered a small group of friends and left the country. They traveled until they found Omer and lived with him. Akish had more sons and these sons were as wicked as their father. Akish wanted power more than anything else and his sons promised to do anything he asked. But they too wanted power, so they were very charming before the people and offered the people money to follow them. Being a greedy people, the majority went with the sons of Akish. This didn't set well with Akish who was left with few people. War broke out between Akish and his sons. The fighting continued for many years until only 30 people in the kingdom were left alive. Those 30 took off and found Omer, so King Omer was on the throne of his kingdom once again.

Omer was getting old, so he anointed his son Emer to be the next king after his death. There was peace throughout the land for 2 years, then Omer passed away. Emer ruled fairly as his father had, so the Lord took the curse off the land and the people began to prosper again. In just 62 years, they became a strong and rich people, They were rich in crops, having many fresh fruits and grain. They had many cattle, oxen, cows, sheep, pigs, goats, and many other kinds of animals that were good to eat. They also had horses, donkeys, elephants, cureloms and cumoms*. The people were also rich in silk, fine linen, gold, silver, and all kinds of expensive things. The Lord truly poured out His blessings on the land. He commanded them once again that whoever lives here should remember it is the Lord who has provided everything for them; otherwise, they will be destroyed when they become completely filled with sin. Emer had many sons and daughters. From his sons, he chose Coriantum to rule after he was gone, so he anointed Coriantum to become the next king. Emer lived another 4 years with peace throughout the land. Before he died, however, he was allowed to see Christ. He rejoiced and was overcome with joy because of his vision and so he died peacefully.

Coriantum ruled as his father before him had – fairly and honestly. He built many powerful cities, and was good to his people. Unfortunately, his wife died childless when she was 102 years old. After her death, Coriantum married again and his young wife was able to give him sons and daughters. One of his sons was Com, who became king after his father Coriantum died at the ripe old age of 142. Com was king for 49 years when he began having children. One of his sons was named Heth. By now, the people were spread out all over the land once more. Again evil began creeping in. Heth started using secret plans from long ago to destroy his father.

*[SEE DISCUSSION ON ANIMALS AFTER LESSON QUESTIONS.]

Lesson 46 Study Questions

1. ☺ How do we know King Shule's people were good housekeepers? (Ether 3:57)

2. What ancient secret promises was the daughter of Jared talking about? (Ether 3:81)

3. What is the purpose of secret combinations? (Ether 3:99)

4. With such little space left on the sacred plates, why did Moroni talk so much about secret combinations? (Ether 3:94,100,102)

5. Why did the Jaredites eat pork as mentioned in Ether 4:20, but the Lehites apparently didn't eat swine since it was never mentioned among the animals they ate?

Significant Quotations

"For the Lord worketh not in secret combinations, neither doth he will that man should shed blood, but in all things hath forbidden it, from the beginning of man." ~Ether 3:93

"Yea, even the sword of the justice of the eternal God, shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction, if ye shall suffer these things [secret combinations] to be." ~ Ether 3:97

Lesson 47

People in this chapter:

Heth=son of Com
Shez1=son of Heth
Jared=led his family from the Tower of Babel
Shez2=son of Shez1
Riplakish=son of Shez1
Morianton=descendant of Riplakish
Kim=son of Morianton
Levi=son of Kim
Corom=son of Levi
Kish=son of Corom
Lib=son of Kish
Hearthom=son of Lib
Com=son of Coriantum; won ½ kingdom
Amgid=fought for ½ kingdom
Shiblom=son of Com
Seth=son of Shiblom
Ahah=son of Seth
Ethem=son of Ahah
Moron=son of Ethem
Coriantor=son of Moron
Ether=son of Coriantor; prophet; writer
Coriantumr=a Jaredite king
Moroni=last Nephite writer
Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior
Alma2=son of Alma1; missionary
Amulek=friend of Alma2; missionary
Nephi2=son of Helaman2; preacher
Lehi3=son of Helaman2; preacher
Ammon=son of Mosiah; missionary to Lamanite

~ *read: Ether 4:31 – 5:16*

"…Heth started using secret plans from long ago to destroy his father…

Heth succeeded in killing his father with the king's own sword. Heth announced himself as king of the Jaredites and took over on the throne. Prophets began crying repentance to the people. They must return to the Lord or a great drought would come and destroy them. The people didn't believe the prophets so they threw them into pits and left them to die at the king's commandment.

Sure enough, no rain fell and the land quickly dried up. The snakes which usually hide in the coolness under rocks couldn't find food and began to roam the countryside, biting and killing many people for food. The animals went south to get away from the poisonous snakes and to look for food and water. The few animals who survived found what they needed in the land that the Nephites would later call Zarahemla. The people followed the trail left by the animals. They ate those beasts who had been bitten and died along the way. When the people realized they were going to die also, they repented and cried humbly to God. The Lord sent rain to revive the earth. He had saved them from the famine. Heth and all his family died because of the drought – all except Shez. Shez took over the throne and began to help his people to rebuild their lives – both physically and spiritually. Shez remembered how the Lord was with Jared and the Brother of Jared when they and their families came across the ocean to come to the promised land. Shez had many sons and daughters. The oldest son was also called Shez. Shez the Younger rebelled against his father and everything he stood for. After Shez the younger was killed by a robber, there was peace again in King Shez's house. Shez had many cities built all over the land and the Jaredites were once more spreading out. Shez lived a long and happy life. When he passed away, his son Riplakish ruled the people, but it was nothing like his father had done. Riplakish had many wives and mistresses. He forced the men into heavy labor; he taxed them with very high taxes; he had many spacious buildings built. He spared no expense building himself a beautiful throne, but there was money left over to build many jails. Whoever didn't or couldn't pay their taxes were thrown in those jails.

2000-600 BC

Even in prison the men had to work long, hard hours. Whoever refused or was unable to work was killed. Most of the skilled workers had been put in prison, so the gold for the royal treasury and the expensive things were all processed and created from the jails. After 42 years of this sin and slavery, the people rebelled and started a war. Riplakish was killed and all his family were chased out of the land. Many years later, a descendant of Riplakish named Morianton gathered an army and fought the people in the cities. The war continued many years until Morianton finally won and named himself king. He eased up on the work and taxes forced upon the people, so they agreed to allow him to be king and he was officially anointed before the people. He did right by the people, but not to himself. He continued the practice of his ancestor Riplakish by having many mistresses. In effect, he was cutting himself off from the Lord. The people were soon rich. They had many beautiful buildings, gold, silver, crops, animals, and personal goods. Morianton had a son named Kim and had his son rule in his place, since he was old by now. Kim ruled for 8 years before his father passed away. Kim chose not to rule the people fairly, so he also was not favored by either the people or the Lord. When his brother rebelled against him, he captured Kim, so Kim spent the rest of his life as a prisoner. Even though he was a prisoner, Kim had several sons and daughters, including a son named Levi. Levi was born a captive and stayed imprisoned until he was 42 and fought against his uncle the king. Not only did he win his freedom, but he also won the kingdom. Levi ruled well and was highly favored by God and the people. Soon everyone prospered. Levi had many sons and daughters, including Corom, whom he anointed to be the next king. Corom also ruled fairly and had many sons and daughters. When Corom passed away, Kish ruled in his place. When Kish died, Lib became king. Lib was also a fair and just king. Under his rule, the poisonous snakes were finally destroyed, so they were able to go south and hunt the forests for meat. Lib learned quickly and became a great hunter. The people built a mighty city by the narrow neck of land by the place where the sea divided the land. They kept the land to the south for a wilderness so they would always have meat available. They lived in the large cities in the north. They were a very busy and hard working people. They bought and sold with each other what they made. They used all kinds of metal they found deep in the ground to make things from gold, silver, iron and brass. They wove fine cloth into clothing and made themselves all kinds of farming tools. They had everything from weapons of war to fine expensive trinkets. They were truly a blessed people in a land that was choice above all other lands.

Lib lived a long time and had many children, including Hearthom who became king after his father died. After only 24 years on the throne, Hearthom was over thrown and spent the rest of his life as a captive. For quite a few years after him, several generations lived all their lives in captivity. That ended when Com was able to get half of the kingdom. He ruled over his kingdom for 42 years, then fought with King Amgid for many years until Com won and was king over the entire land. While Com was king, there began to be robbers who practiced the old ways of the ancient secret societies. These secret societies of robbers tried to take over. Com fought hard, but could not win against these tricky robbers who lived in hiding.

There were also many prophets who told about the destruction of their people unless they repented of their wicked ways and turned back to the Lord. The people rejected the prophets, though, and tried to kill them, but the prophets ran to Com for protection. The prophets then prophesied many things to Com and he believed. Com lived a good long life and when he became too old to rule, Com turned the throne over to his son Shiblom. The brother of Shiblom didn't like this, though, and rebelled, which started a tremendous war. The prophets said in the history of the entire world, there had never been such a horrible destruction than was coming to this people in this land. Unless they repented, their bones would be piled up everywhere, as far as the eye could

see. But the people would not listen because of their wicked ways. The brother of Shiblom and his men finally killed all the prophets of God. Still the people would not listen. Wars and fighting continued throughout the land. There were many famines and deadly diseases which caused mass destruction. Finally, the people began to repent of their sins. Would it be too late for them? The Lord heard the repentant prayers of the people and took mercy on them once again. After a time, King Shiblom was killed, but instead of his son Seth ruling, Seth was a captive for the rest of his life. Shiblom's grandson Ahah became king, but he was a very wicked king, which caused a lot of killing and fighting, so he didn't last long. Ahah's son Ethem was the next king, but like his father, he was very wicked. While Ethem ruled, more prophets came to prophesy to the people that God would completely destroy them from the face of the earth unless they repented of their sins. The people's hearts were hardened so they wouldn't listen. The prophets were so sad that they cried because the people wouldn't accept God, then they left. After Ethem died, his son Moron was the king. Moron, like so many before him, was a wicked man and ruled sinfully. The people had enough. They rebelled because of the secret society which kept all the power and riches from the people. One of the rebels was a big, strong man. He was just as wicked as Moron, but he was tired of having an evil king, so he led a fight against Moron and won half of the kingdom. For many years Moron ruled over one half of the kingdom while this rebel ruled over the other half. Moron led his troops into battle and got back the other half of the kingdom, so he was once again ruler of the entire kingdom of the Jaredites.

Soon another big, strong man stood up. This rebel was a descendant of the Brother of Jared. He was successful in overthrowing Moron so he now ruled the entire kingdom and Moron became a captive for the rest of his life. While he was held prisoner, his son Coriantor was born and Coriantor lived all his life as a captive. While Coriantor was alive, many prophets told of great and marvelous things that would happen. If the people refused to repent, God would completely destroy them and bring another group of people to live on the land, similar to how their ancestors had come from the old country. The people were caught up in the grip of sin through the secret societies and refused once more to listen to the words of the prophets. While Coriantor was captive, he had a son and named him Ether, then some time later, Coriantor died.

While Coriantumr was king, Ether grew to become a man and also a prophet for the Lord, instead of taking his rightful place as king. Ether began to go among the people and prophesy. The Spirit of the Lord was so strong in him, Ether couldn't be stopped. He warned the people day and night to believe in God and repent or they would be wiped off the face of the earth. He also gave them words of faith, hope, and assurance of better things to come.

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

At this point, I, Moroni, would like to remind you that you will receive proof after you believe. Christ appeared to the Nephites – but only after they believed in Him first, and He showed Himself only to the believers, not to everyone. By coming to the earth, Christ glorified God and prepared a way to receive the heavenly gift which comes by faith.

It was because of the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to fall down.

It was because of the faith of Nephi and Lehi that caused a change to come upon the Lamanites so they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Spirit.

It was because of the faith of Ammon and his brothers which brought about so many miracles among the Lamanites.

It was because of the faith of all those who performed miracles – both before and after Christ appeared.
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 47 Study Questions

1. What is a dearth as mentioned in Ether 4:35?

2. How does Moroni's definition of faith (Ether 5:6) compare to Paul's definition in the New Testament of the Bible (Hebrews 11:1)

Significant Quotation

"And never could be a people more blessed than were they, and more prospered by the hand of the Lord." ~ Ether 4:78

"Wherefore, whoso believeth in God, might with surety hope for a better world, yea, even a place at the right hand of God, which hope cometh of faith, maketh an anchor to the souls of men, which would make them sure and steadfast, always abounding in good works, being led to glorify God." ~ Ether 5:4

Lesson 48

People in this chapter:	
Moroni=last Nephite writer	Coriantumr=king of Jaredites; army leader
Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior	Shared=enemy of Coriantumr
Jared=led his family from Tower of Babel	Gilead=brother of Shared
Ether=son of Coriantor; Jaredite prophet	Lib2=member of secret society
Noah=from old country; built an ark	Shiz=brother of Lib2
Joseph1=coat of many colors; from Egypt	

~ *read: Ether 5:17 6:84*

"…(Moroni inserted) it was because others had faith in Christ that signs followed…

It was because of the faith of the 3 Nephites who received the promise that they would not taste of death.

It was because of the faith of the Brother of Jared that he could actually see the finger of God. In fact, his faith was so great, God couldn't hold anything back from the Brother of Jared, so He showed him the whole history of the world – both things that had happened since the creation of man and things until the end of the world. That's just how strong the Brother of Jared's faith was.

It was because of the faith of my ancestors that they were promised that the writings of the Nephites would come to the Lamanites through the Gentiles. At first I tried to make excuses. I told the Lord that the Gentiles would laugh at our writings because of our plain and simple way of writing things. None of the writers were professionals. We weren't trained to write and the materials we had to work with weren't the greatest either. We may have been great speakers, but we just couldn't express ourselves like the Brother of Jared. Now there was a great writer! When you read the writings of the Brother of Jared, you could really feel the Spirit of the Lord.

After I complained to the Lord about this, Christ appeared to me and talked to me just like one man talking to another. He said, "Only fools would make fun of your writings and if they do, they'll be sorry. Don't worry - they won't be able to take advantage of your weakness. If men will come to me, I will show them their weakness.

I give men weaknesses so they can become humble. If they do humble themselves before me and have faith in me, I will make weak things become strong for them. I will show the Gentiles that faith, hope, and charity to God brings righteousness."

When I heard this, it gave me great comfort. I told the Lord, "Your righteousness will be done because I know you work among the children of men according to their faith. I know that the Brother of Jared said to a mountain, 'Remove' and it was gone. If he hadn't had faith, it wouldn't have moved. I know you work with men <u>after</u> they have faith in you. Just like after the 12 Nephite disciples had faith in you and spoke to the people on your behalf, you showed yourself to them in great power. We must have hope so we can be with you always. I remember you said you loved the world. You proved that when you gave your life for every one of us. I pray that no one, not even the Gentiles, may miss out because of my weakness."

Seek out Christ. Find out what all the writings and prophesies are all about.

~~~~~~~~~~~~

600 BC
~~~~~~~~~~~~

Meanwhile, the people refused to believe Ether, even when he told them everything from the creation of man to the flood in Noah's time. When the flood waters went down, this land became a special place. It was chosen by God to be a choice land above all other lands. He wants all who live here to serve Him. He wants this land to become the New Jerusalem – a holy sanctuary.

Ether told about Jerusalem being destroyed and being rebuilt. It would be a holy city, but it would not be the New Jerusalem. Instead, it would be rebuilt for the Israelites. A New Jerusalem would be built in this land by the descendants of Joseph [with the coat of many colors]. They will build a holy city to God and will not be confused (like the people at Babel were). This city will stand until the end of time. Those who live there will be blessed.

Finally the people got tired of listening to Ether and threw him out of the city. He hid in a cave during the day and came out at night to watch what was happening to his people. The same year Ether was thrown out, a great war started. Many in the secret societies tried to kill Coriantumr, but Coriantumr had studied all about wars and the clever tricks of the world. Unfortunately, none of the Jaredites, including Coriantumr repented of their sins. After 2 years of bloody fighting, the Lord told Ether to leave his cave and prophesy to Coriantumr that if he and his household would repent, the Lord would give him the kingdom and would spare the people. If they didn't repent, they would all be destroyed– every single one, except Coriantumr and he would only live long enough to see the prophecies fulfilled which told about another group of people receiving this land for their inheritance. Neither Coriantumr nor anyone in his household would repent and the wars continued. They tried to kill Ether, but he hid again in the rock cave like before.

In the 3rd year of fighting, a man named Shared beat Coriantumr and captured him. The next year, Coriantumr's sons went after Shared and won, so they got their father and their kingdom back. The entire nation was caught up in this war. Every man with his friends fought for what they wanted. There were robbers and all kinds of evil throughout the land. Coriantumr was extremely angry with Shared and went after him with his own army. They met in a fierce battle in the valley of Gilgal. Shared fought bravely for three days, but Coriantumr beat him and chased him to the plains of Heshlon. They fought there on the plains until Shared won and drove Coriantumr back to the valley of Gilgal. In the valley of Gilgal, Coriantumr killed Shared, but not before Shared wounded Coriantumr so badly it was two years before he could fight again, but that didn't stop the civil war. The entire country was bloody with battle scene after battle scene, with no end in sight.Men began to notice that the land was cursed. If they set a tool or sword on a shelf or wherever they stored anything, the next morning it would be gone. Soon, everyone kept their tools and weapons with them at all times.

Two years after Shared died, his brother went after Coriantumr, but Coriantumr chased the brother into the wilderness of Akish and violent fighting took place. Thousands died there in battle. Then Coriantumr and his army surrounded the wilderness and the enemy army within…

Later that night, many in the army of Coriantumr celebrated just how clever they were with a few drinks. As the night wore on, they drank more and more until they became carelessly drunk with the wine. While it was still dark, the brother of Shared and his men came out of the wilderness and easily killed the drunken men of Coriantumr's army. Shared's brother, whose name was Gilead, and his army marched until they came to the land of Moron where Gilead declared himself king and took over the throne of Coriantumr. Meanwhile, Coriantumr began building up what was left of his army. Gilead chose secret combinations to strengthen his army. This worked well until his high priest murdered Gilead while he sat on the throne. The high priest didn't live long because he too was killed, this time in a secret passage by a member of a secret combination named Lib.

During Lib's first year as king (which was 2 years after Gilead had killed the drunken soldiers), Coriantumr and his men marched to the land of Moron where they fought Lib's army. Lib fought well, even getting close enough to wound Coriantumr on the arm, but the army of Coriantumr drove Lib's army to the seashore, where the fighting continued. Lib's army caught their second wind and drove Coriantumr's army to the wilderness of Akish, then on to the plains of Agosh. When Coriantumr killed Lib, Lib's brother Shiz stood up to take his brother's place as leader. As the battle raged on, Coriantumr with his army retreated, with Shiz and his men in hot pursuit. While chasing Coriantumr, Shiz destroyed many cities, killing the women and children and burning the towns as they went. Shiz soon became a name to be feared throughout the land. Many said, "Who can stand up against the army of Shiz? He sweeps the land clean!" The people in the cities began to join the army camps throughout the land. Some of the people enlisted in Shiz's army and the rest of the people became a part of Coriantumr's army. Before long the entire country was covered with bodies. Soon there were none left to bury the dead, including men, women, and children. The smell was more than the people could stand. Shiz kept coming after Coriantumr, driven by revenge for his brother.

The Lord spoke to the prophet Ether at this time and Ether passed the message along to Coriantumr that he would not die by the sword. Shiz continued to chase Coriantumr and his men until they came to the eastern seashore, where they fought for three days in continuous battle. Some of the people who were not used to war became afraid and ran to the land of Corihor, where they killed anyone who would not join up with them. There in the valley of Corihor, they pitched their tents. Coriantumr followed and pitched his tents in the valley of Shurr which was near Comnor Hill. Coriantumr and his armies climbed the hill and sounded their trumpet, announcing time for battle again. Back and forth the war raged on until Shiz struck Coriantumr so badly that Coriantumr fainted from blood loss. Seeing him on the ground, the people thought he was dead and carried their leader's body away from the battle scene. So many people on both sides had died that Shiz called for his people to return to their camp to rest and re-group. When Coriantumr woke up, he remembered what Ether had told him earlier. Coriantumr looked out and saw that almost 2 million Jaredites had been killed in the recent fighting. It broke his heart because these strong men, women, and children were his people and they were all dead. He repented of the evil that he had done. He began to remember the words of the prophets and saw that every word had been fulfilled – and his very soul mourned.

Coriantumr wrote a letter to Shiz stating that he, Coriantumr, would give up his kingdom in order to spare the lives of the people. Shiz wrote back that if he would surrender and willingly die by the sword, then Shiz would allow Coriantumr's people to live. Instead of being grateful, this just made the people of Coriantumr furious. When the people of Shiz saw how mad the other people were, the battle was on again. Before they lost the fight completely, Coriantumr retreated again until they came to the waters of Ripliancum, which means "biggest of all". There they pitched their tents. Shiz and his people pitched their tents nearby. The next day the fighting began early. Once again Coriantumr was wounded so badly that he fainted from blood loss. Coriantumr's army beat the enemy until the army of Shiz retreated to the south where they pitched their tents at a place called Ogath. Coriantumr's army followed and pitched their tents by a hill called Ramah. (This was the same hill where thousands of years later Mormon would hide the records and holy items.) Both Coriantumr's army and Shiz's army had the same thought. They went on separate missions to gather up all the people they could find throughout the entire land.

Lesson 48 Study Questions

1. What was the name of the mountain that the Brother of Jared told to move? (Ether 5:30)

2. What are the 2 things we must have in order to inherit a place with the Lord? (Ether 5:32 & 34)

3. What was the prophesy of Ether to Coriantumr? (Ether 6:21-23)

4. Where was Coriantumr wounded (what part of the body) that was so bad, it took 2 years to heal enough for him to return to battle? (Ether 6:34)

5. How did Coriantumr build up his army? Did it work? (Ether 6:41)

6. How did Shared's brother build up his army? Did it work? (Ether 6:42)

7. How did Coriantumr, a professional general (he had studied "the art of war"-see Ether 6:17), feel about the war toward the end? (Ether 6:73,74)

8. Whose side did Ether fight on? (Ether 6:84)

Significant Quotations

"I give unto men weakness, that they may be humble; and my grace is sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me; for if they humble themselves before me, and have faith in me, then will I make weak thing become strong unto them." ~Ether 5:28

"And now I would commend you to seek this Jesus of whom the prophets and apostles have written, that the grace of God the Father, and also the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost, which beareth record of them, may…abide in you forever." ~ Ether 5:41

Lesson 49

People in this chapter:	
Coriantumr=Jaredite king; army leader	Moroni=son of Mormon; last Nephite writer
Shiz=brother of Lib2; enemy of Coriantumr	Christ=Jesus our Messiah and the Son of God
Ether=last Jaredite prophet	Mormon2=son of Mormon; Nephite leader
Limhi=son of wicked Nephite King Noah	Adam=1st man God created

~ *read: Ether 6:85 – Moroni 8:27*

"…Both armies gathered up all the people they could find…

Each side was building a super army and wanted as many people as possible to join them so they could destroy the enemy once and for all. It took 4 years to cover the entire land, but they finally made it. The armies were as ready as they would ever be.

The final battle began early in the morning. Both sides fought hard all day long, but they were equally matched. When night came, they all went back to their tents to rest. Once in their own camps, the people started howling and crying because of their friends who had died that day. The terrible cries seemed to split the night. Both sides had lost heavily. Early the next morning, the fight started once more. When night came, neither side had gained any ground, but the howlings and cries filled the night because of the tremendous losses. When the sun came up, the armies were at it.

Coriantumr couldn't stand it any longer. He wrote another letter to Shiz, saying that Shiz could have the kingdom and all the people if the fighting would just stop. But the Spirit of the Lord had withdrawn from the people and satan now had power over them because they had hardened their own hearts and blinded their own minds to God's ways. Their answer to Coriantumr's letter? Battle! They fought hard all day. At night, they simply slept wherever they found a place on the battleground to sleep. This continued for several days and nights until only 52 were left from Coriantumr's side and 69 from Shiz's side. The next day they fought just as hard as if they were part of a mighty army. By nightfall, there were only 27 of Coriantumr's army left and only 32 of Shiz's army. As they ate and slept that night, everyone's thoughts were of death. It was becoming very personal now with their small numbers on both sides. After 3 hours of fighting the next morning, the men all fainted from blood loss. Coriantumr and his men found enough strength to get up and retreat, Shiz stood up and promised that he would either kill Coriantumr or die trying. Shiz and his men went after Coriantumr and his men, chasing them until they finally caught up with them the next day and the fighting raged on. On that fateful day, only 2 men were left standing – Coriantumr and Shiz. Finally Shiz fainted because he had lost so much blood. Coriantumr had him and he knew it. Coriantumr rested on his sword for a few minutes, then raised it high and cut off the head of his enemy Shiz. It was finally over. Coriantumr fell to the earth and immediately fell into a lifeless coma. The Lord spoke to Ether and told him to leave the safety of his hiding place and look at the battleground. Ether saw that the war had finally ended and the Jaredites were no more a great nation. He finished writing and hid the records where they would be safe until the people of Limhi would find them. His last words were: "Whether the Lord takes me to heaven now or I will live out my days here on earth first, it doesn't matter. I know that I will soon be in the kingdom of God. So be it."

After Moroni finished condensing the Jaredite story, he realized he still had some time. The Lamanites had not found him yet, but he knew it would only be a matter of time. Their hatred had taken over so strongly that they killed every Nephite they came across who would not deny Christ, though there were very precious few left who believed in God or His Son. Soon the Nephite nation would be completely destroyed, either by death or by being absorbed into the small Lamanite nation. Moroni knew his fate was sealed because he would never deny Christ. With what little time he had left, Moroni chose to write more for any future Lamanites who might read his writings, as the Lord directed. Moroni gave more explanation regarding:

When Christ appeared to the Nephites, several hundred years ago, he laid his hands on each of his 12 Nephite disciples and called them by name, then told them to call on God in mighty prayer. After they had done that, they would have power to share the Holy Spirit with those they laid their hands on, as long as it was done in Christ's name. The crowd that day had not heard what Christ said – but his disciples did, and the Spirit of the Lord rested on each Nephite on whom the disciples laid their hands.

When the disciples (called elders of the church) ordained priests and teachers, they prayed unto God in the name of Christ, then laid their hands on the newly ordained and said, "In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest (or if he be a teacher-I ordain you to be a teacher); to preach repentance and remission of sins through Jesus Christ, by the endurance of faith on his name to the end. Amen. They did this to each one ordained because of a calling from God to men and because of the gifts given to these men by God. They ordained them by the power of the Holy Spirit, which was in them through Christ. Christ himself had shown the elders and priests how to share the bread & wine (as symbolic flesh and blood of Christ) to the people of the church. They all knelt down together and one elder or priest prayed, "O God, the eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it, that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son, and witness unto thee, O God the eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son, and always remember him, and keep his commandments which he has given them, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Amen." Then the priest or elder took the cup of wine and prayed, "O God, the eternal Father, we ask thee, in the name of thy Son Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink of it, that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son which was shed for them, that they may witness unto thee, O God, the eternal Father, that they do always remember him, that they may have his Spirit to be with them. Amen."

Anyone being baptized became known as Christ-like and must show they would serve Christ faithfully all their lives. After they were baptized and were cleansed by the power of the Holy Spirit, they were counted as a member in Christ's church. The church people knew each other and were fed by God's words that they might stay on the right path. They met together often to fast and pray, always upholding each other and keeping their eyes on Christ and remembering Him by eating the bread and wine in His name. They strictly kept the laws of God so no sin would enter the church and its people. If someone was caught sinning and at least three other people who actually saw that person, the witnesses should go to the elders. If that person did not admit their sin and refused to repent, their name was crossed off as a church member. If a person truly repented and asked for forgiveness, they were forgiven - even if they were caught doing that same sin more than once. All was done because they were led by the Holy Spirit.

Moroni also wrote more of his father Mormon's thoughts on faith, hope, & charity: the church members that are the faithful followers of Christ have a hope that you can rest with the Lord in heaven. Others will know you by your works. If you offer a gift or prayer to God, you must do it

with real purpose, or it means nothing. If you don't do something to honor God, you don't gain anything. If you give a gift unwillingly or half heartedly, it's the same as if you hadn't even given the gift at all and it is counted against you as evil. If you pray without meaning it, God won't even listen to your prayers. An evil man cannot do good – and a good man will not do evil. If a man is a servant of the devil, he can't follow Christ. If he follows Christ, he can't be a servant of the devil. Be careful not to judge anything evil as coming from God or anything good as coming from satan. You are supposed to judge good from evil so that you will know how to act. The Spirit of Christ is given to everyone so they can know good from evil. If it's good, it comes from God. If it's evil, it comes from the devil. It's that simple. Now that you know the light to judge by (the light of Christ), judge carefully and remember: how you judge, is how you will be judged. There are many ways God talks to men; He has sent agents to minister to us and prophets to tell us of Christ who is coming. If Christ had not come, man would remain apart from God. Because we were ministered to by angels and by the word of God, men can use their faith in Christ to become saved. Even after Christ came, men are saved by faith in His name. Because of this faith, they are sons and daughters of God. Christ Himself said, Whatever you ask God in My name, if it is good and you believe you will receive it, then it will be given to you. Did miracles stop after Christ went to heaven to sit at the right hand of God? Christ is there to claim the rights of God's mercy for us. He answered the law and claims everyone who has faith in Him. If you have faith in Christ, you will try to always do what is good and true. Angels have not stopped ministering to the people who have faith in God. In fact, they show themselves to those of strong faith. Their ministry is to call men to repent and to do the work of the Father by declaring the word of Christ to others so that all may have faith, that the Holy Spirit may live with each one. If you have faith in Christ, you can do anything!

How can you have faith unless you also have hope? What is it that you hope for? You have hope because Christ redeemed us to eternal life if we accept Him as our Savior. Without faith there can't be any hope. Only the compassionate and good hearted can have faith & hope and are acceptable before God. If a person is compassionate and good hearted and confesses that Jesus is the Christ, that person must have charity. Without charity we are nothing. Charity is good and kind in so many ways. It is the pure love of Christ. Pray that you may be filled with this love of Christ so that we may become like Him. Moroni shared a letter that his father Mormon wrote to Moroni shortly after his calling into the ministry:

"Son, I'm so happy that the Lord called you into His ministry to do His work. I think of you always in my prayers, asking God to help you keep your faith to the end. Unfortunately, I need to talk to you about something that's really been bothering me. You all have been arguing about whether or not to baptize little children. As soon as I found out that you were wrestling with this problem, I prayed about it. Christ spoke to me through the Holy Spirit: "I came into the world not so the righteous would repent, but that the sinner would repent. Those who are healthy or unbroken don't need a doctor – only the sick do. Little children are whole or unbroken, so they are not capable of sinning. The curse of Adam has no power over them." I know, son, that it is mocking God if you baptize little children. They can't sin, so they don't need to be forgiven. You must teach repentance and baptism to those who know right from wrong and those who are able to commit sin. Baptism is for those who repent. Little children are alive in Christ and always have been from the beginning. Think about how many children have died through the ages. Since none have been baptized, that means God changes and is partial, picking and choosing which ones He wants in heaven; either that or He wants them all in hell. God loves every single child that has ever been born – they are all His. If you think little children and those who are without the law need baptism, you have no faith, no hope, and no charity. You are denying the mercies of God.

Lesson 49 Study Questions

1. At the final battle, how did the Jaredites prepare to fight? (Ether 6:87)

2. ☺ How do we know the Jaredites were skinny? (Ether 6:93)

3. What priesthood offices have the authority to serve the bread and wine? (Moroni 4:1)

4. What does "exhort" and "supplicate" mean in the Significant Quotation below? (Moroni 6:9)

5. Why don't little children have to be baptized? (Moroni 8:11b)

6. Besides little children, who does not need to be baptized? (Moroni 8:25)

Significant Quotation

"…Whether the Lord will that I be translated, or that I suffer the will of the Lord in the flesh, it mattereth not, if it so be that I am saved in the kingdom of God." ~Ether 6:109

"And their meetings were conducted by the church, after the manner of the workings of the Spirit, and by the power of the Holy Ghost; for as the power of the Holy Ghost led them whether to preach or exhort, or to pray, or to supplicate, or to sing, even so it was done." ~Moroni 6:9

"All things which are good, cometh of God; and that which is evil, cometh of the devil…" ~Moroni 7:10

"And he [Christ] hath said, Repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, and have faith in me, that ye may be saved." ~Moroni 7:36

Lesson 50

People in this chapter:	
Mormon=son of Mormon; Nephite leader	Luram=Nephite soldier
Moroni=son of Mormon; last Nephite writer	Emron=Nephite soldier
Archaentus=Nephite soldier	Christ=Jesus our Messiah and Savior

~ *read: Moroni 8:28 – 10:31*

"…Letter from Mormon to his son Moroni about baptism for children…

Pray for your fellow Nephites, my son, that they will repent before it is too late. I fear the Spirit of the Lord is no longer with them. In this part of the land, the Nephites are trying to get rid of all evidence of God's power and authority. They are also denying the Holy Spirit. After rejecting what they know to be true, they must soon be destroyed, which will fulfill the prophecies given by prophets and by Christ."

Moroni shared a last letter from his father Mormon:

"My son, I am writing to you again so you'll know I'm still alive, even though I don't have good news. We fought hard against the Lamanites, but Archaentus, Luram and Emron were among the many who died by the sword today. I'm afraid for our people because they won't repent. satan stirs them up constantly to be angry with each other. I've been talking to them but it doesn't do any good. If I speak harshly, they get mad at me. If I speak more gently, they harden their hearts against my words. I really fear the Spirit of the Lord is no longer with them. They are so angry, they have lost any love to each other. They are blood thirsty and full of revenge. But the thing is, son, we must continue to try to help them. We must bring them back to God.

The Lamanites have taken many Nephites as prisoners. They are killing the men and feeding their meat to the women and children. They give the prisoners only a small portion of water each day. As bad as this is, our people are doing even worse to the Lamanites in Moriantum. After violating the young girls, they tortured and killed them, then ate them like wild animals would. This is done to show their bravery. How can people do this? How can they become uncivilized in just a few years? How could we possibly hope that God will not judge these people harshly? My heart cries for my people. There are many widows and young girls in prisons who are starving to death because the armies have taken all the food before they moved on. They are without mercy or feelings. Both sides are brutal, sparing no one, neither the old nor the young. I can't write about this anymore.

I pray to God that He will spare your life, that you may witness His people either returning to Him, or you will see their complete destruction. I know that unless they repent, they will all die like the Jaredite nation because of their hardened hearts and because they are so blood thirsty and focused on revenge. We know that many have gone over to the Lamanites side and joined with them. Even though they may not die, it will still be the destruction of the entire Nephite nation because they will become Lamanites.

My son, I hope to see you again soon, because I have some holy and precious records I need to give to you. Be faithful in Christ always. Don't let the things I have written depress you, but I pray that Christ will lift you up. He suffered many things, including death, but He appeared to our ancestors to give us hope and show us mercy and the chance for eternal life with Him. Rest your

mind on this one thing – you and I will have eternal life with God forever. May His grace be with you always.

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Moroni writes one last time:

To my brothers the Lamanites – I want you to know that is has been 420 years since the signs of Christ's birth were given. I am sealing up this record of our people, but I have just a few things to say to you first. I urge you when you read this book to remember how merciful God has been to His children from the creation of Adam until you read these writings. Think about these things and study on them. He is patient and long suffering. But before you even start reading, ask God to tell you if the things in this book are true. If you ask sincerely, having faith in Christ, He will tell you through the Holy Spirit. You will know it in your heart that this book contains only truth. Do not deny God's power. He works with us, depending on our faith. God is the same yesterday, today, and forever. Also do not deny God's gifts to us. There are many gifts and they all come from the same God. Some examples of those gifts are: teaching the word of wisdom, teaching knowledge, great faith, healing, working mighty miracles, prophesy, seeing angels and ministering spirits, speaking in languages unknown to that person, and interpreting those unknown languages. These gifts are spiritual and will never go away from the earth, as long as God's children believe. Just remember – every good gift comes from Christ. There must be faith, hope, and charity (or pure love). Unless you have true charity for others, you cannot be a part of God's kingdom. The same goes for faith and hope. If you don't have hope, you will be miserable, because misery comes from sins. Christ told our ancestors when He visited us that if we have faith in Him, we can do anything that helps Christ – think about it! We can do <u>anything!</u> If it ever comes that God takes away His gifts from this world, it will be because of unbelief, and that will bring about the end of our world. If that happens, look out – it will mean there is not one single good person left in the world…not one. If any of us does good, it's because of God's power and gifts to us. But if you don't use God's gifts because of your unbelief, you will die in your sins and you can't be a part of the kingdom of God. I'm not lying - this comes straight from Christ Himself. There will come a time when you will know that I'm telling the truth because you will see me at the final judgment. God Himself will say to you, "Didn't I tell you how to live? Didn't I talk to you through this man when he wrote it down years before you were even born?" You will see that all the prophesies from God came true, every single one of them.

Come to Christ. He will help you become as perfect as you can be. He will help you get rid of all things ungodly and sinful. Love God with all your mind, body, and spirit. Christ gave His life for you so you could repent of your sins and make a promise with God that you will become as holy as you can possibly be with His help.

I must now say goodbye. I am going to rest in the paradise of God until the end of time and I meet you at the final judgment of God. Amen. (So be it.)

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

"DID YOU KNOW?" Seeds from the Old Country, mentioned in the Bible

Almonds, anise, apples, beans, calamus (cane sugar), figs, carob trees (St. John's tree, pods were often fed to the pigs), cassia (cinnamon), coriander, cucumbers, dill, flax, garlic, grapes, leeks, lentils, mandrakes, melons, millet, mulberries, mustard, nuts, olives, onions, pomegranates saffron.

Horses

Some people believe the Book of Mormon can't be true because in 1830 when Joseph Smith translated the Book of Mormon into English, the scholars of that day believed there weren't any horses in America until the Spanish conquistadors brought them from Spain, around the 1500's. After the Book of Mormon was published, however, the tar pits of Rancho LaBrea in southern California were discovered. In those tar pits are the fossil remains of horses proven to be in the Americas before the Book of Mormon times (2600 B.C. to A.D. 421). There are buildings in Chichén Itzá, Mexico that were built about 1,000 A.D. At the temple, there is a wall panel covered with carvings of birds and animals from that area, including carvings of horses. This means the carvings of horses found here in North America were done 500 years before Columbus even discovered America in the late 1400's A.D.

Zenock, Neum, & Zenos

In the Book of Mormon, there are 3 Hebrew prophets from ancient Israel-Zenock, Neum, and Zenos. These men are not mentioned in the Old Testament of the Bible, but were quoted on the brass plates kept by Laban. Each of these prophets told about the coming of Christ, being rejected by His own people and His crucifixion. They also prophesied to the Israelites what would happen because they had rejected the Messiah. Because the Jews didn't want to hear that one day they would kill their own Messiah, this message was lost when the Bible was put together. Because God always has a plan, Laban, a Jew, chose to include their prophecies among his records.

(Below taken from the Encyclopedia of the Book of Mormon by Margaret Bingman, Herald House)

Zenos – Prophet (Old Testament)

Zenos prophesied of the fate of a proud and pompous Israel, brought to destruction and captivity because of their refusal to heed their messiah. Instead, Zenos told them they would slay their own God. This was to bring about their scattering; but in time they would, through the gentiles they despised, be brought to a knowledge of what they had done, repent, and be gathered to become the great and perfect nation they were called to be. He incorporated his message in the parable of the tame olive tree. The Jews took offense at being told of their condition of wickedness and slew Zenos. Most Jews destroyed the record of prophecy. But Laban, in his zeal to maintain a perfect record, kept the prophecy. Thus when Nephi, son of Lehi, took the record prepared by Laban, the Lehites obtained the prophecy of Zenos. Jacob quoted it in the plates of Nephi with its interpretation for posterity. References: I Nephi 5:242; Jacob 3:30-153; 4:2; Alma 16:177-188, 205; Helaman 3:53; 5:101; 3 Nephi 4:71

Zenock – Prophet (Old Testament)

Zenock prophesied in Jerusalem of the life, crucifixion, atonement, and redemption of Christ. He also spoke of the branch of Joseph broken off and carried across the sea. Because of his zeal at a time when the Jews did not want to hear of their own wickedness to come, in slaying their own messiah, he was stoned to death. Laban, in his eagerness to maintain a perfect record, kept the record of Zenock the prophet. Perhaps because Zenock's message was a repetition of others, such as Isaiah, and contained nothing unique, or because what he said cut the pompous Jewish leaders to the quick, his message was not retained in the prophecies of the Old Testament.
References: I Nephi 5:240; Alma 16:188-189, 205; Helaman 3:54; 3 Nephi 4:70-71.

Lesson 50 Study Questions

1. What does it mean to "exhort" and "manifest" in the Significant Quotation below?

2. Moroni wrote about faith, hope, and charity. How can we get these 3 qualities? (Doctrine & Covenants Section 18:6a)

3. How can we become perfect in Christ? 1. (Ether 5:28) 2. (2 Nephi 11:43-44) 3. (Moroni 10:29)

4. How can the Holy Spirit help you become perfect? 1. (Moroni 10:5) 2. (Moroni 10:8-9)

Comment

Moroni 10:29-30 gives a beautiful description of the harmony between the grace of God and our own works:

> "Yea, come unto Christ, and be perfected in him, and deny yourselves of all ungodliness, and if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness, and love God with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace sufficient for you, that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ; and if by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ, ye can in no wise deny the power of God."

Significant Quotations

"And when ye shall receive these things [the Book of Mormon], I would exhort you that ye would ask God, the eternal Father, in the name of Christ, if these things are not true. ~Moroni 10:4

And if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, He will manifest the truth of it unto you, and by the power of the Holy Ghost, ye may know the truth of all things." ~Moroni 10:5

"And again I would exhort you, that ye would come unto Christ, and lay hold upon every good gift..." ~ Moroni 10:27

"And now I bid to all, farewell…" ~Moroni 10:31

Lesson 51 – Isaiah 739-701 BC

The writings of the Old Testament Jewish prophet Isaiah were very inspiring to Lehi so they should be important to us. Here are some writings of Isaiah re-written from of the Book of Mormon:

1^ 1 Nephi 6:8-29 = Isaiah 48:1-22
2^ 1 Nephi 6:31-56 = Isaiah 49:1-26
3^ 2 Nephi 5:82-114 = Isaiah 51:7-52:2
4^ 2 Nephi 9:14-2 Nephi 9:85 = Isaiah 7:1–10:4
5^ 2 Nephi 9:86 – 2 Nephi 10:54 = Isaiah 10:5 – 14:32

1^ "Listen up, oh people from the 12 tribes of Jacob. You claim to belong to the God of Israel, but you sure don't act like it. I've told you about things I was going to do before I ever did them. Why? Because I knew you were hard headed and I didn't want you to say some other gods were responsible. You've seen and heard all of this for yourselves, but you're just not listening - you haven't paid attention to Me your whole lives. But because of who I am, I will hold back My anger against you – for now. I have allowed problems to happen to you so you would become stronger – like melting down metal to purify it. I want a pure people, but I won't allow you to honor other gods - I refuse to take second place in your lives. I've been here since before time began. I created the heavens and the earth. They are here because of Me. I am God, oh Israel. I have taught you how to live righteously. If you had listened to Me, your lives would have been as peaceful as a gentle, flowing river. Blessings would have swept over you like the waves of the sea. Your children would have been as numerous as the grains of sand. Now I'm going to let the Babylonians become very rich and successful. How does this affect you? You'd better get out of Babylon now while you still can! Tell everyone you come across that once again, God has saved the House of Jacob. When I led you through the desert and out of Egypt, you were never thirsty because I took care of you every step of the way. Water poured from the rocks when you needed it to. Yes, I am with you, but remember this: there is no peace for the wicked. Listen to Isaiah, your prophet. You've been driven out of your land because of your sinful priests; you've been scattered throughout the world even to the far away islands of the sea." **2^** Isaiah went on to testify that God had called him to this work before he was even born. He gave Isaiah the ability to speak plainly and simple so the people could easily understand. Now God is telling Isaiah to lead the people back to Him. What an honor to be able to do this for God! In addition, He has prepared Isaiah to help the pagans and non-believers. One day the kings of the world will honor the God they had despised and turned their backs on – everyone will worship the God of Israel. God continued talking: "When the time is right, I will gather you together again – both physically and spiritually. Everyone will be safe and taken care of. The heavens will sing and the earth will rejoice because God is merciful and loving." The people of Zion will question this because they will think that God has forgotten about them; but He could never forget His people. He sees all the building and hard work going on in Zion. He sees all the people gathering in. You're going to have so many people with you that it will be like wearing beautiful jewelry. You will be dressed and adorned as a bride should be. Children born during this time will complain that it's too crowded and they need more room. You'll wonder where on earth these kids came from? You've been here all along and lost everything you owned and worked hard for. Now these kids come in and expect to fit right in and share everything? But God will tell the people of Zion that He himself is signaling the world to gather. They will come carrying little boys in their arms and the men will carry the little girls on their shoulders. Kings will be babysitters and queens will be nursemaids. They'll offer to do every day work – even scrub the floors. God reminds

you that if everything is taken away from you and even your freedom is gone, you must remember that God is still on your side, defending you and rescuing the children. Your enemies will become wild and desperate and will finally turn on themselves, killing each other in a fit of rage and self-destruction. On that day, everyone will know that the mighty God of Israel has saved you. Jacob read again the passage from Isaiah where God said he is gathering in the people. Those of high rank will do everyday chores. There will be no doubt that the God of Israel is the one true God. Can anything or anyone captured by a big bully be taken back by the owner? God can retrieve those things for us. God will see to it that our enemies turn on themselves and then everyone will know that the one true God of Israel saved us. Has He ever turned away permanently or left you alone forever? Has He sold you to someone else? Of course not - your sins made you sell yourselves. When He came to help, no one acknowledged Him. Is He so old that He can't help you anymore? If He wants to, He can dry up the waters and just leave the fish on dry land to stink and rot. He can make the heavens black with darkness. When God talks to me (Isaiah), I listen and follow orders. Even when men beat me, pulled out my beard, and spit on me, I didn't abandon God and He didn't abandon me. With God beside me, I'm confident we will win. Anyone who is lost and doesn't know what to do, listen - trust in God; learn on Him. If all you want is to make trouble, go right ahead, but don't expect anything from me. Those who want to get right with God, remember Abraham – just one man until God blessed him, then he became the father of an entire nation. Just like that, God will comfort Zion; He will make her come alive like Eden was. Joy, laughter and singing will fill Zion. Listen to me, people. God will reveal Himself. His decisions will light up the world. He will save us in His time, just before the entire world is destroyed. It is He who will judge all the people around the world. People in faraway islands will look for Him and trust in Him. The things of this earth will die, but God's salvation is eternal. **3^** Listen to me - you people know right from wrong and you know God's law. Don't be afraid of men or their insults, because it won't last forever. Instead, focus on God. He is eternal. Once again, God will flex His muscles like he did when he conquered Rahab the dragon [EGYPT] and when He dried up the water so His people could walk across. Just as sure as those things really happened, God's redeemed people will return to Zion, singing with an everlasting joy and holiness. How can we be afraid when God will be comforting and watching over us? Wake up, you people and get on your feet. You have drunk the cup God handed you, the strong drink of His anger. You drank it all, then collapsed dead drunk, so to speak. No one was there to help you home. Now you're hit with a double whammy – the misery of famine and destruction by the sword. The children of Israel lie in the streets, overwhelmed by their suffering. But God will turn the tables. He will take the bitter cup from you and give it to your enemies. They will lay down so you may use them as a stepstool for a change. Get dressed in your Sunday best, Jerusalem. Those who don't want to follow God have been sifted out. Brush off the dust and get on your feet - throw off your chains! [THE FOLLOWING WAS WRITTEN IN HEBREW POETRY AS SYMBOLS USING ITEMS FROM NATURE TO REPRESENT HISTORICAL OR POLITICAL IMAGES. TALLTREES= KINGS, PRINCES, RULERS, CAPTAINS, RICH MEN, ETC.; HIGH MOUNTAINS AND LOFTY HILLS=KINGDOMS, REPUBLICS, STATES, OR CITIES; TOWERS, CASTLES AND WALLS=DEFENDERS AND PROTECTORS.] The message Isaiah received concerning Judah and Jerusalem: there will come a day when God's house will be on His holy mountain. It will rise above all other mountains and people from all over will to go it. Zion will be the center place of the law and Christ will come from Jerusalem. God will settle disagreements fairly. People won't want to fight anymore. Come and live peacefully in the light of God. He has given up on this generation because they follow fortune tellers and gods of all kinds and nationalities. The day of the Lord will soon come and people, the proud and wicked, will look for places to hide, but it won't do any good. All will bow down to the Lord. God will empty Jerusalem and Judah of all basic needs, beginning with

bread and water. He will remove all rich leaders, police, judges, spiritual leaders, soldiers, doctors, and even repairman. In their place, He will put young, inexperienced, childish people in charge of those cities. The people will be burdened by this and try to find someone among them to rule instead, but none will come forward. Jerusalem and Judah will fall because the people have turned away from the Lord. The first to feel God's anger will be the elders and princes because they have filled their own houses, leaving nothing for the poor. These bullies have beaten My people to a pulp and just left them lying in the streets. The women of Zion have become conceited as they prance around, flirting with all the men in the community by wearing their cheap jewelry just to get noticed. God will cause them to become bald headed and scabby. He will allow them to be stripped of everything they are proud of – their jewelry, headdresses, robes, and purses. Instead of wearing exotic perfumes, they will stink; instead of fine gowns, they will be wearing rags; instead of fancy hairdos, they will be bald headed with scabs; instead of beauty marks they will have scars and filth. Your soldiers will die in battle. Zion will be filled with people mourning for the dead. Many women will gang up on the few men left, begging them to marry the women so they won't be laughed at for being spinsters. When that happens, The Lord's branch will blossom and the earth will be fruitful for those who escaped Israel. [SOME TRANSLATIONS REFER TO THIS PASSAGE AS THE MESSIAH COMING TO BLESS THE JEWS OUTSIDE OF ISRAEL.] Everyone left in Zion will become holy. God will cleanse Jerusalem from the filth and bloodshed. Once again He will protect His people with a cloud of smoke by day and fire by night. He will shelter them from the burning heat and stormy rains. Let me tell you a story. Someone I dearly loved had a vineyard. He fenced it and tended it carefully. He planted only the best vines. He built a tower in the middle and made a winepress. Unfortunately, his vineyard only produced wild, poisonous grapes. What more could have been done? It had to be torn down and let it go. Thorn bushes will grow up in its place. Because this is the Lord's vineyard, He will hold back the rain from this vineyard and the land will dry up and go to waste. In this story, the vineyard represents the house of Israel. The choice vines are the people of Judah. God's judgment saw only cruelty and suffering instead of justice and righteousness, so he allowed His people to become as nothing so they might become purified and holy. Look out you people who take over the land, leaving others no place to live. God himself told me many of these big, fancy houses will end up deserted. Your 10 acre vineyards will only make a single pint of wine and a dozen bushels of seed will produce only 1 bushel of grain. I'm warning all you who are constantly drunk from early morning until late at night until you finally pass out. Yeah, the Lord knows who you are. You put on a feast that has everything from music to plenty of wine but you leave out God. You just don't see what's going on around you. Your leaders will starve to death and the rest of you will die of thirst. Hell will swallow you right up. Make sure you know the difference between good and evil – it's literally a matter of life and death, including everlasting life and death. Beware, you who think you're so smart – all you're good at is drinking. Just like fire burns up grass and it's gone, so will your souls dry up without God. God's fury will be evident by the number of bodies in the streets. Even the ground will feel His anger through earthquakes. God will allow other countries to come in and run over you. They will come on the run, roaring like lions and will capture the people, dragging them away. The land will be dark and full of grief – even the sky will be dark. The year that King Uzziah died, I saw a vision of God sitting on His throne. He was so masterful that his robes he wore seemed to fill the temple. Each angel seraph had 6 wings – 2 covering his face, 2 covering his feet, and 2 were for flying. They called to each other "Holy, holy, holy is the Lord. The earth is full of his glory!" The building shook from their voices and the whole place was full of smoke. I knew I was as good as dead because I wasn't living as I should and neither were my friends and family.

Lesson 51 Study Questions

1. ☺ Why don't bad people have to bow down? (2 Nephi 8:25a)

2. ☺ Did the Nephites play baseball? (2 Nephi 8:36)

3. Compare 2 Nephi 8:53 with Micah 3:1-3

4. Why did the Lord have to discover Israelite women? Didn't He create them? (2 Nephi 8:55)

5. How many automobile parts are mentioned in 2 Nephi 8:56-61?

6. In talking about the time of the great gathering, Isaiah indicates it would take place in the day of what 2 methods of transportation? (2 Nephi 8:95-100)

7. Why does God have a train in His temple? Does He ride in it? (2 Nephi 9:1)

Significant Quotations

"Therefore, my people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge." ~ 2 Nephi 8:83

"O my people, they who lead thee cause thee to err." ~ 2 Nephi 8:50

Lesson 52 – Isaiah (2 Nephi 9:16

Filthy words, gossip and lies were a part of our everyday conversations. Suddenly a seraph flew up to me. He had a hot coal in his hand that came from the altar before God. (2 Chronicles 7:1 and Leviticus 6:12,13) He laid it on my mouth and said, "because this has touched your lips, your sins are purged." [SOME BELIEVE THE COAL WAS THE GIFT OF PROPHECY.] Then God said, "Whom shall I send and who will go for us? I spoke up, "I'll go. Send me!" He said, "Go and tell the people – 'Listen to me.' They will hear, but they won't understand." I asked, "How long won't they get it?" God replied, "Until the cities are completely empty; until the whole countryside is deserted. If even a few survive, the destruction will start over. The land will look like a pine or oak forest with every tree cut down, but the holy seed will still be there on the ground in the leaves." **4^** When Ahaz was king of Judah in the south, King Rezin of Syria and King Pekah of Israel, both from the north attacked Jerusalem – but the attack failed. When Judah (the house of David) found out that Syria was teaming up with Israel (Ephraim), Ahaz and his people were pretty shaken up. God told the prophet Isaiah to take his son Shearjasub and go meet the king of Judah. Just outside of the city at the fuller's field (where everyone did their laundry) by the water pipe coming from the city's upper pool. Isaiah told King Ahaz to be careful and quiet, not to be afraid of the two northern armies which had chosen this evil course of action. Syria and Israel had decided to bully their way into Judah so they could set their own Israelite king on the throne at Jerusalem. Isaiah emphasized, "Don't worry – it just won't happen. The King of Syria is Rezin, just another man-no big deal, and within 65 years, Israel won't even be a nation. If you don't have faith enough to believe it, ask God for a sign, either something in the sky or on the earth." [EDITOR'S NOTE: This was very important because the Jews in Judah would be included in the punishment of Israel – that the Jews as a whole would no longer be established as a kingdom and a people.] Not seeing the whole picture, Ahaz replied that he would not tempt God by asking for a sign that what Isaiah had said was true. Isaiah said, "Really? Not only do you weary others by acting like a hypocrite, but now you're wearing out God. Fine. The Lord himself will give you a sign then; a virgin will have a son [from the house of David in Judah] and He will be called Immanuel. [Immanuel, also spelled Emmanuel, is a description meaning 'God with us'; He dwells among us in His earthly body and He is always with us. It was not his name, but another of the many titles by which Jesus would be known such as Prince of Peace, Wonderful Counselor, etc.] Just as it will take only a few years for this child to be able to distinguish between good and evil (sweet and non-sweet), it will also take just a few years for the 2 kings who attacked you and therefore the enemies of Judah to be destroyed. There is also a time coming like hasn't been seen in your land since before Israel left Judah. The Lord will call for an army in northern Egypt and an army from Assyria in the east. The Lord will allow Assyria to destroy Judah from top to bottom, including its king. The land will become wild and barren. There will be only a few milking animals left to graze. Instead of crops, the people will eat butter and honey because that's all that they can find. In order to protect themselves or eat meat, the men will resort to using bows and arrows. They will use pick axes to get through the thorn bushes. Isaiah was told by God to write on a large piece of polished metal and write on it with an engraving tool – regarding a prophecy about the destruction of Damascus and Samaria by the Assyrians: make haste to the spoil, fall upon the prey quickly – just 4 words. Because all this would happen so fast, Isaiah called in 2 witnesses to confirm the recording of the prophecy. As soon as Isaiah finished writing down the prophecy, his wife got pregnant by Isaiah and had a son. The Lord told Isaiah to call the infant Maher-shalal-hash-baz which had been the whole prophecy. Before this child could even say Mama or Dada, all the riches and spoils of Syria's capital of Damascus and Israel's capital of Samaria would

be taken by the king of Assyria. God also told Isaiah just like the people of Syria and Israel failed to get the gentle flowing brook called Shiloah, located just outside Jerusalem, the Lord will allow the king of Assyria to overpower them like the Euphrates flood waters – a huge river, rapid, and reckless. The Assyrians will even go through Judah. The king will go right up to Jerusalem's gates, like the flood going up to a man's neck. Know this, Syrians and Israelites alike; all your efforts will be in vain – you will be broken down, torn apart. Listen everyone outside of Judah: be prepared – you will be broken down. Again I say prepare because you will be broken. If you try to join together against Judah, it won't do any good because God is with us. The Lord spoke loudly and clearly to me. Do not walk in the ways of Judah's enemies. Do not worship other gods. Look up to the Lord God and be in reverence of him – fear Him and He will be a holy refuge for you; or He could be a trap for those who go against the faithful Jews of both lands. Learn your testimony and know His laws, you disciples of God. We who are faithful must prepare and wait for the Lord. We will be used by God as signs for the Israelites. When people suggest you try fortune tellers and sorcerers, ask them why they don't go to the Lord God who lives on Mount Zion? Why in the world would you seek out the dead regarding matters that affect the living? Those who don't follow our testimonies and the laws of God can't say anything intelligent because it's too difficult for them to understand. They stumble through life, exhausted and hungry, both physically and spiritually. When nothing works the way they want, these people curse their gods – they look everywhere, up and down, but they won't be able to see any way out. They're completely in the dark. It will be dark like when God allowed the Assyrians to attack the lands where the Israelite tribes of Zebulun and Naphtali lived. Later it will get worse for the lands between the Red Sea along the Jordan River up to the Sea of Galilee. Later these people would see the light and it will be a Great Light that shines upon them when Jesus Christ dwells among them, preaching and teaching. Jesus will gather souls together in a great harvest and the rejoicing will be greater than any dividing of spoils from any war fought. The victorious warriors will pile up the enemy armor as a symbol of peace. Remember the battle with the Midianites? The victory will be even greater. How do we know about the final victory? This is a prophecy and a promise: a child will be born to the house of David. He will rule over all governments with the symbol of authority displayed on His shoulder. He will be known by many names: **Wonderful** because of his conception and birth, preaching, miracles, sufferings, death, resurrection and ascension; **Counselor** who fulfills, gives and instructs regarding the law-He also pleads for the guilty; **The mighty God** who effectively destroys all His enemies; **The Father of All Eternity**, our Creator and the origin of all that exists; **The Prince of Peace**-not only is He the author of peace as well as the giver of peace, but He is the ultimate ruler by peace which leads to prosperity for all. His peaceful and just governing will increase and spread until all bow to Him. The passion of the Lord God has put all this into motion. God sent a message to the house of Jacob and all of Israel knew about it – even the northern kingdom with its capital in Samaria. Unfortunately, the Israelites are very proud and ignored God's word. They said things weren't all that bad. If their walls got knocked down, they would just rebuild stronger. If their sycamore trees got cut down, they would re-plant cedars. [Biblical sycamores are made of coarse and spongy wood. Biblical cedars are beautiful and ornamental in nature.] The Lord allowed the Syrians and Philistines to join forces and conquer Israel. Still the Jews did not turn to the Lord, in one day God cut down the arrogant elders and the lying prophets. These are the people who led them to their destruction. That's why the Lord lost His joy in the young men and no longer had mercy for the widows and orphans. Every single one of them was a hypocrite and evil doer. Everything that came out of their mouths was wrong, stupid, gossip or lies. His anger was still violent and the Lord's fist was still raised. Their lives were still raging out of control like a fire that burns everything in its path.

No one was spared. Everyone turned on family and friends, then they turned on Judah. A word of warning to those who lead poorly, whether by writing bad laws or punishing the needy simply because they are poor or stealing from the widows and orphans. What are you going to do when God's anger is poured out on you? Where will you go to hide from His punishment? Since you didn't include Him in worship, you won't have His protection and you'll be captured by those who were captives themselves – but that's not all. God is still angry with you. **5^** "God used the country of Assyria to take out His anger on the Jews. He wanted the Assyrian king to take the people and their possessions, then push them in the mud, so to speak. This Assyrian king had other plans though. He decided to destroy as many nations as he could, including the Jews. He considered his commanders to be kings under him and let them do whatever they wanted. The king bragged that some of the countries he destroyed had better idols than the Israelites and Judahites. Since he had already destroyed Samaria [the capital of Israel in the north], why shouldn't he destroy Jerusalem [capital of Judah in the south]? When God has finished punishing Jerusalem, including Mount Zion just outside the walls, He will then turn his punishment on the king of Assyria because of his arrogance. The king claimed to have conquered all those nations and took all the riches by himself – those losers didn't stand a chance against the mighty Assyrians. The anger of the Lord will sweep through Assyria like a wild fire, destroying the high and mighty (the forest) as well as the common people (thorns). Then the Israelites and Judahites who are still alive will turn back to God. (Fortunately, the Assyrian army hadn't been able to kill every last Jew!) The Lord told the Jews not to worry – they wouldn't be like slaves to the Assyrians much longer. God would strike down the Assyrians like He did Prince Oreb and the Midianites with the help of Gideon and like He drowned the Egyptian army in the Red Sea when they chased the Israelites. Although the Assyrian army is out to destroy all the cities surrounding Jerusalem, from Ai to Nob, God will utterly do away with the Assyrian king and his mighty army.Someone from Jesse's (King David's father) family will come along and the Spirit of the Lord will be strong with that person. His wisdom and understanding will surpass all others because of His closeness with God. He will not judge by what He sees and hears, but He will judge righteously. When that happens, there will be peace in the world, including the animal kingdom. Wild beasts will mingle together with no fear of each other. Young children will be safe from snakes, even when the snake is coiled up in its home. The knowledge of God will spread over the whole earth and nothing will injure or destroy other creatures in God's holy mountain. Gentile believers will search for this man from Jesse's family and His ways. Once more, God will gather the remnants of His people from all over the earth. Together the Israelites and Judahites will go against their enemies from the Philistines to the Edomites, Moabites and Ammonites. God will dry up the Red Sea and other large rivers so they can easily be crossed by the Jews. There will also be a highway from Assyria to Jerusalem, just like there was from Egypt to the Promised Land during Moses' time. The people will rejoice and praise God as they once again return to Him. God will gather an army from all nations far and wide to completely destroy Babylon one last final time. This army includes all Jews from everywhere not currently being held captive in Babylon. It especially includes the Medes and Persians. As they all gather, they shout like thunder coming down from the mountains. Panic sets in and the terrified Babylonians don't know which way to turn. [Isaiah describes the end of the Babylonian empire as being like the lights in the sky going out.] The Medes aren't satisfied with taking the treasures and riches of Babylon – they don't care that much about silver and gold, not even the pure gold from northeastern Egypt. Instead, they are focused on killing every last Babylonian man, woman and child, whether rich or poor, official or commoner. All must die or be carried away as slaves. Once the king has fallen, all his officials will run like deer or sheep back to their own countries and Babylon the Great will become

deserted except for the wild animals that make their homes there. [All of this happened about 130 years after this prophecy.] God will once again be merciful to the Israelites and return them to their homeland. The Jews will take their masters back with them and the tables will be turned. The former masters will become the servants and the former slaves will become masters in their own country. It will be a time of wonderful joy and happiness for the righteous. Meanwhile, down in hell, the wicked leaders rejoice when another one joins them. They make all these great plans to take over, but Babylon the Great will be no more. Just like a branch is offensive when someone was hanged on it, or a sword is disgusting when it has killed someone, or a stone is filthy when it was used to stone someone to death, so are the evil kings of this world offensive. Unlike those items which are buried with the bodies connected to them, the king of Babylon won't even be buried. His body will be thrown out and left to be trampled on. Why? Because he destroyed his lands and the lands he conquered which in turn killed the people. He just left his prisoners to die in prisons. He didn't care what happened to the people. All he cared about were the treasures. Now he will leave nothing behind – not even sons and grandsons to take over when he is gone. God will use a broom of destruction to completely wipe out Babylon. It will never live again except as a deserted land for the birds who like swampy land. He will also destroy Assyria who dares take over the land God promised to His chosen people." This prophecy from Isaiah was delivered the same year that Ahaz, king of Judah died. [King Uzziah had held back the Philistines during his reign, but his son Ahaz was weaker. After Uzziah died and Ahaz was king, the Philistines invaded Judah and took over the southern kingdom.] Isaiah also warns the Philistines not to get too excited because their time is also coming. Even though the king who defeated them was gone, another more vicious conqueror would soon come along. God will destroy the Philistines with starvation and war. The Israelite army from the north coming after the Philistines will be so great, the dust they kick up will look like a cloud of smoke. Only the poor and needy believers who flee to Zion will find food and safety. Nephi admitted that much of what Isaiah had written was hard for his fellow Nephites to understand because they had not been taught many of the Jewish ways. Isaiah's words, however, were easy for those who had the gift of prophecy, as Nephi did.

Nephi himself went on to prophesy, but in a plainer language so all those with him and those who would later in history read his writings would be able to understand exactly what Nephi was saying. He told about things to come, including:

- Israel would be scattered, then gathered together again
- Very specific predictions about the Messiah [Jesus] coming and His time here on earth
- Christ will come to the Nephites
- The final destruction of the Nephites
- The days of the Gentiles (that's us!)
- God's judgments on the wicked
- The sealed book
- The unlearned man

Thoughts on Sealed Book and an Unlearned Man - Isaiah

The following is an excerpt from a newspaper article published in Times and Seasons and written by Joseph Smith, translator of the Book of Mormon. Copies of the entire article are available from The Remnant Church headquarters.

Joseph Smith Tells His Own Story

Sometime in this month of February the aforementioned Mr. Martin Harris came to our place, got the characters which I had drawn off the plates and started with them to the city of New York. For what took place relative to him and the characters, I refer to his own account of the circumstances as he related them to me after his return which was as follows:

"I went to the city of New York and presented the characters which had been translated, with the translation whereof to Professor Anthon, a gentleman celebrated for his literary attainments. Professor Anthon stated that the translation was correct, more so than any he had before seen translated from the Egyptian.

I then showed him those which were not yet translated, and he said that they were Egyptian, Chaldaic, Assyriac, and Arabic, and he said that they were the true characters. He gave me a certificate certifying to the people of Palmyra that they were true characters, and that the translation of such of them as had been translated was also correct.

I took the certificate and put it into my pocket, and was just leaving the house, when Mr. Anthon called me back, and asked me how the young man found out that there were gold plates in the place where he found them. I answered that an angel of God had revealed it unto him.

He then said to me, 'Let me see that certificate.' I accordingly took it out of my pocket and gave it to him, when he took it and tore it to pieces; saying that there was no such thing now as ministering of angels, and that if I would bring the plates to him, he would translate them. I informed him that part of the plates were sealed, and that I was forbidden to bring them. He replied, 'I cannot read a sealed book.' I left him and went to Dr. Mitchill, who sanctioned what Professor Anthon had said respecting both the characters and the translation."

~~~~~~~~~~

FOLLOWING PAGE COMPARES ISAIAH WITH THE BOOK OF MORMON REGARDING A SEALED BOOK AND AN UNLEARNED MAN:
~~~~~~~~~~

Isaiah 29

10 For the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep, and hath closed your eyes: the prophets and your rulers, the seers hath he covered.
11 And the vision of all is become unto you as **the words of a book that is sealed, which men deliver to one that is learned, saying, Read this, I pray thee: and he saith, I cannot; for it is sealed:**
12 **And the book is delivered to him that is not learned, saying, Read this, I pray thee: and he saith, I am not learned.**
13 Wherefore the Lord said, Forasmuch as this people draw near me with their mouth, and with their lips do honor me, but have removed their heart far from me, and their fear toward me is taught by the precept of men:

~~~~~~~~~~

2 Nephi 11

124 For behold, ye have closed your eyes, and ye have rejected the prophets, and your rulers, and the seers hath he covered because of your iniquity.
125 And it shall come to pass, that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you **the words of a book, and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered.**
126 **And behold the book shall be sealed**: and in the book shall be a revelation from God, from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof.
127 Wherefore, because of the things which are sealed up, the things which are sealed, shall not be delivered in the day of the wickedness and abominations of the people.
128 Wherefore the book shall be kept from them.
129 But the book shall be delivered unto a man, and he shall deliver the words of the book, which are the words of those who have slumbered in the dust; and he shall deliver these words unto another; but the words which are sealed, he shall not deliver, neither shall he deliver the book.
136 But behold, it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom **he shall deliver the book**, Take these words which are not sealed, and deliver them to another, that he may shew them unto the learned, saying, Read this, I pray thee.
137 And the learned shall say, Bring hither the book, and I will read them:
138 And now, because of the glory of the world, and to get gain, will they say this, and not for the glory of God.
139 And the man shall say, I cannot bring the book, for it is sealed.
140 **Then shall the learned say, I cannot read it.**
141 **Wherefore, it shall come to pass, that the Lord God will deliver again the book and the words thereof, to him that is not learned; and the man that is not learned, shall say, I am not learned.**
142 Then shall the Lord God say unto him, The learned shall not read them, for they have rejected them, and I am able to do mine own work; wherefore, thou shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee.
143 Touch not the things which are sealed, for I will bring them forth in mine own due time: for I will shew unto the children of men, that I am able to do mine own work.
~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 52 Study Questions

1. Who was Fuller? Why did he have a road going through his field? (2 Nephi 9:16 *look up 'fuller'in dictionary)*
2. What will Jesus eat when he is a child and why? (2 Nephi 9:28)
3. When the king of Assyria comes, what 2 animals will the Lord whistle for? (2 Nephi 9:31)
4. What is a mattock as mentioned in 2 Nephi 9:38?
5. ☺ Why did the Lord tell Isaiah to write on a biscuit? *(2 Nephi 9:39 so look up 'roll'.)*
6. ☺ Why would God want to be 'gin' for the inhabitants of Jerusalem? Does he want them to start drinking liquor? *stated in 2 Nephi 9:52 but answer not in scriptures: look up 'gin'.)*
7. What is a familiar spirit as mentioned in 2 Nephi 9:57? Are the wizards chicken? Is that why they peep? *(look up "familiar spirit" in a dictionary, Bible dictionary, or online.)*
8. What happened to the Jews who contacted familiar spirits and wizards? (Leviticus 20:6)
9. What is Jesus' other name? (2 Nephi 9:66)
10. What is Assyria called today?
11. Who was Jesse mentioned in 2 Nephi 9:116?
12. What is a cockatrice as mentioned in 2 Nephi 9:123
13. What is an ensign as mentioned in 2 Nephi 9:125 What is it talking about?
14. Which 'islands of the sea' is referred to in 2 Nephi 9:126? Hawaii? Bahamas? Fiji?
15. ☺ How do we know it was hot in the land where Isaiah lived? (2 Nephi 10: 7,8)
16. What is the golden wedge of Ophir as mentioned in 2 Nephi 10:12
17. What is a chased roe as mentioned in 2 Nephi 10:14?
18. What is a satyr as mentioned in 2 Nephi 10:22?
19. Why do dragons get to have pleasant palaces? (2 Nephi 10:22)
20. ☺ How do we know Isaiah was a country bumpkin? (2 Nephi 10:30)

DID YOU KNOW? Scriptures such as 2 Nephi 10:5 (Isaiah 13:5) mention 'the end of heaven'. This usually refers to the east. In this case, it was the Medes and Persians.

Significant Quotations

"…and the government shall be upon his shoulder…" ~2 Nephi 9:66
"And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse…" ~2 Nephi 9:116

Lesson 1 Answers

1. What language was 1 Nephi written in? (I Nephi 1:1) **I make a record in the language of my father, which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians.**
2. ☺ What time of the year did Lehi leave Jerusalem? (I Nephi 1:3) **Late summer…just before the fall (autumn) of Jerusalem!**
3. What did Lehi take with him when leaving Jerusalem? (I Nephi 1:29) **and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents.**
4. Why does I Nephi 1:33 say river <u>of water</u>? What other kind of river is there? **In that area of the world, many of the rivers are completely dry during much of the year. To say a "river of water" implies the river has water at all times.**
5. How did Nephi describe himself? (I Nephi 1:47) **I, Nephi, being exceeding young, nevertheless being <u>large in stature, meaning he was tall</u>.**
6. How did Nephi hide without using a wall? (1 Nephi 1:104) **And it was by night: and I caused that they should hide themselves without (outside of) the walls.**
7. Why was Laman was afraid of Nephi (1 Nephi 1:131a) **Nephi was dressed like Laban.)**
8. Did Sam know Nephi was tricking his oldest brother Laman by wearing Laban's rich clothing and thought it was a good joke on his brothers. (1 Nephi 1:131b) **No because he was also scared.**
9. When Zoram realized the men before him weren't the Jewish elders of the temple, did he try to run to Hill Cumorah? (1 Nephi 1:134) **No, he just tried to run away from these men, but Nephi stopped him. Hill Cumorah was not mentioned at this time.**

Bonus Question: What happened to the plates of brass? (IV Nephi 1:57,58; Mormon 2:25; Mormon 3:7-8 Mormon 4:15-18 Moroni 10:1-2)

Ammoron hid the records and Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, went to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records. Mormon was commanded by the Lord not to let the records fall into the hands of the Lamanites (for the Lamanites would destroy them). Mormon made his record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid them in the hill Cumorah. He hid all the records which had been entrusted to him except a few plates which he gave to his son Moroni who later sealed the records and hid them where only he and the Lord knew.

Lesson 2 Answers

True or False?

1. Although he was strong in the Lord, Nephi was actually quite small in size. (1 Nephi 1:135) **False He was large in stature.**
2. Nephi promised under oath to treat his slave Zoram very well. (1 Nephi 1:137) **False Zoram was not Nephi's slave, but he did treat him very well.**
3. It became necessary for Nephi to threaten to kill Zoram with Laban's sword because he fought so hard to escape. (1 Nephi 1:140-141) **False Zoram took courage at what Nephi said and he promised to go into the wilderness with Nephi's father.**
4. Zoram was so angry at being captured, that he vowed to run away at every opportunity. (1 Nephi 1:142) **False He made an oath that he would stay with them from then on.**
5. Nephi needed Zoram to stay with him to help translate the plates of brass for him. (1 Nephi 1:143) **False Nephi needed Zoram to come along so there would be no witnesses in Jerusalem. (The plates were written in a language Nephi could read)**
6. This fruit was capable of making one see the future. (1 Nephi 2:49,52) **False It was capable of making one happy.**
7. The fruit on the tree in Lehi's dream was an apple. (1 Nephi 2:51; 1 Nephi 3:46) **False it was a white delightsome fruit**
8. Once Lehi ate the fruit from the tree, he felt healed. (1 Nephi 2:53) **False he wanted his family to eat it also. We don't know that he was sick.**
9. ☺ Nephi found a head floating in the river as stated in 1 Nephi 2:55. (1 Nephi 2:54) **False. He saw the head or beginning of the river (The head of a river is also called the source).**

Bonus Question:

What was on the plates of brass?
(1 Nephi 1:158-167; 1 Nephi 1:118; 1 Nephi 6:2; 2 Nephi 3:1-5)

5 books of Moses (creation of the world; Adam and Eve); a record of the Jews from the beginning to the reign of Zedekiah king of Judah; prophecies of the holy prophets; also many prophecies of Jeremiah; a genealogy of his fathers;

the law; the doings of the Lord in other lands, among people of old; prophecies of Lehi concerning Joseph, who was carried into Egypt & his seed (including Lehi & his family).

Lesson 3 Answers

1. Who was Nephi's guide in his vision? (I Nephi 3:38) **Spirit of the Lord**
2. What did he look like? (I Nephi 3:50) **he was in the form of a man; yet, nevertheless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord**
3. In what ways does this vision confirm the Christmas stories in the Bible? (I Nephi 3:53, 58, 61, 62) **in the city of Nazareth I beheld a virgin, Behold, the virgin whom thou seest is the mother of the Son of God. I beheld the virgin again, bearing a child in her arms. And the angel said unto me, Behold the Lamb of God, yea, even the Son of the Eternal Father!**
4. Where do modern-day people who believe in the Book of Mormon fit into the vision of the olive tree? (I Nephi 4:16-17) **And now, the thing which our father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fullness of the Gentiles, is, that in the latter days, when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief, yea, for the space of many years and many generations, after the Messiah shall be manifested in body unto the children of men, then shall the fullness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed; And at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the house of Israel, and that they are the covenant people of the Lord.**
5. What do you learn about the tree of life from other scriptures? (Revelation 22:1-6,14) (Revelation 2:7) (Alma 3:58) (2 Nephi 1:97-98) **And he showed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb. On the side of the river, was the tree of life, which bare twelve manner (kinds) of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month; and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations. And there shall be no more curse; but the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it; and his servants shall serve him; And they shall see his face; and his name shall be in their foreheads. Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates into the city. He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the tree of life, which is in the midst of the paradise of God. He saith, Come unto me and ye shall partake of the fruit of the tree of life; yea, ye shall eat and drink of the bread and the waters of life freely. And to bring about his eternal purposes in the end of man, after he had created our first parents, and the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, and in fine, all things which are created, it must needs be that there was an opposition; Even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being sweet and the other bitter.**
6. Did Lehi fail his children? (Deuteronomy 6: 5-7) "**And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy might. And these words which I command thee this day, shall be in thine heart; And thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up." No, he did not fail them. Lehi taught them about God and the correct way to live that was pleasing to God. Each son chose for himself whether or not to follow God.**

Lesson 4 Answers

1. Where did Lehi find the brass ball? (I Nephi 5:11) **outside his tent on the ground**
2. What was unusual about the brass ball? (I Nephi 5:11,12,32) **strangely made, 2 spindles, writings sometimes appeared**
3. What direction did the brass ball point to start their journey? (I Nephi 5:16a) **south, southeast** After awhile, which way did it lead them? (I Nephi 5:55) **eastward**
4. What other weapons did they have besides their bows and arrows? (I Nephi 1:124; I Nephi 5:19) **sword of Laban; slings & stones**
5. ☺ What kind of machinery piece did Laman and Lemuel lose? (I Nephi 5:26) **their bow lost its "spring" (ability to stretch, not an actual spring)**
6. What did Lehi's group use for light while they were in the wilderness? (I Nephi 5:77) **God**
7. ☺ What very shocking thing did the Lord tell Nephi? (I Nephi 5:163) **stretch out his hand and God would shock Nephi's brothers**
8. How did Nephi know how to build a boat? (I Nephi 5:172) **And I, Nephi, did go into the mount oft, and I did pray oft unto the Lord; wherefore, the Lord shewed (showed) unto me great things**
9. Why did the compass quit working? (Because it got wet? Because it only worked in sunlight? Because it was upside down?) (I Nephi 5:190) **Nephi was tied up**
10. How long did the terrible storm on the sea last? (I Nephi 5:197) **4 days**
11. What did Nephi do while he was tied up? (I Nephi 5:199) **praised God all day long**

Bonus Questions:

What are 3 other names in the Book of Mormon given to the brass ball?
(I Nephi 5:190; Mosiah 1:24; Alma 17:71) **compass, director, liahona***

Why did they have to travel in the wilderness for so long (8 years)? I Nephi 5:54,57) **To be strong enough physically and spiritually to live in the Promised Land.**

Lesson 5 Answers

1. What did Lehi and Sariah do when Laman refused to untie Nephi? (I Nephi 5:201-204) **became grief strickened almost to death (very sad because of their children)**
2. What made the storm quit? (I Nephi 5:210) **Nephi prayed to the Lord**
3. ☺ How much will it cost the world to gather the people in? (1 Nephi 5:255) **all the people who are of the house of Israel will I gather in, from the <u>4-quarters</u> of the earth ($1)**
4. How will Satan's church be destroyed? (I Nephi 7:26-27) **they will fight among themselves**
5. What will happen to the proud and wicked people when Satan loses his powers? (I Nephi 7:33,36) **They will be burned by fire**
6. What will cause Satan to lose his power? (I Nephi 7:60) **Righteousness of the people**
7. How can you tell if a person is a righteous follower of God? (I Nephi 7:64) **they have repented**
8. Why does God want our hearts broken? **God wants us to be sorry that we have sinned and to try to not sin anymore (this is the definition of 'repent' – to turn away from sinning.)** What is a contrite spirit? **A spirit that is repentant**. (2 Nephi 1:72)

Bonus Questions:

What does it mean in I Nephi 7:22 that the Lord will "bare His arm"? (This phrase comes from Isaiah 52:10) **God will show His power or strength** How will he do this? (2 are worldly ways and 2 are spiritual ways) (I Nephi 7:22-25) **1. Free the Israelites. 2. Gather them together to the land of their inheritance. 3. Bring them out of spiritual darkness. 4. They will know that the Lord is their Savior & Redeemer.**

Lesson 6 Answers

1. What did Nephi call his brothers? (2 Nephi 3:37) **enemies** Why? **Because of all the things they had done to him.**
2. Name something that gave Nephi the strength to continue on. (2 Nephi 3:39) **angels came down and ministered to him**.
3. What does "redeem" mean in 2 Nephi 3:51? **To recover something by paying a price; the payment of a debt.**
4. ☺ Why didn't Nephi want to have fun on a road that wasn't fancy? (2 Nephi 3:55) **Strict = upright; plain = smooth (always do the right thing, especially when you're out in the open where others can see you)**
5. How does 2 Nephi 3:64 compare to James 1:5? 64
   Yea, I know that God will give liberally to him that asketh.

   If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him.
6. If Nephi tried to build a temple like Solomon's, why couldn't he build it? (2 Nephi 4:22-25) **Constructed like Solomon's but not as many precious ornaments because there weren't any precious things like them in this land. Still had fine workmanship of wood, iron, copper, brass, steel, gold, silver, & precious ores.**
7. Does Jesus have wings? (2 Nephi 11:22) **He will arise with healing in his wings. [See explanation page on 'prayer shawl']**
8. What will happen to the people who do away with the prophets and saints? (2 Nephi 11:62-69) **They shall perish, burn up, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up, mountains shall cover them, whirlwinds shall carry them away, buildings shall fall upon them, and crush them to pieces and grind them to powder.**
9. How did the Gentiles cut down the Nephites and Lamanites? (2 Nephi 11:81-82) **They camped against them round about, and shall have laid siege against them with a mount, and raised forts against them. [Cortez and other explorers were Gentiles.]**
10. What is a familiar spirit? (2 Nephi 11:84) Some biblical scholars believe the Biblical reference means witchcraft. Does the Book of Mormon shed more light on this phrase? **The Book of Mormon speaks with a 'familiar voice' to those who already have the Bible. The teachings of the Book of Mormon will seem familiar to people who had already read & accepted the Bible.**
11. What is the sealed book as mentioned in the Book of Mormon as well as the Bible? (2 Nephi 11:86, 126-144; 2 Nephi 12:80; Ether 1:86-90; Isaiah 29: 12-16, 20-21) **The Book of Mormon is sealed 2 ways: 1) some plates fastened together; 2) the language used on some plates was unknown; it was neither Hebrew nor Egyptian but was in a language that cannot be read yet.**
12. What are secret combinations as mentioned in 2 Nephi 11:93? (See also Inspired Version of the Bible Genesis 5:14-15) How does this compare to John 3:20? **Secret joining together; union; alliance. These secret groups work in darkness. Jesus said, "Every one who doeth evil hateth the light, neither cometh to the light, lest his deeds should be reproved."**
13. What is priestcraft? (2 Nephi 11:106) "**men preach and set themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain, and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion." (It is the opposite of priesthood.)**

Opinion: Why did Lehi bless Sam last? Sam was the 3rd oldest son, but received his blessing after his younger brothers, his nieces and nephews, and his father's friend's family. **His was the easiest to give and he knew he wouldn't need much strength for Sam's blessing. It was not controversial.**

Lesson 7 Answers

1. Is it ok to be happy? (2 Nephi 12:9-12) **It's ok to eat, drink, and be merry as long as you are still following God's ways. It is not ok if you feel you can do whatever you want and God will still let you into heaven.**
2. Nephi mentions "wo" 7 times in 2 Nephi 12:31-41. What does "wo" mean? **Deep suffering from trouble, burden, or pain.**
3. What is a whoredom, religiously speaking? (2 Nephi 12:18) **Idolatry.**
4. What does the Book of Mormon say baptism is? (2 Nephi 13:24-25) **The gate which lets you onto the straight and narrow path which leads to eternal life.**
5. Why did Nephi's eyes water? (2 Nephi 15:4) **He cried for the people who rejected the Holy Spirit and many things that had been written.**
6. What is an anti-Christ? (Jacob 5:2-4) **Any *person who opposes the Lord is an anti-Christ. His opposition may come in 2 ways:***

   He may set himself up as a savior of the people and offer them a counterfeit salvation based on principles which are spread by him but are calculated to bring him the honor and glory of the world. In other words, through either word or action, he says, "I am the source of salvation and power."

   The second way he can be an anti-Christ is to set up any other person or system as a substitute for the Savior and then seek to transmit this substitute in the hearts and minds of the people. Either way, the result is the same: people are taught to reject the Master and to seek elsewhere for the solution to their spiritual problems.
7. If it is wrong to seek for a sign, is it wrong to seek the gifts of the Spirit? (Jacob 5:22-23)

   Sign seeking is gross wickedness. An evil and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign, the Master said.

   To seek the gifts of the Spirit through faith, humility, and devotion to righteousness is not to be confused with sign seeking.

Lesson 8 Answers

1. Did Jacob really speak French? (Jacob 5:48)
   Some critics of the Book of Mormon have raised the question as to how Jacob could possibly have used such a word as "adieu" when this word clearly comes from the French language, which was not developed until hundreds of years after the time of Jacob. These critics evidently overlook the fact that the Book of Mormon is a <u>translation</u>, and Joseph Smith used words familiar to himself and his readers that would best convey the meaning of the word. It is interesting to note that there is a Hebrew word Lehitra 'ot, which has essentially the same meaning in Hebrew as the word adieu has in French. Both of these words are much more than a simple farewell; they include the idea of a blessing. We might remind these critics that <u>none of the words</u> contained in the English translation of the book of Jacob were used by Jacob himself - Jacob did not speak English.
2. What does "remission" mean? (Enos 1:3) **Dictionary defines remission: discharge from penalty; pardon; deliverance as from a debt or obligation.**
   (not temporary relief, as disease is in remission…but permanent deliverance)
3. Who did Enos wrestle with? (Enos 1:3)
   CAUTION: THIS IS COULD BE TRICKY...READ THE SCRIPTURE CAREFULLY!
   Enos did not wrestle <u>with</u> God. Enos wrestled <u>before</u> God. But who besides God and Enos was present during the long struggle which took place? No one. Enos wrestled alone. Sometimes the greatest effort is when we challenge ourselves before the Lord. This type of wrestling is the struggle to find and express one's true desires, which are sometimes hidden behind a backlog of sin, evasion and cover up. Wrestling with oneself involves deep thought, meditation and concentration. It means going beyond the first level of prayer to the point at which one truly pours his soul into his words and offers them to God. Repetitions are not in vain, petty, or unfelt. Instead, each phrase is an expression of a yearning desire. But this desire is a yearning to do God's will. Romans 8:26 tells us prayers like this are assisted and guided by the Holy Spirit who intercedes with groanings which cannot be uttered. Notice Enos' choice of words in these verses "sunk deep", "hungered", "cried unto him in mighty prayer and supplication" "all the day long did I cry", "I did still raise my voice high". Enos tells us he prayed <u>first</u> for his soul. One cannot bless others with truth until his own soul has been cared for. Enos was so determined to succeed with God that he cried unto the Lord all day and into the night. When someone is in a state of sin but really wants to be forgiven, there is a lot to talk about to the Lord. Enos' soul was hungry. He put forth his best effort to be heard.
4. Many people don't believe the Book of Mormon could be true because of things like the mention of "machinery" in the Book of Mormon (Jarom 1:19). What types of machinery do you believe were used during this time period?
   - **Potter's Wheel**
   - **Iron smelting furnace (discovered in 1951)**
   - **20-ton cut stones were fitted without mortar so a slip of paper can't be wedged in.**
   - **An ancient road roller has been found. It is a stone cylinder 28" diameter, 13' long, weighing 5 tons.**
   - **Evidence of surgery has been discovered.**

Lesson 9 Answers

1. Why did the Book of Mormon change from first person ("I, Nephi…") to third person ("he had…") in Words of Mormon 1:18? (Words of Mormon 1:5-13) **The first part was written directly by the keepers of the records. From Words of Mormon 1:18 on, they were condensed by Mormon and his son Moroni and written by them.**
2. What did King Benjamin use to fight against the Lamanites? (Words of Mormon 1:20-21) **His own strength, the sword of Laban, and the strength of the Lord.**
3. Who were the sons of King Benjamin? (Mosiah 1:2) **Mosiah, Helorum, Helaman**
4. What does "the mysteries of God" mean? (Mosiah 1:4, 7, 39) **The basics of the gospel of Jesus Christ. They are not mysterious or hard to understand, but they are unavailable to the natural man. They must be revealed by God through faith and obedience. They are designed to lead God's children to eternal life. A mystery in the religious sense is a truth that cannot be known except through divine revelation.**
5. What does the word "suffered" mean in Mosiah 1:42? **To allow or permit** "Yet, as I have been chosen by this people, and was consecrated by my father, and was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler…"

Lesson 10 Answers

1. How did Jesus bleed? (Mosiah 1:101) **blood cometh from every pore**, so great shall be his anguish for the wickedness and the abominations of his people.
2. What action can cause both you and your neighbor to sin? Mosiah 2:46-47 **Not returning what you borrowed.**
3. According to Mosiah 3:8 who is the father of those who have entered into a covenant with God? (hint: the answer is not "God".) "**And now, because of the covenant which ye have made, ye shall be called the children of Christ, his sons, and his daughters".**
4. What does it mean that God will seal you as mentioned in Mosiah 3:21? **Bind you to Him.**
5. What was the tax that the Nephites living in the land of Lehi-Nephi had to pay to the Lamanites? **½ of their corn and barley and every kind of grain and ½ of the increase of their flocks and herds. In short, ½ of everything they had.** (Mosiah 5:35,36)
6. What was the penalty if they Nephites didn't pay their taxes? (Mosiah 5:36) **Death**
7. What 2 periods of time can a seer know about? **The past and things to come.** (Mosiah 5:78)
8. Why was there a Civil War among the Nephites? **Some wanted to kill Zeniff because they wanted to destroy all the Lamanites and Zeniff dared to report there was some good in the Lamanites. Others believed him and tried to rescue Zeniff.** (Mosiah 6:3-4)
9. What is an affliction? **Great continued suffering or trouble of body or mind** (Mosiah 6:6)
10. What is a famine? What caused it among the Nephites? **A wide spread lack of food; starvation; anything scarce, such as water. They forgot God.** (Mosiah 6:6)
11. Why did Zeniff want to see the king? [state 2 related reasons]
    a) to find out the king's disposition (natural tendency, spirit, temper)
    b) to find out if Zeniff & his people could possess the land in peace (Mosiah 6:8)
12. What was the king's response to Zeniff's request? **He promised Zeniff they could have the land of Lehi-Nephi, and the land of Shilom** (Mosiah 6:9)
13. Did Zeniff's group live among the Lamanites in the land of Lehi-Nephi and the land of Shilom? **The King commanded his people to get out of that land, so Zeniff and his people could live there. It was a city of Nephites surrounded by Lamanites.** (Mosiah 6:10)

Bonus Question: Mosiah 1:17-18 says King Benjamin gave his people a name. What was it? (Mosiah 3:11**) "There is no other name given, whereby salvation cometh, therefore, I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ**…" When we are baptized we covenant to take upon ourselves the name of Jesus Christ and we partake of the sacrament we renew that covenant. Over and over we are told that everything we do is to be done in his name.

Lesson 11 Answers

1. What is a cimeter as mentioned in Mosiah 6:19? Is it smaller than an inch??? **A cimeter, spelled several different ways (cimiter, cimitar and scimitar) is a curve-bladed short sword, still used in oriental and Middle Eastern countries such as Turkey.** A centimeter is smaller than an inch!
2. 12 years after Zeniff & his people arrived in the land of Lehi-Nephi, there was a battle. How many were killed? (Mosiah 6:23,25) **3,043 wild, ferocious, & bloodthirsty Lamanites; 279 Nephites who put their strength in the Lord. The Lamanites may have been bloodthirsty, but were they skilled?**
3. In 3 words or less, , why did the Lamanites hate the Nephites? (Mosiah 6:46-53) **"they were wronged "Believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem, because of the iniquities of their fathers, and that they were wronged in the wilderness by their brethren; and they were also wronged, while crossing the sea. And again: that they were wronged while in the land of their first inheritance, after they had crossed the sea, because he [Nephi] departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him, and took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass; for they said that he robbed them. And thus they have taught their children, that they should hate them, and that they should murder them, and that they should rob and plunder them, and do all they could to destroy them; therefore, they have an eternal hatred towards the children of Nephi.**
4. What is ziff? (Mosiah 7:6,11) **A type of metal mined by the Nephites to make weapons and machinery. Its properties & exact nature are unknown.**
5. How much did King Noah tax his own people…and why? (Mosiah 7:6-18)

   1/5 of all their possessions – so King Noah could…

   1. **support himself, and his wives, and his concubines**
   2. **support his priests, and their wives, and their concubines**
   3. **support their laziness, idolatry, iniquity.**
   4. **build & decorate many elegant and spacious buildings**
   5. **build & decorate a spacious palace & throne**
   6. **decorate the temple**
   7. **decorate seats for the priests**
   8. **build a breastwork for the priests to rest their bodies and their arms upon while lying to the people**
   9. **build a tower so the king could see all he owned**
      build many buildings
6. Why were the Nephites living in Lehi-Nephi blind? (Mosiah 7:43) *Now the eyes of the people were blinded; therefore, they hardened their hearts against the words of Abinadi.* **It is a figure of speech meaning they no longer recognized a prophet of God or his teachings. It means the same as their hearts were hardened.**
7. How valuable is the life of a king? (Mosiah 7:50) **as much as a garment in a hot furnace (not much!)** *And it shall come to pass that the life of King Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace; for he shall know that I am the Lord.*

Lesson 12 Answers

1. How does Mosiah 7:114b compare to Exodus 20:5?
   Mosiah: "I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me";
   Exodus: "I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me";
   Same except Exodus says "iniquity" where Mosiah has "iniquities".
2. Discuss "the sins of the fathers" as noted in Mosiah 7:114.
   This implies "IF" the children walk in the same steps as their fathers. God does not condemn someone for a crime of which he was never guilty. Idolatry is however intentional. By withdrawing divine protection, the idolatrous Israelites were delivered up into the hands of their enemies. This God did to the 3rd and 4th generation as may be seen in every part of the Jewish history and particularly in the book of Judges. This was the only lasting way to keep them from idolatry. After the final Babylon captivity, the Israelites never again disgraced themselves by worshipping idols.
3. Why did Abinadi quote the 10 commandments? **They are a basic part of the Mosaic law, showing the priests didn't even know or follow the basics.**
4. Why did Abinadi quote from Isaiah? **Isaiah had a clear understanding of the mission and suffering of the Savior more than 700 years before His birth. By fulfilling the Mosaic law, Our Savior did away with the need for it.**
5. Why did it please God for Jesus to be whipped? (Mosiah 8:25) *Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him* **please = agreeable to; God agreed to allow Jesus to be whipped. It does not mean it gave God any pleasure for it to happen.**
6. What does damnation mean? **being delivered to the devil who will rule over them eternally.**
7. What was the real reason King Noah put Abinadi to death? **King Noah indicated he was condemning Abinadi because he said "God himself was coming to walk with men". But the real reason came out when King Noah said he would spare Abinadi only if he recalled <u>all</u> the words he had spoken against him and his people. The words of Abinadi condemned Noah and his people for their sins. The guilty often try to destroy those who have exposed their guilt.**
8. What are fagots and how did they kill Abinadi? **Scourge=any means for causing suffering or death. Fagot=bundle of sticks, twigs, or branches as used for fuel. He was probably tied up and surrounded by bundles of sticks or twigs. When the sticks were set on fire, Abinadi burned to death.**
9. Who baptized Alma? (Mosiah 9:43-45) **The Lord gave Alma the authority and the Spirit of the Lord was upon Alma.**
10. How many were baptized by Alma on the day Alma himself was baptized? (Mosiah 9:45,47)
    204

Lesson 13 Answers

1. After burning Abinadi at the stake, who was the first enemy King Noah met? (Mosiah 9:77) **Gideon – one of his own Nephites!**
2. What did the king see when he was on top of the tower? (Mosiah 9:79) **an Lamanite army preparing to attack**
3. What did the king ask Gideon and why? What was the real reason? (Mosiah 9:80-81) **To spare his life. So he could save his people. To save his own life.**
4. What did King Noah command the men in the wilderness to do? Did they? (Mosiah 9:84-86) **Abandon their wives and children. Most did not.**
5. What did the group of families do when the Lamanites came upon them? (Mosiah 9:87) **Had their daughters go to the Lamanites and plead to spare them**
6. Did their strategy work on the Lamanites? (Mosiah 9:88-89) **Yes. The Lamanites were charmed by the women's beauty.**
7. Under what conditions were the Nephites allowed to stay in Lehi-Nephi? (Mosiah 9:89-90) **King Noah must be delivered to the Lamanites and they must pay tribute each year of ½ of all their possessions**
8. What happened to King Noah and why? (Mosiah 9:96) **His wicked priests burned him at the stake because the king commanded them not to return to their homes and families.**
9. What did the Lamanite king do with some of the tribute (taxes) the Nephites gave him? (Mosiah 9:106) **supported his troops**
10. How did the Nephites fight? (Mosiah 9:117, 119) **like lions and like dragons**
11. How did the Nephite army compare to the Lamanite army? (Mosiah 9:118) **half as many Nephites as Lamanites**
12. What caused the war? (Mosiah 9:125) **King Noah's priests kidnapped 24 Lamanite maidens.**

Lesson 14 Answers

1. After the war was over and the wounded Lamanite king returned to his people, how many times did the Nephites attack the Lamanites? (Mosiah 9:145,151,152) **three**
2. Who were the Nephite men ordered to support and why? (Mosiah 9:158)
   They were commanded to help support the widows and their children so they wouldn't starve. They were ordered to do this because so many of the men had been killed.
3. King Limhi sent a search party to find Zarahemla. What did they find?
   (Mosiah 9:167-169) **land of many waters, dried up skeletons, 24 metal plates with engravings**
4. What happened to the people of Lehi-Nephi after Ammon came?
   (Mosiah 9:175,176) **King Limhi & many of his people entered into a covenant with God to serve him, and keep his commandments. Many wanted to be baptized, but there was no one in the land that had authority from God.**
5. Why did Ammon refuse to baptize anyone in Lehi-Nephi? (Mosiah 9:177) **He felt unworthy.**
6. How did Captain Gideon and King Limhi lead the people out of captivity? (Mosiah 10:5-14)
   Knowing the Lamanites liked to drink, they send extra wine to the guards along with their 50% tax of wine supplies. With the guards at the back wall in a drunken sleep, they walked out of the city to find the land of Zarahemla.
7. Did the people of Lehi-Nephi find the land of Zarahemla? What happed? (Mosiah 10:16-17)
   Yes, they found Zarahemla. King Mosiah greeted them with joy.
8. What did King Limhi present to King Mosiah? (Mosiah 10:17) **The records of the people of Lehi-Nephi and the records of the people from the land of dry bones by many waters (Jaredites).**

Lesson 15 Answers

1. What occupation did the priests of King Noah become? (Mosiah 11:35) **Farmers**
2. Why did the Lamanites soften their hearts toward Alma and his followers? (Mosiah 11:32) **The Lord softened it.** Why did the Lamanites soften their hearts toward Amulon and his followers? (Mosiah 11:38) **Because of their Lamanite wives.**
3. What is one good thing that the priests of King Noah did? (Mosiah 11:51) **Taught the Lamanites to keep their own record so they could write to each other.**
4. How did the Lamanites believe regarding 'honor among thieves'? (Mosiah 11:53) **It was acceptable to steal from non-Lamanites, but not from each other.**
5. What did the Nephites do when they were told they couldn't worship God? (Mosiah 11:59) **Worshipped silently.** What would happen if they did? (Mosiah 11:58) **They would be put to death.**
6. ☺ How tall was Amulon? (Mosiah 11:43) **12 inches (he was a "ruler").**
7. ☺ Why would the Lamanites have done well at a car wash? (Mosiah 11:52) **They "waxed" greatly. (wax can also mean to grow larger or increase)**
8. ☺ Since there were no gyms, how did Amulon exercise? (Mosiah 11:54) **He "exercised" (or used) his authority.**
9. ☺ In our lesson today, what did God turn into a candle? (Mosiah 11:63) **Burdens were made "light". (Light can also mean easy)**
10. ☺ Since there were no baseballs, what did the Nephites play with? (Mosiah 11:69) **They "pitched" their tents.**
11. Among the Nephites living in the Land of Zarahemla, who refused to be baptized? (Mosiah 11:105) **many of the rising generation (teenagers)**
12. Were there many non-believers in Zarahemla? (Mosiah 11:110) **not half as many as the people of God; but because of disagreements among the believers, they became more numerous.**
13. Is there a difference between a crime and a sin? (Mosiah 11:111, 118, 119) **A crime is breaking a law of the land; a sin is breaking a law of God.**
14. Should church leaders take action against a member's sins as was done in Mosiah 11:112? **Yes: 1)to preserve the good name of the church & show the world that it does not condone sin; 2)to help the sinner; 3)to assure the righteous that church leaders are not trying to hide or overlook the sins of some while punishing the sins of others.**
15. What is priestcraft as mentioned in Alma 1:18? (2 Nephi 11:106) Men preach and set **themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain, and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion. (It is the opposite of priest hood.)** Why was this worse among the Nephites than the Lamanites? (Jarom 1:23) **The prophets of the Lord threatened the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land.**

Lesson 16 Answers

1. What happened when a church member committed a sin? (Mosiah 11:113-120 and 137-139) **they were delivered up to the priests by the teachers; and the priests brought them before Alma. Alma took them to King Mosiah who refused to judge them and gave them back to Alma. He prayed about it & judged them according to their sin. If they confessed their sins before Alma and God, and sincerely repented, Alma & God would forgive them.** What if he or she didn't repent? (Mosiah 11:141) **They were not numbered among God's people.**
2. What parts of the Book of Mormon remind us of the U.S. Constitution and Declaration of Independence, which were written before Joseph Smith ever heard about the Book of Mormon? (Mosiah 11:153 and Mosiah 13:36, 54, 57) **There should be an equality among all men. Make it a law to conduct business by a voice of the people. Every man should have an equal chance throughout all the land. Assemble together to cast their voices concerning who should be their judges. They rejoiced because of the liberty which had been granted unto them.** ***Dec of Ind: We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty and the pursuit of Happiness.***
3. ☺ What caused the Nephites to grow tall? (Mosiah 11:158) **And the Lord did visit them, and prosper them, and they became a "large" people. (large group or many)**
4. When Alma the Younger was struck down by the angel of God and made mute, what happened to allow him to speak again? (Mosiah 11:183) **the priests assembled themselves together and they began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God, that he would open the mouth of Alma, that he might speak.**
5. Who were the princes living during this time in Zarahemla? (Mosiah 11:203) **Ammon, and Aaron, Omner, and Himni.**
6. How did King Mosiah translate the plates of gold which were written by the long ago tribe of Jaredites? (Mosiah 12:15-18, 23) **by using 2 stones which were fastened into the two rims of a bow, prepared from the beginning, and handed down from generation to generation, for the purpose of interpreting languages; they have been kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he should discover to every creature who should possess the land, the iniquities and abominations of his people.** What are they called in the Bible? (Exodus 28:30 IV and KJV) **Urim and Thummim** What were they called in the Doctrine & Covenants? (3:1a) **Urim and Thummim** What did the Jaredites call them? (D&C Section 15:1b) **Jaredites evidently didn't give the name in their writings. "which if you do, with full purpose of heart, you shall have a view of the Urim and Thummim, which were given to the Brother of Jared upon the mount, when he talked with the Lord face to face…"** What else were they called? **Interpreters**
7. Why did the 4 princes go to the land of the Lamanites? (Mosiah 12:3-4) **that they might cure them of their hatred towards the Nephites, that they might rejoice in the Lord their God, that they might become friendly to one another, and there should be no more contentions (fights) in all the land.**

Lesson 17 Answers

1. What is lucre as mentioned in Mosiah 13:59? **Money, especially the object of greed**
2. Was Moroni the very last Nephite King? (Mosiah 13:67-68) **No - Mosiah died and thus ended the reign of the kings over the people of Nephi.**
3. Why did Alma enforce the death penalty on Nehor? (Genesis 9:12 IV; Genesis 9:6 KJV) **And whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed; for man shall not shed the blood of man. (IV) Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the image of God made he man. (KJV)**
4. What does ignominious mean? (Alma 1:23) **Having to do with dishonor or disgrace.**
5. What does it mean to "impart of your substance" as mentioned in Alma 1:40? **To share your material (worldly) possessions (things that are yours).**
6. Why did the people of the church of God have no respect for poor people? (Alma 1:46) **They were unbiased. They were not prejudiced against the poor.**

Lesson 18 Answers

1. Why did God cause the Lamanite skin to be dark? (Alma 1:106) **So you could tell the 2 groups of Lehi's children apart. God wanted to preserve his people and not have them mix and believe in wrong traditions which would cause their destruction.**
2. Who nominated Nephihah for the office of Chief Judge? (Alma 2:22-23) **Alma**
   Why? (Alma 2:26-27) So **he could go preach among the Nephites, to remind them of their duty, and pull down all the pride, craftiness, and contentions by bearing down in pure testimony against them.**
3. What lit up the souls of the people of Alma I who were baptized in the Waters of Mormon? (Alma 3:12) **The light of the everlasting word.**
4. How did the Lord plan to destroy the land of the Nephites if there had been no righteous prayers during Amulek's time? (Alma 8:32) **Not by flood, but by famine, pestilence, and the sword.**
5. How much money did a judge make? (Alma 8:52) **And the judge received for his wages according to his time: a senine of gold for a day, or a senum of silver, which is equal to a senine of gold.**

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 19 Answers

1. ☺ What kind of money did Alma receive after he started a church at Sidon? (Alma 10:108) **He received a large "check" (Alma and the people checked themselves to make sure they remained humble)**
2. How many of the people living in Ammonihah were killed in the battle at Ammonihah? **Every single one of them**
   (Alma 11:14-16)
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 20 Answers

1. How does Alma 12:11 compare to Mark 6:9 and Doctrine & Covenants 83:15a?

   *Alma 12:11 Nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and **took their swords, and their spears, and their bows, and their arrows, and their slings**.*
   *Mark 6:9 And he called the twelve, and began to send them forth by two and two; and gave them power over unclean spirits; and commanded them that they should **take nothing for their journey, save a staff only**; no scrip, nor bread, nor money in their purse; but should be shod with sandals, and not take two coats.*
   *Sec 83:15a Therefore, **let no man among you** (for this commandment is unto all the faithful who are called of God in the church, unto the ministry,) from this hour, **take purse** or scrip, that goeth forth to proclaim this gospel of the kingdom.*
2. Which way did Ammon go when the brothers split up? (Alma 12:29) **To the land of Ishmael**
3. Which of King Lamoni's ancestors came from Jerusalem? (Alma 12:32) **Ishmael and his family**
4. What did Ammon win for pleasing King Lamoni the first time they met? (Alma 12:35) **the king's daughter as a wife** Did he claim his prize? (Alma 12:36) **No. He agreed to become a servant instead.**
5. How long had he been in the land before he got into his first fight? (Alma 12:38) **On the 4th day (after 3 days of being in the king's service)**
6. What 2 weapons did Ammon use against the Lamanites during his first week as a missionary? (Alma 12:52, 56) **a sling with rocks and a sword**
7. What did the king's servants call Ammon and what does it mean? (Alma 12:83) **Rabbanah, which means powerful or great king.**
8. How many men did Ammon kill the first week he was a shepherd? (Alma 12:89) **7**
9. If the king didn't know what the word "God" meant, how was it that the queen knew what it meant? (Alma 12:101-102, 116, 129) **the king's servants listened as Ammon explained about God and they repeated it to the queen.**
10. Did the queen think the king smelled bad? (Alma 12:131) Did Alma think the king smelled bad? (Alma 12:136) **No. No. He did not stink because he wasn't dead.**
11. Who were some of the groups of Lamanites converted as a result of the missionary efforts of the 4 sons of King Mosiah? **10 of them including…**

    -Anti-Nephi-Lehi's comprised of:
    --**King Lamoni & his kingdom** (Alma 12:101-178; 13:28-29)
    --**Land of Middoni** (Alma 13:30-22)
    --King of all Lamanites and many of his people in the Land of Nephi (including City of Nephi, land of Shilom, land of Shemlon, City of Lemuel, and City of Shimnilon) (Alma 12:190-214; 13:30-14:9 14:17-20)
    -Lamanites converted by the actions of the Anti-Nephi-Lehi's (Alma 14:51-54)
    -Lamanites converted in the wilderness when they remembered the words of Aaron & his friends (Alma 14:62-65
    -Lamanites who went back home after civil war in the wilderness & were converted in their own lands of Ishmael & Nephi. (Alma 14:73-74)

Lesson 21 Answers

1. Name one of the women named in the Book of Alma. What did she do? (Alma 12:150) **Abish. She was a servant to the queen.**
2. Who was the only person in the royal palace who didn't faint and why didn't they? (Alma 12:150) **Abish. She had already been converted. Alma fainted because he was overcome with joy. Abish knew the reason the others fainted was because of God's power.**
3. What made the towns people angry when they saw the bodies scattered on the palace floor? (Alma 12:155) **They saw a Nephite lying among the bodies and knew he must have caused the problem.**
4. What happened to the man who tried to kill Ammon while he was still unconscious on the palace floor? (Alma 12:160) **He fell down dead as he lifted his sword to kill Ammon.**
5. What caused the people of the palace to wake up? (Alma 12:169-172) **Abish the servant touched the queen's hand and the queen woke up. The queen touched the king's hand and the king woke up. Then the others woke up. It does not say if someone touched their hands or if they just woke up on their own.**
6. What does "rebuke" mean as mentioned in Alma 12:173? **To sharply scold, reprimand, restrain by command, a strong authoritative disapproval.**
7. Why did Ammon leave the land of Ishmael? (Alma 12:178) **the people were baptized and became righteous* and church was established.** Where did he go next? (Alma 12:182) **the land of Middoni.** Why? (Alma 12:182) **The Lord told him to go because his brother Aaron and his friends Muloki and Ammah were in prison.**
8. What does it mean to "forbear" as mentioned in Alma 12:203? **To refrain from, avoid voluntarily, to put up with, be patient.**
9. If King Lamoni's father was furious with Ammon the Nephite, why didn't he try to kill him? (Alma 12:204-205) **He did try to kill Ammon with his sword, but Ammon was protected and unhurt by the stabs that would have killed any other man.**
10. Did Ammon's brother & friends ever get out of jail? Explain. (Alma 12:207-213, 216) **Yes. King Lamoni's father agreed to have them released, but it was King Lamoni who talked King Antiomno into letting them go.**

**It is interesting to note the people were baptized first and then became righteous.*

Lesson 22 Answers

1. How often did Ammon preach to the Lamanites in the land of Ishmael once King Lamoni was converted? (Alma 13:29) **Daily**
2. Which king lived in the land of Nephi? (Alma 13:31) **King over all Lamanites; King Lamoni's father; King Anti-Nephi Lehi's father**
3. Why did the Lamanite king in Alma 13:51 have to bow down in order to have salvation, if we don't have to bow down today? **Show humility in a way he would understand**
4. How did God make himself known to the king of the Lamanites? (Alma 13:54) **Struck him as if he were dead**
5. ☺ Who were the pen pals of the Anti-Nephi-Lehi's? (Alma 14:20,30) **they opened a correspondence with the <u>Nephites</u>. (correspondence can mean writing letters back and forth, but it can also mean opening a dialog or line of communication between 2 groups of people who previously didn't talk or communicate with each other)**

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 23 Answers

1. Which Nephite missionary helped convert the Lamanites in the wilderness near Zarahemla? (Alma 14:64) **The <u>words</u> of Aaron and his brethren which were spoken previously in the Lamanites' own land. (It took the Lamanites a while to let the words sink in!)**
2. What caused a civil war in the wilderness? (Alma 14:63-67) **The Amulonites killed the converted Lamanites. The non-converted Lamanites got mad at the Amulonites and went after them, killing all they found.**
3. Who prophesied about what would happen during this civil war? (Alma 14:68-72) **Abinadi**
4. What happened to the non-converted Lamanites once the civil war was over? (Alma 14:73-74) **They went home & many were converted in their own land, so they joined up with the Anti-Nephi-Lehi's & became righteous followers.**
5. What are sheaves and garners as mentioned in Alma 14:85? **sheaves = heads of grain bundled together. garners = storage place; granary**
   (Sheaves in this instance refers to the converts brought into the church by faithful missionaries who had thrust in their sickle, or went out into the world and testified of the Lord. Each of us owes his membership in the church to another person. Someone had to teach us. We are the sheaves that they have reaped. We are the souls that someone has gathered unto the Lord.)
6. Who were the 5 friends who met again after 14 years of being apart? (Alma 15:16,19) **Alma, Ammon, Aaron, Omner Himni**
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 24 Answers

1. What does it mean in Alma 15:55 to "harrow up"? **Most of the time "harrow" means a farm tool used to level plowed ground while breaking up clods. (Here it seems to mean to disturb the mind or become distressed. Alma is scolding himself for stressing out about the things he wants to do, but God has not given him the opportunity or ability to do.)**
2. What scripture is talked about in Alma 16:9? ***Joshua 24:15-16 And if it seem evil unto you to serve the Lord, <u>choose you this day whom ye will serve</u>; whether the gods which your fathers served that were on the other side of the flood, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell; but as for me and my house, we will serve the Lord. And the people answered and said, God forbid that we should forsake the Lord, to serve other gods.***
3. According to Nephite law, what was the punishment for non-believers in God? (Alma 16:10) **There was no punishment. Everyone has the right (or agency) to choose their beliefs. (Did our founding fathers know about the Book of Mormon when they established the laws of our land? See verse 12: *Nevertheless, there was no law against a man's belief; therefore, a man was punished only for the crimes which he had done; <u>therefore all men were on equal grounds</u>.* {All men were created equal}.**
4. What law did Korihor break? (Alma 16:13 & 60) **<u>No law of man, but definitely a law against God.</u> (example: *Jacob 4:13-14 Will ye reject the words of the prophets and will ye reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ, after so many have spoken concerning him? and deny the good word of Christ, and the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and quench the Holy Spirit? and make a mock of the great plan of redemption, which hath been laid for you? Know ye not that if ye will do these things, that the power of the redemption and the resurrection which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and awful guilt before the bar of God?***
   Mark 3:24 But there is a sin which shall not be forgiven. He that shall blaspheme against the Holy Ghost, hath never forgiveness; but is in danger of being cut down out of the world. And they shall inherit eternal damnation.
5. Compare Alma 16:13 & 19 to Alma 16:20-21. Is it ok to overlook what someone does as long as it's not against the law? ***Alma 16:13 And this antichrist, whose name was Korihor (and the law could have no hold upon him,) began to preach unto the people, that there should be no Christ… and thus he did preach unto them, leading away the hearts of many… Now this man went over to the land of Jershon also, to preach these things among the people of Ammon, who were once the people of the Lamanites. But behold, they were more wise than many of the Nephites; for they took him, and bound him, and carried him before Ammon, who was a high priest over that people.***
6. What hope did the followers of Korihor have? (Alma 16:19) **when a man was dead, that was the end. There is no after life.**
7. Do Christians believe an innocent child is guilty because of the sins of his ancestors as mentioned in Alma 16:31? **Satan brought sin into the world through Adam, but a person is guilty only by the sins they themselves choose to commit.**
   Mosiah 1:119-120,122 For the natural man is an enemy to God, and has been, from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever; But if he yields to the enticings of the Holy Spirit, and putteth off the natural man, and becometh a saint, through the atonement of Christ, the Lord, and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his father.

And behold, when that time cometh, none shall be found blameless before God, except it be little children, only through repentance and faith on the name of the Lord God Omnipotent. Moroni 8:9-11 Behold, I came into the world not to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance; the whole need no physician, but they that are sick; wherefore little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me. And after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me; wherefore my beloved son, I know that it is solemn mockery before God, that ye should baptize little children. Behold I say unto you, that this thing shall ye teach, repentance and baptism unto those who are accountable and capable of committing sin; yea, teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, and humble themselves as their little children, and they shall all be saved with their little children: and their little children need no repentance, neither baptism.

8. ☺ How do we know the devil has electronic equipment? (Alma 16:51) **Behold, I know that thou believest, but thou are possessed with a lying spirit, and ye have put off the Spirit of God, that it may have no place in you; but <u>the devil</u> has power over you, and he <u>doth carry</u> you about, <u>working devices</u>, that he may destroy the children of God. (devices can also mean plans, schemes, or tricks with a particular aim. Here he is working those plans – not that they are functioning pieces of equipment)**

9. How does the Book of Mormon define "dumb"? (Alma 16:66) **And Korihor put forth his hand, and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I <u>cannot speak</u>; and I know that nothing, save it were the power of God, could bring this upon me; yea, and I also knew that there was a God.**

Trivia Question: *What is the longest Lesson in the Book of Mormon?*

Alma 16 = 261 verses

Lesson 25 Answers

1. Compare Alma 16:76-77 to Mormon 2:6. **Alma 16:76-77 is an example of what the Lord said in Mormon 2:6 "But behold, the judgments of God will overtake the wicked; and it is by the wicked, that the wicked are punished; for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the children of men unto bloodshed."**
2. Why did Alma clap? (Alma 16:116-117**) He clapped his hands upon all them who were with him. And behold, as he clapped his hands upon them, they were filled with the Holy Spirit. 'Clap' can also mean to quickly lay your hands on someone. (hands on head, hands on shoulders.)**
3. Is there a difference between "faith" and "belief"? (Alma 16:151) **Faith is the strong confidence that drives us to action. Belief is accepting something as true. You can't have faith without belief, but you can believe and still lack faith.**
4. Discuss the Nephites taking care of the ex-Zoramites wants instead of just taking care of their needs. Remember these were people who had been poor all their life and now someone was asking them what they wanted. (Alma 16:250) **And they did nourish them, and did clothe them, and did give unto them lands for their inheritance; and they did administer unto them according to their wants.**

Lesson 26 Answers

1. Is something wrong with the Book of Mormon? Why does Mosiah 11:177-185 state that Alma was unconscious for 2 days and 2 nights after the angel spoke to him and his friends; but Alma 17:8 clearly says Alma fell down for 3 days and 3 nights after the angel spoke to him and his friends? **These 2 scriptures are referring to 2 different parts of the same event.**
   Mosiah is talking about the period of time the priests fasted – there is no exact length of time given for Alma's unconscious state. After Alma met the angel and realized how bad his sins were, he fell to the earth almost as if he were dead. Then he was carried to his father, since he was helpless to speak, hear or move. The father of Alma then called for the priests and after the priests had fasted and prayed for the space of 2 days and 2 nights, the limbs of Alma received their strength and he stood up.
   In Alma's testimony to his son, Helaman, 3 days and 3 nights clearly refers to the total time Alma could not open his mouth or use his limbs.
2. Who did Alma and the 4 sons of Mosiah murder when they were teenagers? (Alma 17:11)
   They did not physically kill anyone, but they led many away from God to their spiritual death when they were rebelling against the church, before the angel visited them.
   How does this compare with I John 3:15? "**Whosoever hateth his brother is a murderer; and ye know that no murderer hath eternal life abiding in him."**
3. Discuss Alma 17:33-34. How does this compare with I Nephi 1:170? **Alma 17:34 And now behold, if they are kept, they must retain their brightness; yea, and <u>they will retain their brightness</u>; yea, and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ.** How does this compare with I Nephi 1:169-170? **And now when my father saw all these things he was filled with the Spirit, and began to prophesy concerning his seed; that these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, who were of his seed. Wherefore he said <u>that these plates of brass should never perish, neither should they be dimmed any more by time</u>.**
   Brass, as it is known today, is an alloy (or mixture) of copper and zinc. Brass during Bible and Book of Mormon times was different, since zinc had not yet been discovered. Back then, brass meant copper or an alloy of copper and tin. Because copper tends to corrode when exposed to oxygen, some believe the Plates of Laban (called Plates of Brass in the Book of Mormon), were made of mostly what we call copper, so they would be in need of constant care and polishing.
4. Who was Gazelem? (Alma 17:55) According to Wikipedia, **the punctuation seems to indicate that Gazelem is the name of a stone, not a servant, but this interpretation is not accepted by all. [A phrase that is surrounded by commas is commonly a description of the noun just before it.] The manuscript of the Book of Mormon that Joseph Smith presented to E.B. Grandin for printing did not have punctuation; but Grandin added punctuation with Smith's permission. The identity of Gazelem is uncertain, but the most likely candidates are the seer stones used by Mosiah and Joseph Smith. The Jaredites are the people whose secret works Gazelem is to bring to light, and both Mosiah and Joseph Smith are supposed to have used seer stones to translate the Jaredite record. If Gazelem is an early Nephite prophet, who was given a Urim and Thummim, then there must have been two sets of interpreters among them. The other set of interpreters were the ones given to the Brother of Jared. They were later buried with the plates and used to translate the Book of Mormon (See Ether 1:98-99; DC 17:2c). Another possibility is that Gazelem is not a proper name but a title for a seer. Thirdly, the name may be a reference to Joseph Smith, who was referred to in the Doctrine &**

Covenants as Gazelam when code names were used to conceal the identity of those referred to in the revelations The word 'Gazelem' appears to have its roots in Gaz - a stone and Aleim, a name of God as a revelator or one who gets involved in the affairs of men." (George Reynolds, A Dictionary of the Book of Mormon, p. 92) Also see D&C 15:1

5. What is the difference between a director and directors? (Alma 17:71) **The Liahona, ball, or director was a <u>compass</u>** while directors (Alma 17:56) **were <u>stones</u> called Urim and Thummim and <u>were used to interpret writings</u>. (D&C 3:1a) [note: the B of M definition appears to be the opposite of D&C 15:1b. Joseph Smith may have used the word "directors" in the Doctrine & Covenants to describe the Liahona because this was a multi-purpose tool. According to the Book of Mormon (1 Nephi 5:35) writing would appear on the ball from time to time as there was a need for instruction. The spindles [or pointers] would show the direction the travelers should take. Both tools of the Liahona only worked as long as the travelers were faithful to God.**
6. What does Alma 18:15 mean when it says "bridle your passions that you may be filled with love"? **Does it mean to kill or limit your spirit? The prophet Job told us that when we learned we would come to earth and gain a physical body, we shouted for joy that we should be so privileged. The body is not a thing of evil, something to be ashamed of, even though many sins are fed by our passions. Even as there are many sins, there are many different kinds of passions. James 3:1-5 talks about bridling our tongue. To bridle our passions, means simply to control ourselves. We are not loving when we are tired and irritable or frustrated. Selfishness and greed can often come from our need to clothe, feed and shelter ourselves. There is no evil in the needs themselves, only in the uncontrolled or unbridled need.**
7. What is the unpardonable sin? (Alma 19:8) **To deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you and you know that you are denying it.**
8. Are we like Catholics? What did Alma mean in Alma 19:13 & 14 when he told his son to cross himself? **To cross yourself here probably means to deny yourself. (See Matthew 16:26 "And now for a man to take up his cross, is to deny himself all ungodliness, and every worldly lust, and keep my commandments.") To summarize this verse: "You have been going in this direction; now reverse your course and go in another direction. Repent!"**

Lesson 27 Answers

1. Why did the Lamanite general select Amalekites and Zoramites as captains instead of using his own men? (Alma 20:7-8) **To preserve their (Amalekites & Zoramites) hatred towards the Nephites and to keep the Lamanites stirred up against the Nephites.**
2. If the 10 commandments says "Thou Shalt Not Kill", why did the Nephites feel it was ok to kill Lamanites? (Alma 20:9-13) **These Nephites were defending their families and freedoms. A man's life is his one true possession.**
   A closer translation of the Hebrew word found in the 10 commandments may be "murder by cruelty" instead of "kill".
   Since man was made in God's image, murder destroys God's image.
   Capital punishment is the penalty given to breaking the 6th commandment. (Gen 9:12-13)
   "And whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed; for man shall not shed the blood of man. For a commandment I give, that every man's brother shall preserve the life of man, for in mine own image have I made man."
3. What group of people was the first target of the Lamanite army? (Alma 20:11-13; Alma 15:23; Alma 20:20a) **The Anti-Nephi-Lehi's known as the People of Ammon who were given the land of Jershon for their inheritance by the Nephites.**
   and why? (Alma 20:12 **The Lamanites knew the Anti-Nephi-Lehi's had promised God they would never use a weapon again. If someone fought them, they would die. This made the Lamanites hate them.**
4. What was unusual about the Nephite army? (Alma 20:19) **Their leader was only 25.**
   (Alma 20:21) **They wore armor: breastplates, arm-shields; shields to defend their heads (helmets); and also they were dressed with thick clothing.**

Lesson 28 Answers

1. Who was the second group of people targeted for destruction by the Lamanite army? (Alma 20:25a) **Nephites living in the land of Manti.**
   Why? (Alma 20:25b) **The Lamanites didn't think Moroni's Nephite army would know where they were, so the people of Manti would be a small number of unprepared Nephites and could easily be taken.**
2. Were the priests and teachers of Helaman's time divinely chosen by God? (Alma 21:26) **After being divinely chosen and ordained, they were appointed or assigned to certain churches.**

Lesson 29 Answers

1. ☺ Why didn't Moroni own a coat? (Alma 21:41) **He rents his coat – he doesn't own it! [to rend is to tear something into 2 or more pieces.]**
2. Alma 21:43 mentions Christians as being faithful believers in the church. When were believers first called Christians in the Bible? **Acts 11:26b And the disciples were called Christians first in Antioch.**
3. In Alma 21:46, who did Helaman give the land to that was south of the land of Desolation? **He gave it back to God. The 1966 edition of the Book of Mormon says he <u>dedicated</u> the land south of the land of Desolation.**
4. Why didn't a lot of the Nephites die from disease? (Alma 21:76) **Because of the excellent qualities of the many plants and roots which God had prepared, to remove the cause of the diseases.**
5. Why was the Lamanite army afraid before they even went into battle? (Alma 21:79) **1)they feared to displease the king; 2) and they also feared to go to battle against the Nephites, lest they should lose their lives.**
6. The Nephites fought for a cause. What did the Lamanites call this cause? (Alma 21:131) No, it wasn't a "lost cause". **The Lamanites called it "the cause of Christians". It was to support their liberty, their lands, their families, and their peace so they could live according to their faith in God.**
7. ☺ Why did Moroni have an enlarged heart? (Alma 21:133) **His heart was swollen with thanksgiving to God for the many privileges and blessings which He gave His people. He was a man who worked hard for the welfare and safety of his people.**
8. If the Nephites fought defensively only and never started a fight, how would God take care of them? (Alma 21:137) **1)they would prosper in the land; 2)warn them to run; -or- 3)prepare them for war, depending on the danger.**
9. Why were the Lamanites so confident they would win? (Alma 21:151, 154-156, 166) **1)The Lamanites had already destroyed the city of Ammonihah once and thought it would be easy to overtake again; 2)The Lamanites out-numbered the Nephites; 3)they learned from previous battles with the Nephites to wear armor and protection; 4)they thought they could easily overpower the Nephites; 5)the weak places had now become strong.**
10. Why didn't the Lamanites capture the city of Ammonihah? (Alma 21:157) **The Nephites were prepared for them in a way that had never been seen before on this continent by either Nephites or Lamanites.**
11. What does Alma 21:160 mean when it says, "He (King Amalickiah) did not care for the blood of his people"? **He was a Nephite, but hated Christian Nephites who didn't live as he did.**

Lesson 30 Answers

1. What was one of our constitutional rights as Americans that was not offered to the king-men? (Alma 23:23) **their leaders who were not slain in battle, were taken and cast into prison, for there was no time for their trials at this period.**
2. What happened to the Lamanite prisoners that Teancum captured during battle? (Alma 24:9) **And Moroni also sent orders unto him, that he should retain all the prisoners who fell into his hands; for as the Lamanites had taken many prisoners, that he should retain all the prisoners of the Lamanites, as a ransom for those whom the Lamanites had taken.**
3. What would the Lamanites do if they surrounded the Nephites? (Alma 24:10) **The Lamanites would harass them. (harass=to ravage by raids and small attacks)**
4. What did the Lamanite prisoners of war have to do on their work detail? (Alma 24:50) **The Lamanite prisoners did bury the dead Lamanite & Nephite soldiers killed in battle. They also had to dig a ditch & build a wall around the city where they were kept.**

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 31 Answers

1. What were 2 reasons that Moroni was happy to do what Ammoron asked? (Alma 25:1-2) **by agreeing to a prisoner exchange, 1) he would be able to better feed his army instead of wasting the food on the Lamanite prisoners; and 2) he would be able to get back his people who had been captured.**
2. What is an epistle as mentioned in Alma 25:4? **A written message**
3. What "little" detail did Ammoron add to his suggestion for a peaceful end to the war? (Alma 25:19) **The Nephites must follow the Lamanite leaders and government. (This could include slavery!)**
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 32 Answers

1. Who taught the sons of Helaman about God? (Alma 26:56) **Now they never had fought, yet they did not fear death: and they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers, than they did upon their lives; yea, <u>they had been taught by their mothers, that if they did not doubt, that God would deliver them.</u>**
2. If none of Helaman's sons got killed, why didn't he end up with 2,000 soldiers? (Alma 26:75) **60 Ammonite sons came to join their brethren along with 6,000 other soldiers from Zarahemla. They brought supplies to Helaman's army.**
3. ☺ Who were the skinniest people ever mentioned in the Book of Mormon? (Alma 26:79) **Helaman and the 2,000 sons of the Ammonites. *"And it came to pass that we did camp round about the city for many nights; but <u>we did sleep upon our swords</u>, and keep guards, that the Lamanites could not come upon us by night, and slay us*. [They must have been skinny to be able to sleep on the blade of a sword! What this actually means is they kept their weapons within reach at all times and slept ready for action.]**
4. How did the sons of Helaman follow their leader? (Alma 26:95) **behold, those 2,060 were firm and undaunted; yea, and they did obey and observe to perform every word of command <u>with exactness</u>.**

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 33 Answers

1. What happened to the king-men who were captured by Moroni and Pahoran? (Alma 29:9-10) **They were executed <u>according to the law</u>.**
2. Why were they punished this way? (Alma 29:11) **for the safety of their country**.
3. If the Lamanites were warriors, why didn't they want to fight the Nephites outside of Nephihah? (Alma 29:22) **1) The Lamanites knew how brave and experienced the Nephites were; 2) there were too many Nephites outside to fight…so they stayed inside the city. [Even savages know how to pick their battles!]**
4. Who was Moroni's closest spy that he used against the Lamanites? (Alma 29:23) **Himself - he went to the top of the city wall.**
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 34 Answers

1. Is there a difference between a "narrow neck of land" and a "narrow passage"? (Alma 30:6 vs. Moroni 1:61) **(See page on "Isthmus") Isthmus of Panama is 37 miles wide and the Isthmus of Tehuantepec is 137 miles wide. A narrow passage is not usually many miles wide.**
2. How did Helaman know that the Gadiantons would be mentioned later when he wrote this in the 42nd year of the judges and the Gadiantons didn't reappear until the 67th year of the judges? (Helaman 1:37,51,52; 2:138,142) **It was not a prophesy-Mormon abridged the writings of Helaman (Words of Mormon 1:1,4) and he was adding a comment.**
3. When the secret vows were made such as in Helaman 2:145-146, whose name did they swear by? (Helaman 1:11) **God. "And he went unto those that sent him, and they all entered into a covenant, yea, swearing by their <u>everlasting Maker</u>, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran…"**
4. ☺ How do we know the Nephites had locksmiths? (Helaman 1:44) **Because they had combinations**
5. What does the answer in question #1 really mean? (definition) **A combination can also mean a union, alliance, or group**
6. Who wrote the book of Helaman and who did he blame for wiping out the entire Nephite nation? (Helaman 1:52) **Helaman wrote the book, but Mormon abridged it. Mormon blamed Gadianton another Nephite.**
7. What was unusual about General Moronihah? (Helaman 2:47-48) **Even though he was an army general, he preached and prophesied to the people for repentance of their sins.**

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 35 Answers

1. What was the purpose of the secret society? (Helaman 2:165; 3:22) **To gain power and riches**
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 36 Answers

1. What did Nephi use to level mountains? Had he invented dynamite? How did he acquire this skill? (Helaman 3:122; 115-117) **All he had to do was speak to the mountain and it would crumble.** (115-117) **He was blessed by God <u>forever</u> because he did not give up. He was unweary in preaching to the people.**
2. How did Nephi get out of going to prison? (Helaman 3:129) **He was taken by the Spirit and disappeared.**
3. What 2 things were prophesied would happen in Zarahemla the day Christ was born in Bethlehem? CAUTION! READ CAREFULLY! (Helaman 5:56) **And behold, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that <u>in the night</u>** *before* **<u>he cometh</u>, there shall be no darkness, insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day.** (Helaman 5:63) **There would be a new star in the sky.**
4. What are tidings as mentioned in Helaman 5:126? **News of something that has just happened.**

Lesson 37 Answers

1. What happened to Helaman's son Nephi? (3 Nephi 1:2-3) **No one knows. He left the land one day and was never heard from again.**
2. What were the 3 ways the Nephites kept track of time? (3 Nephi 1:43-45) **1) The number of years since Lehi left Jerusalem (600BC - 92BC); 2) The number of years they had had judges instead of kings (92BC – 9AD); 3)The number of years since the signs of Christ's birth (9AD – remainder of their record).**
3. What are bucklers as mentioned in 3 Nephi 2:38? **A small shield worn on the arm of a warrior to protect his body. It is lighter and more easily shifted about as the soldier fights than a shield. The successful Nephite generals were always inventing new kinds of armor and strategy to surprise the enemy. This gave them a psychological advantage, as well as a physical one.**
4. ☺ Who was Sally that was mentioned in 3 Nephi 2:39? Was she a warrior? **To sally means to rush out suddenly-it was not any one person.**
5. What were the 2 choices the Gadiantons found acceptable to make a living? (3 Nephi 2:46) **Plunder, rob and murder a few Nephites at a time while they were scattered throughout the land -or- fight the Nephites in open war.**
6. What choice was unacceptable to the Gadiantons and why? (3 Nephi 2:47) **Raise their own food. They were afraid the Nephites would kill them while they were working in the fields and would be unprepared. (This was the same thing they had done to the Nephites!)**
7. ☺ How do we know the Gadianton robbers did sewing? (3 Nephi 2:64) **For they [Gadianton robbers] did suppose that if they should cut off the people of Nephi from their lands, and should <u>hem</u> them in on every side.**
8. How many Gadianton robbers were killed every day by the Nephites while the Gadiantons surrounded the fort? (3 Nephi 2:69) **And the Nephites were continually marching out by day and by night, and falling upon their armies, and cutting them off by thousands and by tens of thousands.**
9. ☺ What did the Gadianton leader Zemnarihah draw and why did the people back away from it? (3 Nephi 2:70) **And thus it became the desire of the people of Zemnarihah, to withdraw from their <u>design</u>, because of the great destruction which came upon them by night and by day. "*Design" here means "to make a plan".***

Lesson 38 Answers

1. Weren't these righteous people already baptized? (3 Nephi 3:69-70; 4:41) **Yes, these people had already been baptized, but now they were being baptized for entrance into this new Church that Christ had established by becoming the Savior of the world. If we have been baptized before, but not into this church which has the fullness of the gospel and by one with authority from God to do so, we also have to be re-baptized also in order to gain entrance into this church. This church teaches Christ as many other churches do, but it also has more to offer than other churches. It gives us the opportunity to know more about God and become closer to Him through the additional scripture, sacraments, ordinances, prayer, and study.**
2. On what day did the great storm begin? (3 Nephi 4:6) **The 4th day of the 1st month, not necessarily January 4th. It is very likely that the Nephites would follow the Hebrew calendar which has Nisan as the beginning of the year. This corresponds to our March 15-April 15th. Easter, which is a Christian holy day to celebrate the Resurrection, is always the 1st Sunday after the full moon following the spring equinox. That's why the date changes from year to year, but can't be before March 21st which is the spring equinox. (Equinox=twice a year every point on the earth has 12 hours of daylight and 12 hours of darkness.)**
3. What does "wo" mean in 3 Nephi 4:26? **An exclamation word used to express great sorrow or proclaim disaster.**
4. What does "behold" mean in 3 Nephi 4:28 and almost every verse describing the destroyed cities – as well as verse 44 which tells who is the person speaking? **Look! See! (We might say Hey! or Wow!)**
5. How long did the darkness last in old Jerusalem? (Matthew 27:49) **3 hours long…from the 6th hour until the 9th hour. (9th hour=3p.m. our time)**
6. What was happening in the old country of Israel while the terrible storm was changing the land of the Nephites and Lamanites forever? (Matthew 27:54-55) **"Jesus when he had cried again with a loud voice, saying, Father, it is finished, thy will is done, yielded up the ghost. And behold, <u>the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom</u>; and <u>the earth did quake, and the rocks rent</u>"**

Lesson 39 Answers

1. Why does God want our hearts broken? **God wants us to be sorry that we have sinned and to try to not sin anymore (this is the definition of repent-to turn away from sinning)** What is a contrite spirit? **a spirit that is repentant.** (3 Nephi 4:49)
2. What does Hosanna mean? (3 Nephi 5:17) **Hosanna is Hebrew and means "save, we pray" or in some books "oh, grant salvation". The people recognized that the One the prophets had written about was finally here. Evidently the people were asking the Savior to teach them the way to salvation.**
3. Why did Nephi kiss the feet of Jesus? This had never been done before in the Book of Mormon. (3 Nephi 5:19) **Kissing the feet was an old Hebrew custom and it symbolized complete submission, completely giving yourself to someone.**
4. Why did Nephi and others need <u>power</u> in order to baptize? Was it that difficult? **The church among the Nephites before Christ came was not in its fullness, but was still under the law of Moses. The Savior restored the fullness and gave to them all the ordinances and blessings of the gospel. It actually became a new organization and through baptism, they became members of this new organization. Power also means strength. It would take a lot of stamina to baptize all the people.**
5. Why do our ministers say different words when baptizing someone today?
   "Having <u>been commissioned</u> of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, Amen." (D&C 17:21c)
   - instead of the very specific words of Christ in the Book of Mormon -
   "And now behold, these are the words which ye shall say, calling them by name, saying: Having <u>authority given me</u> of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen." (3 Nephi 5:25)
   The 12 in the Book of Mormon were authorized by Jesus Christ himself to baptize. Today, we are commissioned by Jesus Christ and are given authority through priesthood ordination.
   <u>The meaning in both wordings is the same.</u>
6. Do 3 Nephi 5:27 and I John 5:7 mean that God the Father and Christ Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit are the same? **No, if it did, there would be 3 Gods instead of 1. It means they are 3 different parts, united into 1. There can be unity without having all the parts identical. The Trinity is a perfect unity, with all parts working together as they should.**

Lesson 40 Answers

1. What is a jot and what is a tittle as mentioned in 3 Nephi 5:65? **A jot is an English pronunciation of the Hebrew yodh, the smallest letter in the Hebrew alphabet . It is almost identical with our apostrophe sign ’. Used figuratively, the “jot” signifies something small. A tittle is a small, horn-shaped mark used to indicate an accent in Hebrew. Along with “jot” it means a tiny, minute requirement of the law.**
2. Why do the Inspired Version (Matthew 6:14) of the Bible read differently from the Book of Mormon (3 Nephi 5:105)? If a change was going to be made, wouldn’t it have been made when the Book of Mormon was written or translated and not later when the Inspired Version was printed? **There is no evidence available that helps with this question. The Inspired Version was not published until 1867, long after the prophet Joseph Smith’s death. The question was never raised for him to answer. One explanation is that the scribe for the Book of Mormon translation, Oliver Cowdery, wrote not what Joseph dictated; but, knowing the prayer by heart, put down the more familiar wording. Note that Luke and Matthew did not get it down in the same wording either. Elder A.B. Phillips in “Question Time” states: “so far as I know, there is now no one living who can answer this inquiry with authority, as those involved in producing the work are not here to answer. However the explanation which seems more reasonable to me than others suggested would be that an error must have crept into the text in some way. There are several ways in which this might have happened. The scribe who wrote the manuscript of the Book of Mormon was quite familiar with the King James Bible. At that time, great reverence was felt for the exact wording of the scriptures, and it could easily happen that one would record the language of a familiar text as he knew it to exist. One who has copied or recorded language knows how easy it is to write down an error in this way, because of what is indelibly written in the mind.”**
3. What is a strait gate as mentioned in 3 Nephi 6:26? Why is it hard to find? **Strait = narrow. Few find it because it requires our total commitment.**
4. Who was Christ talking about when he said to the people in Jerusalem “other sheep I have which are not of this fold”? (3 Nephi 7:16) (also John 10:16) **Nephites**
5. Who was Christ talking about when he said to the people in Zarahemla “I have other sheep which are not of this land”? (3 Nephi 7:16) (also John 10:16) **other unknown groups of God’s people scattered by war, captivity, etc. They had not been visited yet by Christ at the time of 3 Nephi 7:24-26). This is an added witness to the story of the olive tree in Jacob 3:46.**
6. Why aren’t the Gentiles allowed to hear the voice of or see Jesus Christ? (3 Nephi 7:21-22) **The Jews are to preach about Jesus Christ to the Gentiles.**
7. Can the Gentiles also receive blessings reserved for the House of Israel? (3 Nephi 7:30-31) **Yes, because of their belief. The Book of Mormon shall come to the Gentiles and they will receive it.**
   Later, when the Gentiles reject the gospel, the word of the Lord is take back from the Gentiles and given again to the house of Israel (3 Nephi 8:36-37) If the Gentiles then repent and return unto the Lord, they will be numbered among the people of the House of Israel (v. 38). Should the Gentiles continue to reject the covenant, however, they will be trodden down and cast out from the promised blessings.
8. Who are Gentiles mentioned in Nephi Lesson 7? **Various groups have been given the name Gentiles in different ages, depending on the historical setting or doctrine.**
   The descendants of Noah’s son Japheth (Gen 10:1-3) were Gentiles, so in this sense, the

descendants of Shem and of Ham would not be Gentiles.
In the days of Abraham, the term was used to refer to those nations and peoples who had not descended from him. In the days of ancient Israel, those not of the lineage of Jacob were considered to be Gentiles, although the Arabs and other races of Semites who traced their lineage back to Abraham would not have been Gentiles in the strict Abrahamic use of the word.
After the Kingdom of Israel was destroyed and the 10 Tribes were led away into captivity, those of the Kingdom of Judah called themselves Jews and all others Gentiles. This concept is probably the one that would have been taught to Lehi, Mulek, and the other Jews who came to this land. It is not surprising, therefore to find the Book of Mormon repeatedly speaking of Jew and Gentile as though this phrase marked a division between all men – to find the United States described as a Gentile Nation and to find the promise that the Book of Mormon would come forth 'by way of the Gentile.'

9. What does "ponder" mean in 3 Nephi 8:3? **Deep meditation or prayer. The Nephites were told to go home and "ponder upon the things" they have heard. This would help prepare their minds "for tomorrow" when Christ would return.**

Moroni lists it as one of the basic elements in gaining a testimony of the Book of Mormon (Moroni 10:3).

Nephi tells his readers "my soul delighteth in the things of the Lord; and my heart pondereth continually upon the things which I have seen and heard. (2 Nephi 3:30)

"For it came to pass," Nephi wrote, "after I had desired to know the things that my father had seen and believing that the Lord was able to make them known unto me, as I sat pondering in mine heart, I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord, yea, into an exceeding high mountain I Nephi 3:38.

Lesson 41 Answers

1. What does "observe" mean in 3 Nephi 8:33? "**Observe" in religion=to obey & agree to the rules limiting this ceremony. It is limited because you must repent and be a baptized believer in Jesus Christ. (*D&C Sec 119:5b) for whether it be upon the first Lord's day of every month, or upon the Lord's day of every week, if it be administered by the officers of the church with sincerity of heart and in purity of purpose, and be partaken of in remembrance of Jesus Christ and in willingness to take upon them his name by them who partake, it is acceptable to God.***

2. How does 3 Nephi 8:70 compare to Moroni Lesson 2? **Moroni 2:1-3 explains more of what happened during the time of 3 Nephi 8:70. Christ touched the disciples to ordain them.**
3. What was unusual about Nephi's relationship with his brother Timothy? – even before Christ appeared to the Nephites? (3 Nephi 9:4) **Nephi raised his brother Timothy from the dead.**
4. What was unusual about the prayers of the disciples when Jesus left them to thank God for sharing the Holy Spirit with them? (3 Nephi 9:24) **and they did not multiply many words, for it was given unto them what they should pray, and they were filled with desire.**

Lesson 42 Answers

1. What prophesy did Jesus give to the Nephites & Lamanites that didn't happen until after the Book of Mormon was published in 1830? (3 Nephi 9:67-68) **Gather the Jews together & given them their land again that was their inheritance.**
2. What other prophesy did Jesus give that didn't happen until after the Book of Mormon came forth? (3 Nephi 9:69) **Fullness of the gospel will be preached to the house of Israel and they will believe. No missionary effort had been started among the Indians or among the Jews in Israel in 1830.**
3. What prophesy did Jesus give that hasn't happened yet? (3 Nephi 9:69) **The Jewish people as a whole have still not accepted Jesus Christ as the Son of God and their Savior. This is still in the future.**
4. What Greek word is found several times in the Book of Mormon? (3 Nephi 9:69-b) **Christ – which means the Anointed One; Savior; Messiah.**
5. Who is the servant mentioned in 3 Nephi 9:95-97? **Joseph Smith**
6. How does 3 Nephi 10:1-2 compare to Doctrine & Covenants 49:5a? **Before the Lord returns, the house of Jacob will flourish and the Lamanites shall blossom. Zion will prosper and be assembled where the Lord said to gather.**
7. How did Jesus describe the words of Isaiah? (3 Nephi 10:27) **great are the words of Isaiah**
8. What does the following mean: "And now it came to pass that when Jesus had expounded all the scriptures in one…" (3 Nephi 11:1) **All scripture centers around 1 common theme-Jesus Christ, the Son of God. To expound the scriptures in one is to speak, teach, write and testify of Jesus.**
9. What were the Nephites called who were baptized after the teachings of Jesus? (3 Nephi 12:13) **The Church of Christ**
10. What does it mean to be sanctified? (3 Nephi 12:33) **To be made holy or free from sin**
11. Why do we need to receive the Holy Spirit after we have been baptized? (3 Nephi 12:33) **Baptism takes away our sin and receiving the Holy Spirit helps us to remain pure & holy.**
12. How will the Nephites and Lamanites be judged? (3 Nephi 13:1-4) **They will be judged by what was written down in their scriptures and how they followed them**
13. Who will judge the Nephites and Lamanites at the last day? (3 Nephi 13:4) **The 12 disciples Jesus chose on this continent**
14. How long is a generation? (3 Nephi 13:7-9) **Can be measured by either: 1)the length of time it takes for a people to generate offspring-around 30-40 years 2) the length of time a man lives-about 100 years 3) the life of the oldest persons living in a particular period 4) all contemporary people living in a given age. (In this verse, Jesus means the 1st definition.)**

How long did the 12 disciples of Christ live? (2-part answer: 3 Nephi 13:13-14 & 3 Nephi 13:18) **1) 9 of the disciples wished to live until they could no longer serve God (age 72).**

2) 3 of the disciples wished to live on the earth until Christ returns in His glory.

Lesson 43 Answers

1. How does Mormon 1:34-38 compared to I Corinthians 5 and II Corinthians 7:8-10? **The Nephites were sinning and knew they were sinning, but didn't care. They purposely turned away from God.**
   Paul told the people in the church of Corinth that they were not doing what God had told them to and they sincerely repented. Paul was very glad they stopped allowing some terrible sins to be tolerated in the church. Godly sorrow is recognizing that by sinning, we have offended God and put our souls in jeopardy of spiritual death. Any other kind of sorrow is of the world and will not lead us to repentance. The sacrifice required of all saints is a broken heart and a contrite spirit.
2. Is there more than 1 reason to be sorry for something you have done? Why were the people in Mormon 1:34,37 sorry? **The Nephites were sorry because God wouldn't let them be happy in their sin by keeping their belongings. He allowed the Lamanites to steal the valuables belonging to the Nephites.**

   1) A person might be sorry he were caught and punished. 2) He can regret what he did because it might ruin his reputation. 3) Or, like the Nephites, he can be sorry because his actions brought misery on himself. These kinds of sorrow don't have anything to do with repentance. True repentance involves being sorry for one's sins which are keeping them from close communion with God.
3. Why were the Nephites forbidden to swear? (Mormon 1:74,75) **Because they were swearing by something they had no authority to swear to and were told not to swear like that. Christ himself told the people 360 years earlier, "And again it is written. Thou shalt not forswear thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths. But verily, verily, I say unto you, Swear not at all; neither by heaven, for it is God's throne; nor by the earth, for it is his footstool; neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because thou canst not make one hair black or white." (3 Nephi 5:81,82)**

Bonus Question: What happened to the plates of brass? (4 Nephi 1:57-58; Mormon 2:25; Mormon 3:7-8)

Ammoron hid the records and Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, went to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records. Mormon was commanded by the Lord not to let the records fall into the hands of the Lamanites (for the Lamanites would destroy them). Mormon made his record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid them in the hill Cumorah. He hid all the records which had been entrusted to him except a few plates which he gave to his son Moroni who later sealed the records and hid them where only he and the Lord knew.

Lesson 44 Answers

1. Who were the "remnant of the seed of Jacob" as mentioned in Mormon 2:54? **Lamanites**
2. How did the Nephites hope to gain the advantage over the Lamanites as mentioned in Mormon 3:5? What kind of weapons did the Lamanites have? (Mormon 3:11) **sword, bow & arrow, ax, and all manner of weapons of war**
3. How many Nephites died in the final battle? (Mormon 3:14-16) **230,000**
4. Why was the Book of Mormon written? (Mormon 3:31) **1) that we may believe the Bible which will prove the Book of Mormon to be true. 2) That we may know of our heritage. 3) The great things which God did here on this continent.**
5. What does the Book of Mormon mean when it says the Nephites were all "destroyed'? (Mormon 4:2) **Destroy means to un-build; to separate violently into its basic parts; to break up the structure." To destroy is to wreck the structure, not vaporize the parts. Example: I Nephi 5:113 talks about Israel in Moses' day that "According to his word he did destroy them and according to his word he did lead them…" bringing them together after they had been destroyed (scattered and in need of a leader). 2 Nephi 11:15 "As one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews…even so they have been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities." A total slaughter of any one generation would of course be the end of their history.**
6. Didn't Jesus promise the 3 Nephites that they could stay on the earth until the end of time? Doesn't Mormon 4:12 say something different? **Jesus didn't promise that they would always stay on the earth, but their lives would be prolonged "until all things shall be fulfilled, according to the will of the Father." 3 Nephi 13:18 All we know for sure is that at the time he wrote the book Mormon, the 3 Nephites were not allowed to remain with the Mormon's Nephite tribe because the ministry of the 3 Nephites would not have been accepted.**
7. Why did God stop performing miracles for so long? (Mormon 4:83) **Because the people didn't believe. They turned from God and His ways. They didn't even know God anymore.**
8. What language was the Book of Mormon originally written in? (Mormon 4:98-100) **The writings of Mormon & Moroni were in reformed Egyptian. Moroni did not mention the small plates of Nephi or the other sacred writings brought from Jerusalem which Laban had been keeping.**
9. What language did the Nephites speak? (Mormon 4:99) **A combination of Egyptian and Hebrew, but their language changed through the.**
10. Moroni abridged the 24 plates written by Ether. What does "abridged" mean? (Ether 1:2-5) **To give the same meaning in fewer words**

Lesson 45 Answers

1. What does "confound" mean in Ether 1:8 and how were the people confounded? **Confound = mixed up; confused. The people were confused because they all spoke different languages.**
2. What was the brother of Jared like? (Ether 1:8) **A large and mighty man, favored by God because of his faith in the Lord.**
3. What language did Jared and his people speak? (Ether 1:9; Genesis 11:8; Genesis 6:5) **Language of Adam**
4. What did Moroni tell us that God promises to the people of this land? What do we have to do? (Ether 1:35) **<u>This is a choice land</u>, and whatsoever nation shall possess it, shall be <u>free from bondage</u>, <u>and from captivity</u>, <u>and from all other nations under heaven</u>, if they will but *serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ* who hath been manifested by the things which we have written.**
5. What is wrong with having a king for a leader? (I Samuel 8:7 Inspired Version) **The Lord was telling Samuel "They have not rejected you, but they have rejected me. They don't want me to rule over them."**
6. How does I Samuel 8:9 compare to Ether 3:28? **Both Samuel and the Brother of Jared were told to give in to the people's request after the people were to be warned of the consequences of their foolish decision.**

Lesson 46 Answers

1. ☺ How do we know King Shule's people were good housekeepers? (Ether 3:57) **people under the reign of Shule the king, did prosper exceedingly and <u>wax great</u>**.
2. What ancient secret promises was the daughter of Jared talking about? (Ether 3:81) **Gen 5:15-16 (I.V. only) And Satan swear unto Cain, that he would do according to his commands. And all these things were done in secret. And Cain said, Truly I am Mahan, the master of this great secret, that I may murder and get gain. Wherefore Cain was called Master Mahan; and he gloried in his wickedness.**

   Gen 5:35-37 For Lamech having entered into a covenant with Satan, after the manner of Cain, wherein he became Master Mahan, master of that great secret which was administered unto Cain by Satan. And Irad, the son of Enoch, having known their secret, began to reveal it unto the sons of Adam; wherefore, Lamech, being angry, slew him, not like unto Cain his brother Abel for the sake of getting gain; but he slew him for the oath's sake. For, from the days of Cain, there was a secret combination, and their works were in the dark, and they knew every man his brother.
   Gen 6:14 And a man's hand was against his own brother in administering death, because of secret works, seeking for power.
3. What is the purpose of secret combinations? (Ether 3:99) **For it cometh to pass that whoso buildeth it [secret combinations] up, seeketh to <u>overthrow the freedom</u> of all lands, nations and countries.**
4. With such little space left on the sacred plates, why did Moroni talk so much about secret combinations? (Ether 3:94,100,102) **These secret organizations caused the downfall of the Jaredites and Nephites and unless we repent, they will cause the downfall of our society too.**
5. Why did the Jaredites eat pork as mentioned in Ether 4:20, but the Lehites apparently didn't eat swine since it was never mentioned among the animals they ate? **Lehi followed the Jewish law taken from Deuteronomy 14:8 "And the swine, because it divideth the hoof, yet cheweth not the cud, it is unclean unto you; ye shall not eat of their flesh, nor touch their dead carcass. The Jaredites left before this law was given.**

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 47 Answers

1. What is a dearth as mentioned in Ether 4:35? **(drought or famine)**
2. How does Moroni's definition of faith (Ether 5:6) compare to Paul's definition in the New Testament of the Bible (Hebrews 11:1) 1)**And now I, Moroni, would…show unto the world that <u>faith is things which are hoped for and not seen</u>**… 2) **Now <u>faith is the assurance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen</u>**.
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 48 Answers

1. What was the name of the mountain that the Brother of Jared told to move? (Ether 5:30) **Zerin**
2. What are the 2 things we must have in order to inherit a place with the Lord? (Ether 5:32 & 34) **We must have hope & charity**.
3. What was the prophesy of Ether to Coriantumr? (Ether 6:21-23) **If he would repent, and all his household, the Lord would give unto him his kingdom, and spare the people, otherwise they should be destroyed, and all his household, save it were himself, and he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies which had been spoken concerning another people receiving the land for their inheritance; and Coriantumr should receive a burial by them; and every soul should be destroyed save it were Coriantumr.**
4. Where was Coriantumr wounded (what part of the body) that was so bad, it took 2 years to heal enough for him to return to battle? (Ether 6:34) **Coriantumr's thigh**
5. How did Coriantumr build up his army? Did it work? (Ether 6:41) **They stayed in the wilderness and lived off the land. Yes, they became very strong also.**
6. How did Shared's brother build up his army? Did it work? (Ether 6:42) **By using secret combinations. Yes, they became very strong.**
7. How did Coriantumr, a professional general (he had studied "the art of war"-see Ether 6:17), feel about the war toward the end? (Ether 6:73,74) **He began to sorrow in his heart; he began to repent of the evil which he had done; his soul mourned; and he refused to be comforted**.
8. Whose side did Ether fight on? (Ether 6:84) **Neither-he did not fight.**

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 49 Answers

1. At the final battle, how did the Jaredites prepare to fight? (Ether 6:87) **Each was given weapons and armor which included shields, breastplates & head-plates (helmets). They also wore clothing suitable to fight in.**
2. ☺ How do we know the Jaredites were skinny? (Ether 6:93) **They slept on their swords!**
3. What priesthood offices have the authority to serve the bread and wine? (Moroni 4:1) **Elders and priests**
4. What does "exhort" and "supplicate" mean in Moroni 6:9? **exhort = to urge by earnestly appealing to someone; to advise or caution strongly. Expound = to ask for something humbly or by earnest prayer.**
5. Why don't little children have to be baptized? (Moroni 8:11b) **little children need no repentance, neither baptism because of their innocence. They don't understand sin.**
6. Besides little children, who does not need to be baptized? (Moroni 8:25) **All they that are without the law.**
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

Lesson 50 Answers

1. What does it mean to "exhort" and "manifest" in Moroni 6:9? **Exhort = to urge; to advise or caution strongly manifest = show**
2. Moroni wrote about faith, hope, and charity. How can we get these 3 qualities? (Doctrine & Covenants Section 18:6a) **Pray always [sincerely] and I will pour out my Spirit upon you, and great shall be your blessing.**
3. How can we become perfect in Christ? 1. (Ether 5:28) **I give unto men weakness, that they may be humble; and my grace is sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me; for if they humble themselves before me, and have faith in me, then will I [Christ] make weak things become strong unto them.** 2. (2 Nephi 11:43-44) **For we labor diligently to write, to persuade our children, and also our brethren, to believe in Christ, and to be reconciled to God. For we know that it is by grace that we are saved, after all we can do.** 3. (Moroni 10:29) **Yea, come unto Christ, and be perfected in him, and deny yourselves of all ungodliness, and if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness, and love God with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace sufficient for you, that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ; and if by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ, ye can in no wise deny the power of God.**
4. How can the Holy Spirit help you become perfect? 1. (Moroni 10:5) **And if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost; and by the power of the Holy Ghost, ye may know the truth of all things.** 2. (Moroni 10:8-9) **And again I exhort you, my brethren, that ye deny not the gifts of God, for they are many; and they come from the same God. And there are different ways that these gifts are administered; but it is the same God who worketh all in all; and they [the gifts of God] are given by the manifestations of the Spirit of God unto men, to profit them.**

Lesson 51 Answers

1. ☺ Why don't bad people have to bow down? (2 Nephi 8:25a) **Mean = poor**
2. ☺ Did the Nephites play baseball? (2 Nephi 8:36) **Maybe-after all, they had bats!**
3. Compare 2 Nephi 8:53 with Micah 3:1-3
   What mean ye? Ye beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor, saith the Lord God of hosts.
   And I said, Hear, I pray you, O heads of Jacob, and ye princes of the house of Israel; is it not for you to know judgment (don't you know what is right)? (You) Who hate the good, and love the evil; who pluck off their skin from off them, and their flesh from off their bones; Who also eat the flesh of my people, and flay their skin from off them; and they break their bones, and chop them in pieces, as for the pot, and as flesh within the caldron. **(pretty violent people!)**
4. Why did the Lord have to discover Israelite women? Didn't He create them? (2 Nephi 8:55) **Discover = expose.**
5. How many automobile parts are mentioned in just a few verses of the Book of Mormon? (2 Nephi 8:56-61) **round tires, chains, mufflers, bonnets, the rings, glasses, and hoods**.
6. In talking about the time of the great gathering, Isaiah indicates it would take place in the day of what 2 methods of transportation? (2 Nephi 8:95-100)) **speed swiftly, none shall be weary nor stumble among them; none shall sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken; they shall roar like the roaring of the sea [jet]** -and- **their horses' hoofs shall be counted like flint & their wheels like a whirlwind [train].**
7. Why does God have a train in His temple? Does He ride in it? (2 Nephi 9:1) **train=end of robe**

Lesson 52 Answers

1. Who was Fuller? Why did he have a highway running through his field? *(mentioned in 2 Nephi 9:16 but answer not found in scriptures: look in dictionary, or online for fuller.)* **A fuller was someone who washed or bleached clothing. Both men and women cleaned clothes and other materials. The cleansing was done by stomping on the garments with the feet, rods, or sticks in containers of water. Alkaline, potash, niter and herbs were used in the washing and bleaching process. Because the cloth could be bleached white by using a combination of alkali, soap, putrid urine, fumes from sulfur and the ashes of certain desert plants, the cleaning process was usually done outside the city where the unpleasant odors could be avoided. The cloth was trampled clean in a running stream and then spread out to dry. The fuller's field mentioned in 2 Nephi 9:16 was located just outside of Jerusalem and it was where fullers washed the cloth material they were processing. A highway and a pipe for water passed through it.**
2. What will Jesus eat when he is a child and why? (2 Nephi 9:28) **Butter and honey. So He may know to refuse the evil, and to choose the good.**
3. When the king of Assyria comes, what 2 animals will the Lord whistle for? (2 Nephi 9:31) **fly, bee**
4. What is a mattock as mentioned in 2 Nephi 9:38? **A single-headed pickaxe with a point on one side & a broad edge on the other for digging & cutting.**
5. ☺ Why did the Lord tell Isaiah to write on a biscuit? *(mentioned in 2 Nephi 9:39 but answer not found in scriptures: look in a dictionary, Bible dictionary or online.)* **A written work on papyrus or parchment rolled around a core or spool. Books with pages did not come into use until the second century A.D.**
6. ☺ Why would God want to be "gin" for the inhabitants of Jerusalem? Does he want them to start drinking liquor? *(mentioned in 2 Nephi 9:52 but answer not found in scriptures: look in a dictionary, Bible dictionary or online.)* **Gin means a trap or snare. The Lord will prevent trespassers from entering Jerusalem, protecting the inhabitants.**
7. What is a familiar spirit as mentioned in 2 Nephi 9:57? Are the wizards chicken? Is that why they peep? *(look up "familiar spirit" in a dictionary, Bible dictionary, or online.)* **A spirit who obeys a sorcerer. To peep is to look into the future as a fortuneteller.**
8. What happened to the Jews who contacted familiar spirits and wizards? (Leviticus 20:6) **God rejected them and cut them off from their families and friends.**
9. What is Jesus' other name? (2 Nephi 9:66) **Wonderful, Counselor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace**
10. What is Assyria called today? **Northern Iraq**
11. Who was Jesse mentioned in 2 Nephi 9:116? **Father of David the shepherd boy**
12. What is a cockatrice as mentioned in 2 Nephi 9:123 **Very deadly snake**
13. What is an ensign as mentioned in 2 Nephi 9:125 **symbol** What does it mean? **Christ**
14. Which 'islands of the sea' is referred to in 2 Nephi 9:126? Hawaii? Bahamas? Fiji? **Probably the islands of the Roman and Turkish empires, the 'known islands' in Isaiah's time.**
15. ☺ How do we know it was hot in the land where Isaiah lived? (2 Nephi 10: 7,8) **every man's heart shall melt**; **their faces shall be as flames. (When God's judgment comes, it will be like living in your worst nightmare.)**

16. What is the golden wedge of Ophir as mentioned in 2 Nephi 10:12 **Ophir was famous for its gold mines and as a port for shipping routes to India. The Medes and Persians will not be satisfied with just the spoils of the Babylonians. They won't accept ransoms. They want to kill every Babylonian.**
17. What is a chased roe as mentioned in 2 Nephi 10:14? **deer being hunted**
18. What is a satyr as mentioned in 2 Nephi 10:22? **marmot or monkey/wild goat/ half man, half goat creature worshipped in Egypt & Greece/devils**
19. Why do dragons get to have pleasant palaces? (2 Nephi 10:22) **Hebrew word "tannin" = long serpent-like creature. Sometimes translated crocodile. [What about Komodo dragons?] Those animals will overtake the palaces and become the only living creatures to reside in the luxurious homes.**
20. ☺ How do we know Isaiah was a country bumpkin? (2 Nephi 10:30) **He said, 'no <u>feller</u> could come up against them'. (A feller is one who fells or cuts down trees.)**

EDITORIAL

OK, I've read the Book of Mormon. Now what? How can searching the Scriptures help us overcome our fears of teaching the Gospel to others?

Today our challenge is to be the best servants possible in the Lord's vineyard. Here is a formula that will help you become successful:

Search the Scriptures thoroughly with a seeking heart while paying close attention.

The scriptures testify of God and contain the words of eternal life. *Your confidence will be directly related to your knowledge of God's word.* Some of us might appear to be lazy in sharing the Gospel with others. If we look deeper, though, we find the problem is not laziness or disinterest, but the enemy known as fear.

God humbles us through the Scriptures such as "…with some I am not well pleased, for they will not open their mouths, but they hide the talent which I have given unto them, because of the fear of man." Doctrine & Covenants 60:1b

If God had not already provided a way to overcome this problem, His words could seem harsh, but in a revelation given through Joseph Smith, the Lord declared: "…if ye are prepared, ye shall not fear." Doctrine & Covenants 38:6d

This is the key. What will you do with it?

The Lord says:

- "Search these commandments…" D&C 1:7
- "Study my word which hath gone forth among the children of men…" D&C 10:10c
- "Teach the principles of my gospel, which are in the Bible and the Book of Mormon, in the which is the fullness of my gospel." D&C 42:5a
- "Search the prophets…" 3 Nephi 10:32
- "Search the scriptures, for…they are they which testify of me." John 5:39
- "Yea, a commandment I give unto you that ye search these things diligently…" 3 Nephi 10:27